ML 2016 Project Abstract
For the Period Ending June 30, 2019

PROJECT TITLE: Improving Brook Trout Stream Habitat Through Beaver Management
PROJECT MANAGER: Andrew W. Hafs
AFFILIATION: Bemidji State University
MAILING ADDRESS: 218A Sattgast Hall
CITY/STATE/ZIP: Bemidji, MN 56601
PHONE: (218) 755-2789
E-MAIL: andrew.hafs@bemidjistate.edu
WEBSITE: http://www.bemidjistate.edu/directory/facstaff/ahafs/
FUNDING SOURCE: Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund
LEGAL CITATION: M.L. 2016, Chp. 186, Sec. 2, Subd. 03j

APPROPRIATION AMOUNT: $225,000
AMOUNT SPENT: $225,000
AMOUNT REMAINING: $0

Sound bite of Project Outcomes and Results
Along the North Shore there was no measurable effect of beaver on brook trout habitat downstream of beaver ponds, however, 9 of 21 beaver ponds were unsuitable largely due to limited dissolved oxygen. Beaver populations recovered to previous levels by the 1990s and appear to have stabilized since that time.

Overall Project Outcome and Results
In Minnesota, beaver *Castor canadensis* are considered to have an overall negative effect on native brook trout *Salvelinus fontinalis*. Brook trout provide a valued and productive sport fishery to the North Shore streams of Lake Superior and since revival of the beaver population from past trapping and timber harvest, a reexamination of the complex ecological relationship where the two taxa interact is imperative.

Brook trout habitat data collection occurred on 79 stream sections and 21 beaver ponds spanning the North Shore during summers 2017 and 2018. Results indicated that there was no effect of beaver on brook trout habitat in sections downstream of beaver ponds. Brook trout habitat was dependent on microhabitat variables (depth, velocity, temperature) that are eminent in individual stream sites and growth was limited by velocity and prey availability. Results also indicated that 12 of the 21 beaver pond sites sampled contained suitable brook trout habitat, with dissolved oxygen identified as a threshold.

Since 1948, the beaver population has increased approximately 3-fold along the North Shore. Populations appear to have stabilized in the 1990s, and have remained at a similar size since that time. There is some variation in population trends among sub-watersheds, suggesting that local population and habitat characteristics are driving beaver population dynamics. Current population levels demonstrate that beavers have largely recovered from overharvest that occurred up through approximately 1900.

A focus on individual stream characteristics and beaver pond dissolved oxygen concentrations is recommended to achieve desired brook trout habitat and aid in the development of management strategies pertaining to these two taxa in North Shore, Lake Superior streams.

Project Results Use and Dissemination

Results from our work include a widely read review about beaver-trout interactions in the Western Great Lakes, a paper which has already generated significant conversations in the fisheries management world. Two MS theses were completed and will be made available through Bemidji State University and the University of Minnesota – Duluth libraries. Several other papers will soon be published in the peer-reviewed scientific literature that will highlight our research findings on 1) the effects of beaver activities on brook trout habitat, 2) population dynamics of beavers in northern Minnesota, and 3) historical changes in beaver ponds and dams in the Lake Superior Watershed of Minnesota.

Overall, we digitized and geo-recitified over 1,200 historical photos, which will be stored on servers at the University of Minnesota Borchart Map Library for others to use going forward. We will also be making all of our GIS layers derived from aerial photo interpretation publicly available through Minnesota's Geospatial Commons (www.gisdata.mn.gov).

Finally results from the study were presented at numerous state, regional, national, and international meetings including but not limited to:

- Minnesota Forestry and Wildlife Research Review, 2017
- 8th International Beaver Symposium, 2018
- 78th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference, 2018
- Annual Meeting of the American Society of Mammalogists, 2018
- Minnesota American Fisheries Society Meeting, 2018
- 79th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference, 2019
- Annual Meeting of the Minnesota Chapter of The Wildlife Society, 2017, 2018, 2019

Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund (ENRTF) M.L. 2016 Work Plan Final Report

Date of Report: August 14, 2019

Final Report

Date of Work Plan Approval: January 15, 2019

Project Completion Date: June 30, 2019

PROJECT TITLE: Improving Brook Trout Stream Habitat Through Beaver Management

Project Manager: Andrew Hafs

Organization: Bemidji State University

Mailing Address: 218A Sattgast Hall

City/State/Zip Code: Bemidji, MN 56601

Telephone Number: (218) 755-2789

Email Address: andrew.hafs@bemidjistate.edu

Web Address: http://www.bemidjistate.edu/directory/facstaff/ahafs/

Location: NE Minnesota (Cook, Lake, and St. Louis counties)

Total ENRTF Project Budget:		
	ENRTF Appropriation:	**$225,000**
	Amount Spent:	**$225,000**
	Balance:	**$0**

Legal Citation: M.L. 2016, Chp. 186, Sec. 2, Subd. 03j

Appropriation Language:
$225,000 the second year is from the trust fund to the Board of Trustees of the Minnesota State Colleges and Universities system for Bemidji State University to quantify how beaver activity influences habitat quality in streams for brook trout in northeastern Minnesota in order to improve current and future management practices. This appropriation is available until June 30, 2019, by which time the project must be completed and final products delivered.

I. PROJECT TITLE: Improving Native Brook Trout Stream Habitat through Beaver Management

II. PROJECT STATEMENT:
Northeast Minnesota (NE MN) contains more than 1,500 miles of Designated Trout Streams (Fig. 1) and trout fishing is an important recreational and economic activity in the state. Beaver control is part of the DNR's management of several trout streams in NE MN (Fig. 2). There is a need to REFINE this tool to ensure that beaver management is only applied where it HELPS trout and does not HURT trout. In cases where beaver removal hurts brook trout populations, this is a LOSE-LOSE situation for Minnesotans, because we also lose wildlife habitat creation, water filtration, recreational trapping opportunities, climate change mitigation, and other positive benefits of beavers.

Goal 1: Quantify how beaver activity influences habitat quality for stream dwelling brook trout in NE MN.
Often removing beaver from trout streams is related to the assumption that beaver activities degrade habitats by warming water temperatures beyond suitable ranges for trout. In addition to temperature, beaver dams also alter other important habitat characteristics for stream trout such as water flow and depth, sediment transport, erosion and connectivity of important seasonal habitat reaches. This project will quantify how beaver activity influences the amount of suitable brook trout habitat available in NE MN streams.

Goal 2: Quantify importance of beaver in streams to ecosystems and to trout management.
Beaver populations fluctuate over time and space and the need to manage beaver in individual trout streams will differ for different parts of the state or at different periods of time. Beaver activities, such as creation of ponds and dams along with tree cutting, are easily visible on aerial photos. Aerial photos from different time periods can show changes in the distribution and abundance of beavers. Understanding historical and current beaver population levels will provide insight into landscape-level effects and ecosystem services provided by beaver, which will be critical for wildlife diversity conservation in the face of projected climate change. In particular, beaver activities create critical habitat for waterfowl, moose, frogs, and other wetland wildlife.

Removing beaver from trout streams can lead to increased brook trout populations. Yet maintaining beaver as a component of streams can provide benefits to stream and riparian habitat. Optimizing brook trout management and ecological health is the outcome of this proposed research.

Brook trout streams in northeastern Minnesota are mostly fed by surface waters and are sensitive to increasing summer temperatures projected in Minnesota. The effects of beaver dams on streams could magnify temperature-related changes expected over the next 50-100 years. However, increased pool habitat resulting from beaver dams could store water and maintain flows if precipitation decreases or becomes more variable. A comprehensive analysis of the ecological cost-benefit dynamics of beaver management for improvement of brook trout habitat would benefit fisheries managers and natural resource agencies.

Results for this project will provide new information allowing for improved ability to meet management objectives for brook trout while retaining the broader ecological benefits of beaver.

III. OVERALL PROJECT STATUS UPDATES:

Project Status as of January 1, 2017:

Since funding has been received in August 2016, two quality graduate students have been hired. Kathryn Renik was hired on at Bemidji State University to carry out all activities relevant to Activity 1 (mentored by Dr. Andrew Hafs); and Sean Johnson-Bice was hired on at the University of Minnesota Duluth to carry out all activities relevant to Activity 2 (mentored by Dr. Steve Windels). Both students are currently preparing proposals following University specific degree program requirements. Both are making excellent progress and should be ready to defend proposals this coming spring. This will allow for data collection over the upcoming summer based on this work plan's proposed activities in section IV. Additionally, both students are working together to develop a comprehensive literature review summarizing the history of Salmonid-Beaver management in the Great Lakes region. They hope to eventually submit this literature review for publication in the Journal of Great Lakes Research. Currently there are no problems to report and everything seems to be on track for the upcoming field season.

Project Status as of July 1, 2017:

Since January 1, 2017, research relevant to Activity 1 and Activity 2 has continued. Kathryn Renik has defended her proposal with her committee and was approved for fieldwork. Sean Johnson-Bice will be defending his proposal with his committee at the end of the summer (2017). Kathryn Renik, and technician, have deployed temperature loggers and began sampling sites pertaining to brook trout habitat in north shore streams. Sean Johnson-Bice has begun to analyze the beaver colony aerial survey data in the Northeastern region that the Minnesota DNR conducted from 1958-2002. Additionally, both students have worked together to develop a comprehensive literature review summarizing the history of Salmonid-Beaver management in the Great Lakes region and are aiming to submit it for publication in the Journal of Great Lakes Research this upcoming fall. Currently there are no problems to report and everything seems to be on track for this field season.

Project Status as of January 1, 2018:

Since July 1, 2017, research relevant to Activity 1 and Activity 2 has continued. Kathryn Renik completed her fieldwork for the 2017 season and is currently analyzing data. Kathryn will begin preparations for the 2018 field season and present her research at upcoming conferences. Sean Johnson-Bice defended his proposal with his committee, and was approved to progress with aerial image analysis. Additionally, both students have worked together to develop a comprehensive literature review summarizing the history of Salmonid-Beaver management in the Great Lakes region and are aiming to submit it for publication in the Journal of Great Lakes Research by January 1st. Currently there are no problems to report and everything seems to be on track for the upcoming field season.

Project Status as of July 1, 2018:

Since January 1, 2018, research relevant to Activity 1 and Activity 2 has continued in order to reach project goals. Kathryn Renik has been analyzing data from summer 2017 field season, with results from one of two models outlined in her proposal determined. Kathryn Renik, and technician, have deployed temperature loggers and began sampling brook trout habitat in North Shore, Lake Superior streams. Sean presented his research at three scientific conferences since January 1, 2018, and has made significant progress with the georectification and delineation of north shore wetlands. Additionally, the literature review that Sean and Kathryn were working on was recently accepted for publication in the North American Journal of Fisheries Management. Currently there are no problems to report and everything seems to be on track for this field season.

Project Status as of January 1, 2019:

Research relevant to Activity 1 and Activity 2 has continued since July 1, 2018. Kathryn Renik completed a second successful summer field season, with results from one of two models outlined in her proposal. She is currently preparing for an upcoming conference and analyzing macroinvertebrate data to apply to the second model. Sean presented some of his research at an international conference (International Beaver Symposium, Norre Vosburg, Denmark). In collaboration with graduate students at the University of Minnesota Twin Cities, the automated image-processing algorithm they have been working on is nearing completion. Wetland delineation of the study watersheds has continued as well. Finally, the beaver-salmonid literature review article Sean and Kathryn were working on was published in the North American Journal of Fisheries Management as a featured article.

Overall Project Outcomes and Results:

In Minnesota, beaver *Castor canadensis* are considered to have an overall negative effect on native brook trout *Salvelinus fontinalis*. Brook trout provide a valued and productive sport fishery to the North Shore streams of Lake Superior and since revival of the beaver population from past trapping and timber harvest, a reexamination of the complex ecological relationship where the two taxa interact is imperative.

Brook trout habitat data collection occurred on 79 stream sections and 21 beaver ponds spanning the North Shore during summers 2017 and 2018. Results indicated that there was no effect of beaver on brook trout habitat in sections downstream of beaver ponds. Brook trout habitat was dependent on microhabitat variables (depth, velocity, temperature) that are eminent in individual stream sites and growth was limited by velocity and prey availability. Results also indicated that 12 of the 21 beaver pond sites sampled contained suitable brook trout habitat, with dissolved oxygen identified as a threshold.

Since 1948, the beaver population has increased approximately 3-fold along the North Shore. Populations appear to have stabilized in the 1990s, and have remained at a similar size since that time. There is some variation in population trends among sub-watersheds, suggesting that local population and habitat characteristics are driving beaver population dynamics. Current population levels demonstrate that beavers have largely recovered from overharvest that occurred up through approximately 1900.

A focus on individual stream characteristics and beaver pond dissolved oxygen concentrations is recommended to achieve desired brook trout habitat and aid in the development of management strategies pertaining to these two taxa in North Shore, Lake Superior streams.

Amendment Request as of August 26, 2019
Within the budget for Activity 2, we are requesting funds be shifted from the In-state travel line, the aerial imagery line, and the GIS lab fee line to personnel.

- In-state travel budget would be reduced by $3,479 to a revised budget of $2,521.
- Aerial imagery budget would be reduced by $9,730 to a revised budget of $1,270.
- GIS lab fee budget would be reduced by $856 to a revised budget of $1,144.
- Personnel budget would increase by $14,065 to a revised budget of $91,565.

These changes are being requested because more staff time was needed to accomplish Activity 2, Outcome #1 than originally anticipated. To pay for these costs, we used money from other areas in Activity 2 that were less expensive than originally anticipated.
Amendment Approved by LCCMR August 26, 2019

IV. PROJECT ACTIVITIES AND OUTCOMES:

ACTIVITY 1: Effects of beaver ponds on brook trout habitat characteristics
Description: In comparison to other stream systems where brook trout-beaver research has been conducted in the past, Northeastern Minnesota trout streams are unique in that base flow is limited because of the shallow depth to bedrock. Empirical evidence describing how trout habitat changes as result of beaver activity in this region is currently lacking. Agencies in charge of managing either brook trout or beaver in Northeastern Minnesota would benefit greatly from this type of data if it were available. Therefore, the main objective of this activity is to develop a relationship between the amount of suitable brook trout habitat per unit area and the amount of beaver activity in the stream.

To accomplish this objective we will measure habitat characteristics (e.g., water temperature, flow, depth, dissolved oxygen) in stream reaches with matched watershed size that have varying levels of beaver activity. It is assumed that habitat characteristics such as depth, flow, and temperature will be most limiting in the summer and early fall, therefore, habitat measurements will be taken at that critical time. All stream habitat measurements will be accompanied with GPS coordinates which will allow us to plot the locations in GIS. Once the habitat measurements have been loaded into GIS, interpolation techniques will be used to create detailed maps that predict habitat conditions at all locations within each selected stream reach. This technique will allow us to estimate the total amount of usable habitat for brook trout within each stream reach during the time that mapping occurred.

The estimated amounts of usable habitat can then be related to measures of beaver activity such as beaver dam density and average size of beaver dams within and upstream of the mapped sections. MNDNR currently conducts beaver dam removal in selected streams within this region which will help provide varying levels of beaver activity for study site selection.

Once the objective described above is completed the relationships established will allow us to make detailed recommendations for the immediate future of beaver and brook trout management in Northeastern Minnesota.

Summary Budget Information for Activity 1: **ENRTF Budget: $ 128,500**
Amount Spent: $ 128,500
Balance: $ 0

Outcome	Completion Date
1. *Habitat characteristics (flow, depth, temperature, etc.) measured and mapped in approximately 30, 300 m sections within approximately 9 NE MN brook trout streams in each summer of the three year study*	8/31/2018
2. *Provide management recommendations related beaver removal in brook trout streams based on the results from outcome 1*	6/30/2019

Activity Status as of January 1, 2017:

Since funding has been received in August 2016, Kathryn Renik was hired on as a graduate student at Bemidji State University to carry out all activities relevant to Activity 1 (mentored by Dr. Andrew Hafs). Kathryn is currently preparing her proposal following University specific degree program requirements. She is making excellent progress and should be ready to defend her proposal this coming spring. This will allow for data collection over the upcoming summer based on this work plan's proposed activities in section IV. Additionally, she is working together with Sean Johnson-Bice from the University of Minnesota Duluth to develop a comprehensive literature review summarizing the history of Salmonid-Beaver management in the Great Lakes region. They hope to eventually submit this literature review for publication in the Journal of Great Lakes Research. Currently there are no problems to report and everything seems to be on track for the upcoming field season.

Activity Status as of July 1, 2017:

Kathryn Renik has made progress on her research and has defended her proposal and been approved by her committee (including advisor Dr. Andrew Hafs). A qualified Bemidji State University undergraduate was hired to assist with fieldwork this summer (2017). Sampling sites (30 stream sites and 15 beaver ponds) were chosen in the Northeastern region and temperature loggers have been deployed in each site. Kathryn and hired technician are currently collecting data pertaining to brook trout habitat at each sampling site chosen along the north shore. Data collection will be completed by September 1st in regards to the 2017 summer field season. Data analysis will directly follow in the fall. Kathryn and Sean Johnson-Bice are completing the initial draft of their beaver-salmonid management review of the Great Lakes region, and are aiming to submit it for publication to the Journal of Great Lakes Research by fall.

Activity Status as of January 1, 2018:

Kathryn Renik and a technician collected data pertaining to brook trout habitat at sampling sites along the north shore during the 2017 field season. Data collection was completed on 31 stream sites and 10 beaver pond sites during summer 2017. Data is currently being analyzed. Additional sampling sites (60 stream sites and 20 beaver ponds) will be chosen in the Northeastern region for the 2018 summer field season by January 1st. Kathryn and Sean Johnson-Bice completed the initial draft of their beaver-salmonid management review of the Great Lakes region, and are aiming to submit it for publication to the Journal of Great Lakes Research by January 1st.

Activity Status as of July 1, 2018:

Kathryn Renik has made progress on data analysis from summer 2017 fieldwork, with results from one of two models determined. A qualified Bemidji State University undergraduate was hired to assist with fieldwork this summer (2018). Sampling sites (60 stream sites and 20 beaver ponds) were chosen in the Northeastern region of Minnesota and temperature loggers have been deployed. Kathryn and hired technician are currently collecting data pertaining to brook trout habitat at each sampling site and this will be completed by September 1, 2018. Data analysis will directly follow in the fall. Kathryn and Sean Johnson-Bice submitted their beaver-salmonid management review of the Great Lakes region to the Journal of Great Lakes Research and it was determined to not be within the journal's scope. It was submitted to North American Journal of Fisheries Management in March 2018 and was recently accepted for publication, contingent on minor revisions.

Activity Status as of January 1, 2019:

Kathryn Renik has completed her second summer of fieldwork and sampled 49 stream sites and 11 beaver ponds for 2018. This brought the total number of sites sampled between the two summers to 79 stream sites and 21 beaver pond sites. Kathryn has made progress on data analysis from summer 2018 fieldwork, with results from one of two models determined. She hopes to have a draft of her manuscript pertaining to the effect of beaver on brook trout habitat in north shore streams completed by May 2019.

Final Report Summary:

The main objective of this activity was to develop a relationship between the amount of suitable brook trout habitat per unit area and the amount of beaver activity in the stream. This objective was accomplished by measuring brook trout habitat characteristics in 79 (200m) stream reaches and 21 beaver ponds spanning the North Shore region during summers 2017 and 2018. The sites had varying levels of beaver activity and predictor variables (algal biomass, upstream dam abundance on main branch per drainage, area of upstream beaver pond, tree width of nearest upstream dam, distance to nearest dam, distance to headwater, stream order, maximum site temperature, spring presence, site slope) for each site were measured. Habitat suitability index (HSI) models were used to determine the average HSI and quantity of suitable brook trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) in both stream and pond sites. A bioenergetics model was employed to calculate growth availability (m^2/100 m^2) and mean growth (g/day) and for brook trout in stream sites. Classification regression trees were used to identify significant thresholds in which beaver activity influenced the quantity or quality of brook trout habitat and growth.

No significant predictor variables were identified in the regression tree as affecting the average HSI, area of suitable brook trout habitat, brook trout growth availability, or growth rates in stream sites. Results, therefore, indicate that beaver activity may not be affecting brook trout habitat in sites located downstream of beaver dams located along the North Shore of Lake Superior. Alternatively, the quantity and quality of brook trout habitat in streams of this region appears to be better described by microhabitat variables (depth, velocity, temperature) that are eminent in individual stream sites. Results indicated that higher quality brook trout habitat was present in streams that exhibited greater depths, slower velocities, and lower maximum temperatures and it did not appear that beaver activity significantly influenced any of these variables. A greater quantity of brook trout habitat was present in streams distinguished by greater depths and slower velocities, also not significantly influenced by beaver activity. Brook trout growth in stream sites was limited by velocity (m/sec) and mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3). Results from interpolated habitat maps of beaver pond sites indicated that 12 of the 21 ponds sampled contained suitable brook trout habitat, with dissolved oxygen (mg/L) identified as a threshold for determining if ponds contained suitable brook trout habitat.

Results from Activity 1 identified instream variables important to achieving desired brook trout habitat and gave insight to those involved with the management of the complex beaver and brook trout relationship. By measuring dissolved oxygen concentrations in a specific beaver pond, managers can discern potential brook trout habitat in addition to potential repercussions of beaver dam removal. Results provided by this project will allow agencies in the Northeast Minnesota region to efficiently make decisions in regards to beaver and brook trout populations and successfully co-manage these two species.

Kathryn Renik prepared her thesis following University specific degree program requirements and defended August 5, 2019. Immediately following Kathryn's defense, Activity 1 research was submitted for publication to North American Journal of Fisheries Management and detailed recommendations were provided to MNDNR agencies currently managing the two species in Northeastern Minnesota.

ACTIVITY 2: Determine ecological effect of distribution and abundance of beaver in NE MN Trout Streams at the landscape scale

Description: We will compile existing data on beaver abundance and activity for northeastern Minnesota from approximately 1900-present. These data will be gleaned from trapping records, historical accounts, and survey data from MN DNR and other agencies. We envision generating both qualitative and quantitative histories of beaver activity/abundance at the study area, watershed, and individual trout stream scales.

We will map beaver activity in selected areas in St. Louis, Lake, and Cook counties using aerial photos from 1930s to the present to characterize changes in beaver populations over time in areas surrounding Designated Trout Streams in NE MN. We will employ established remote-sensing and GIS techniques to identify beaver activity such as beaver dams and associated ponds that appear between consecutive sets of photos. Landscape features such as dams, lodges, and pond outlines are digitized and then can be tracked through time on subsequent aerial imagery. Changes in beaver activity can then be tracked through time for individual trout streams, watersheds, or across the study area. Imagery in hard copy and digital forms exists for most areas in the project area dating to at least the 1940s, with some areas also having earlier imagery from the 1920s or 1930s. Most of the digital imagery is available for free through online repositories (e.g., MNDNR Data Deli or GoogleEarth). Hard copies of older imagery will be obtained from land management agencies or other sources as necessary.

Summary Budget Information for Activity 2:	**ENRTF Budget:**	**$ 96,500**
	Amount Spent:	**$ 96,500**
	Balance:	**$ 0**

Outcome	Completion Date
1. *Report summarizing current and historical patterns of beaver activity in approximately 9 watersheds (or subwatersheds) containing brook trout streams measured in Activity 1.*	*8/31/2018*

2. *Management recommendations from landscape analysis of beaver populations in NE MN from Outcome 1.*	*6/30/2019*

Activity Status as of January 1, 2017:

Since funding has been received in August 2016, Sean Johnson-Bice was hired on as a graduate student at the University of Minnesota Duluth to carry out all activities relevant to Activity 2 (mentored by Dr. Steve Windels). Sean is currently preparing his proposal following University specific degree program requirements. He is making excellent progress and should be ready to defend his proposal this coming spring. This will allow for data collection over the upcoming summer based on this work plan's proposed activities in section IV. Additionally, he is working together with Kathyrn Renik from Bemidji State University to develop a comprehensive literature review summarizing the history of Salmonid-Beaver management in the Great Lakes region. They hope to eventually submit this literature review for publication in the Journal of Great Lakes Research. Currently there are no problems to report and everything seems to be on track for the upcoming field season.

Activity Status as of July 1, 2017:

Sean Johnson-Bice has made progress on his research proposal and will be meeting with his graduate committee (including mentor Dr. Steve Windels) by the end of summer to defend it. Sean and Steve have established a partnership with the U-Spatial program at the University of Minnesota - Twin Cities (UMTC) campus to conduct the digitization and geo-rectification of aerial photos from 1948-82. These aerial photos will be used in conjunction with aerial imagery from 1991-present that has already been digitized and geo-rectified, to characterize changes in beaver activity over the last century. Sean has selected 5 focal watersheds from the Lake Superior north shore to study in-depth. Additionally, Sean has started to analyze the beaver colony aerial survey data that the Minnesota DNR conducted from 1958-2002. Several survey routes were within and/or near to the north shore watershed, and will be used in conjunction with the aerial imagery to describe changes in beaver abundance and distribution. Sean and Kathryn Renik are completing the initial draft of their beaver-salmonid management review of the Great Lakes region, and are aiming to submit it for publication to the Journal of Great Lakes Research by fall.

Activity Status as of January 1, 2018:

Sean Johnson-Bice defended his research proposal, which was approved by his committee (which included Dr. Steve Windels). Sean has digitized all of the beaver survey routes conducted by the Minnesota DNR, which will be used for population estimations within the study area. Sean and Steve have continued their partnership with the U-Spatial program at the UMTC campus. Based on photo availability, Sean has identified time periods that will be used in the aerial imagery analysis. Georectification of all historical aerial imagery is currently being conducted, and should be completed by February 1, 2018, at which point Sean can begin to identify and delineate beaver wetlands within the 5 focal watersheds.

Activity Status as of July 1, 2018:

At this point, all historical photographs from the 5 focal watersheds have been georectified, and the delineation of these watersheds has begun. We expect to have the delineation of these watersheds completed by January 1, 2019. Sean has also established a collaboration with the Geospatial Analysis Center at the University of Minnesota Twin Cities campus. Sean is working with a graduate student at the UMTC campus to develop a novel methodology to use object-based image analysis to automate beaver pond delineations. They hope to have an effective methodology in place by March 1, 2019 that can assist in the wetland delineation process. Sean has made significant progress with his analysis on beaver population dynamics using the historical data collected by the Minnesota DNR. Sean expects to have a draft of this manuscript completed by November, 2018.

Activity Status as of January 1, 2019:
Wetland delineation has not been completed yet, but should be completed in early spring. The object-based image analysis algorithm that Sean was working on with UM Twin Cities graduate students, is nearly complete as well. Using this data, Sean will begin to compare manual vs. automated wetland delineations to determine the accuracy and efficacy of using automated software to delineate beaver wetlands. Sean's analysis on beaver population dynamics using the historical Minnesota DNR is also nearly finished. Sean expects to have a manuscript ready for submission by late spring.

Final Report Summary:

The main objective of Activity 2 was to evaluate the landscape-level changes beavers have had on the North Shore watersheds over the past century. Using historical and recent aerial imagery, we identified and mapped all of the beaver ponds within 5 focal watersheds (Cascade River, Kadunce River, Knife River, Manitou River, Split Rock River) over 8 separate time periods (1948, 1961, 1980/82, 1991, 2003, 2008, 2013, 2017) where imagery was available for all of the focal watersheds. Additionally, we obtained aerial imagery from 1934 for 2 watersheds (Cascade and Kadunce) and from 1939 for Knife River watershed, providing some additional context for the historical abundance of beavers at the beginning of the 20th century. Overall, we digitized and geo-recitified over 1,200 historical photos, which will be stored on servers at the University of Minnesota Borchart Map Library for others to use going forward.

Results from Activity 2 suggest that beaver populations have increased nearly 4-fold since the 1940s, and likely have increased at a higher rate since the turn of the 20th century. The average number of beaver dams that are retaining water has increased from approximately 0.5 per km^2 of land, to 1.8 per km^2 from 1948 to 2017. However, it appears that the beaver population in the North Shore has remained approximately stable since the 1990s, suggesting that the population has reached carrying capacity (i.e., population threshold allowed by habitat characteristics) throughout their extent in the region. This is even more interesting in that recreational trapping pressure has steadily declined during this same period. There is also considerable variation in the population trends among our 5 focal watersheds, suggesting that local watershed habitat and topographic characteristics are driving local beaver population dynamics.

Our analysis of the MNDNR historical beaver survey data revealed that changes in beaver populations are largely influenced by intrapopulation characteristics (e.g., territoriality, changes in birth rates, etc.) rather than external factors such as weather, human harvest, or even predation from wolves. These results suggest that beavers are resilient to changes in climate, and can sustain moderate mortality from human trappers. Thus, for areas where reductions in beaver populations are desired, extensive removal efforts will likely be needed to keep the population low. On the other hand, these results suggest that beavers will not continue to grow their population beyond the size which can be supported by their environment.

Based on the large increase in the beaver population since the 1930s/1940s we see from the mapping of beaver ponds over time, it is tempting to conclude that the number of beavers in the North Shore is greater now than it has historically been. However, what is 'historical' must be considered within context. If historical refers to the early 1900s, then this statement would be true. But if 'historical' refers to the population size before the Fur Trade Era/European Settlement, we cannot conclude that there are more beavers now than historically; beavers in this region were continuously over-harvested for more than two centuries during the Fur Trade Era, suppressing populations at extremely low levels. In order to adequately determine whether the number of beavers at present is more than in pre-settlement times, a separate study is needed to (1) link current (or recent) beaver carrying capacities to current (or recent) habitat characteristics, and then (2) predict historical carrying capacities based on historical habitat characteristics. Such an analysis was beyond the scope of our project but is likely going to be important in determining whether beaver populations are actually larger than they 'should be' (based on historical conditions), especially in light of our results from Activity 1 which demonstrated that beavers appear to have a minimal impact on brook trout habitats.

Management Recommendations - Based on the large increase in the beaver population since the 1930s/1940s we see from the mapping of beaver ponds over time, it is tempting to conclude that the number of beavers in the North Shore is greater now than it has historically been. However, what is 'historical' must be considered within context. If historical refers to the early 1900s, then this statement would be true. But if 'historical' refers to the population size before the Fur Trade Era/European Settlement, we cannot conclude that there are more beavers now than historically; beavers in this region were continuously over-harvested for more than two centuries during the Fur Trade Era, suppressing populations at extremely low levels. In order to adequately determine whether the number of beavers at present is more than in pre-settlement times, a separate study is needed to (1) link current (or recent) beaver carrying capacities to current (or recent) habitat characteristics, and then (2) predict historical carrying capacities based on historical habitat characteristics. Such an analysis was beyond the scope of our project but is likely going to be important in determining whether beaver populations are actually larger than they 'should be' (based on historical conditions). Regardless, when combined with our results from Activity 1 which demonstrated that beavers appear to have a minimal impact on brook trout habitats, our analysis of population trends suggests that current beaver populations may not warrant substantial reductions in beaver populations at large scales to favor salmonids in streams along the North Shore. Smaller or more focused beaver control efforts may be warranted to achieve local trout fishery goals, e.g, if upstream movements of trout are considered to be negatively impacted by beaver activities. Further to this point, we do recommend additional study to better understand the role of beaver dams in affecting movements of native and introduced salmonids. Lastly, beavers are ecosystem engineers and a keystone species who provide valuable ecological services to forest ecosystems in the WGL region, and the removal of beavers from stream reaches where their presence may actually benefit salmonids results in a lose–lose situation for forest ecosystems and natural resource management goals. We therefore suggest that the decision to remove beavers from coldwater streams should involve consideration of the secondary ecosystem consequences associated with decreased beaver presence before such management plans are implemented.

Sean Johnson-Bice successfully defended his Master's thesis on March 26th, and is finalizing work on his second chapter before submitting it for publication at *Ecological Applications.*

V. DISSEMINATION:

Description: We will generate outreach through Bemidji State University and University of Minnesota-Duluth. We will engage print and radio media when possible and appropriate. Fisheries managers within the Department of Natural Resources should find this research extremely valuable as brook trout and beaver are both important recreationally, commercially, and environmentally. This research will result in two completed master's theses which will be permanently housed in the libraries at the campuses in which they are completed (Bemidji State University and the University of Minnesota Duluth). Additionally, a pdf copy of the thesis completed at Bemidji State University, as result of Activity 1, will be permanently available electronically through a Bemidji State University website maintained by Dr. Andrew Hafs http://www.bemidjistate.edu/directory/facstaff/ahafs/. We will prepare and disseminate information on the project through scientific papers submitted to peer-reviewed journals. We will also present our results at regional and national meetings (using funds other than those allocated through this grant). Finally, completed theses will be distributed to all Northeastern MN DNR regional offices so they can adjust future management strategies as needed.

Status as of January 1, 2017:

As of January 1, 2017, Sean Johnson-Bice has submitted an abstract for an oral presentation at the upcoming Minnesota TWS (Wildlife Society) meeting in Feb. 2017. This presentation is related to the literature he and Kathryn Renik have been developing that summarizes the history of Salmonid-Beaver management in the Great Lakes region.

Kathryn Renik will also submit an abstract to present her plan of study for this research project via oral presentation at the upcoming Minnesota Chapter of the American Fisheries Society meeting in February 2017.

Status as of July 1, 2017:

Since January 1, 2017, Sean Johnson-Bice has presented a poster and an oral presentation at the Minnesota TWS (Wildlife Society) conference. Presentations were related to the history of beaver management in the Great Lakes and entailed the literature review composed by Sean and Kathryn Renik.

Kathryn Renik presented a poster at the Minnesota AFS (American Fisheries Society) meeting pertaining to her research involving brook trout habitat sampling on the north shore occurring in summers 2017 and 2018. Kathryn also gave seminars to undergraduates in the Bemidji State University biology department and to members of the Minnesota Association of Watershed Districts. Presentations were related to the extensive literature review collaborated with Sean Johnson-Bice and her research occurring in north shore streams pertaining to brook trout habitat in summers 2017 and 2018.

Status as of January 1, 2018:

Kathryn Renik has submitted an abstract to present her work as an oral presentation at the 78th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference in Milwaukee, WI in January 2018. She will also be submitting an abstract and giving an oral presentation at the Minnesota AFS (American Fisheries Society) meeting in February 2018 pertaining to her research involving brook trout habitat sampling on the north shore occurring in summer 2017. Kathryn was featured in a Bemidji State University article pertaining to her research on brook trout habitat along the North Shore during the summer of 2017. Kathryn and Dr. Andrew Hafs were also featured in an episode pertaining to their research on brook trout habitat in the Northeastern region of Minnesota, produced by Prairie Sportsman, and it will be aired in the new season beginning in January 2018.

Sean Johnson-Bice has submitted an abstract to present the literature review paper as an oral presentation at the 78th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference in Milwaukee, WI in January 2018. Sean will also be submitting an abstract and giving an oral presentation at the Minnesota Wildlife Society (MNTWS) conference in Saint Cloud, MN in February 2018. Additionally, Sean was invited to present his research at the University of Minnesota Duluth weekly biology department seminar in March 2018.

Status as of July 1, 2018:

Kathryn Renik presented her work as an oral presentation at the 78th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference in Milwaukee, WI in January 2018. She also presented her research as an oral presentation at the Minnesota AFS (American Fisheries Society) meeting in Saint Cloud, MN in February 2018. Kathryn and Dr. Andrew Hafs were featured in a Prairie Sportsman episode pertaining to their research on this project that aired on Pioneer Public Television in February 2018. Kathryn wrote an article pertaining to her fieldwork investigating the effect of beaver activity on brook trout habitat in Northeastern, MN for DUN Magazine, a women's fly fishing magazine, that will be featured in the Summer 2018 edition.

Sean presented findings from his research at three scientific conferences in the past 6 months: The 78th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference in Milwaukee, WI; the Minnesota Wildlife Society conference in Saint Cloud, MN; and the American Society of Mammalogists conference in Manhattan, KS. Finally, the literature review article that Sean and Kathryn Renik were working on was recently accepted for publication at the Journal of North American Fisheries Management, contingent on minor revisions to the manuscript.

Status as of January 1, 2019:

Kathryn Renik has submitted an abstract to present her research as an oral presentation at the 79th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference in Cleveland, OH in January 2019. She wrote an article pertaining to her fieldwork on brook trout habitat along the north shore that was featured in the fall edition of Dun Magazine, a women's fly fishing magazine. Kathryn also presented her research as an oral presentation to members of the Headwaters Chapter of Trout Unlimited in Bemidji, MN. She outlined this project as it pertained to the scientific method and had the opportunity to present it to a 4th grade class in Bridgeport, NE.

Sean presented findings from his beaver population analysis at an international conference (8th International Beaver Symposium, Norre Vosburg, Denmark). Sean has also submitted an abstract for an oral presentation at the 2019 Minnesota Chapter of the Wildlife Society annual meeting in Duluth, MN. Sean was also invited to give a lecture for a non-profit environmental conservation group in the Duluth area, Advocates for the Knife River Watershed; Sean gave his lecture in December at their monthly meeting. Additionally, the literature review that Sean, Kathryn, Steve, and Andy were working on was published as a *featured article* in the December issue of the North American Journal of Fisheries Management.

Final Report Summary:

Outreach was generated to students, professionals, organizations, and the public. Kathryn Renik presented a poster at the Minnesota AFS (American Fisheries Society) meeting in St. Cloud, MN pertaining to her research in February 2017. Seminars to undergraduates in the Bemidji State University Biology Department and to members of the Minnesota Association of Watershed Districts during 2017 were also presented. Oral presentations given by Kathryn included the 78th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference (Milwaukee, WI) in January 2018, the Minnesota AFS (American Fisheries Society) meeting (Saint Cloud, MN) in February 2018, the Headwaters Chapter of Trout Unlimited (Bemidji, MN) in October 2018, 4th grade class (Bridgeport, NE) in November 2018, the 79th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference (Cleveland, OH) in January 2019, regional MN DNR employees (Duluth, MN) in April 2019, and the Advocates for the Knife River Watershed (Two Harbors, MN) in April 2019. Dr. Andrew Hafs gave an oral presentation pertaining to Activity 1 research at the 79th Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference (Cleveland, OH) in January 2019.

Other outreach projects included Kathryn and Dr. Andrew Hafs feature in a Prairie Sportsman Season 9 episode pertaining to Activity 1 research that aired on Pioneer Public Television in February 2018 (https://video.wfyi.org/video/sax-zim-bog-tzb57l/). Kathryn wrote an article pertaining to her fieldwork on brook trout habitat along the north shore that was featured in the fall edition of Dun Magazine, a women's fly fishing magazine (https://dunmagazine.com/posts/casting-light-on-a-century-old-controversy).

Bemidji State also generated outreach related to Activity 1 research. Kathryn was featured as a 'Student to Watch' in a university article describing her research (https://www.bemidjistate.edu/news/2018/07/03/student-to-watch-katti-renik/). Another university article highlights Kathryn's research and publication in Dun Magazine (https://www.bemidjistate.edu/academics/departments/biology/2018/11/07/bemidji-state-grad-student-featured-in-national-publication).

Kathryn's master's thesis is permanently housed in the Bemidji State University campus library. Additionally, a pdf copy of Kathryn's thesis, as result of Activity 1, is permanently available electronically through a Bemidji State University website maintained by Dr. Andrew Hafs http://www.bemidjistate.edu/directory/facstaff/ahafs/. All data collected pertaining to this research project (Activity 1) is also available electronically through this website. Her completed thesis was distributed to all Northeastern MN DNR regional offices immediately following her defense August 5, 2019, allowing for adjustment of future management strategies as needed. Additionally, Kathryn's completed thesis was shared with interested Wisconsin DNR biologists managing for beaver and trout. Results from Activity 1 research was summarized in a report for Minnesota State Parks staff and Duluth city park staff. Kathryn submitted a manuscript to the North American Journal of Fisheries Management in August 2019 pertaining to Activity 1 research.

Sean Johnson-Bice presented research related to Activity 2 at a total of 7 scientific conferences: (Minnesota Forestry and Wildlife Research Review, 2017; Annual Meeting of the Minnesota Chapter of The Wildlife Society, 2017, 2018, 2019; 78th Annual Midwest Fish and Wildlife Conference, 2018; Annual Meeting of the American Society of Mammalogists, 2018; 8th International Beaver Symposium). Sean was awarded the Best Student Presentation award at the 8th International Beaver Symposium. In addition, Sean was invited to present his research at a monthly meeting for the *Advocates for the Knife River Watershed* group in December, 2018 in Duluth, MN.

Sean defended his Master's thesis in March, and has submitted his thesis for publication at the ProQuest repository (also available from the University of Minnesota). His thesis titled '*Factors Influencing Beaver (Castor canadensis) Population Fluctuations, and their Ecological Relationship with Salmonids'* will be available to the public in April, 2020, from ProQuest or the University of Minnesota repositories.

All members of the project published an article about beaver-trout relationships in the Western Great Lakes region in the *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* in 2018. This article was selected as a featured article, and was the most downloaded article from the journal in 2018.

Sean and Steve Windels are currently preparing to submit an additional three manuscripts related to research from Activity 2. We expect these articles to be published sometime in 2020, and the Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund will be acknowledged in each of these manuscripts.

VI. PROJECT BUDGET SUMMARY:

A. ENRTF Budget Overview:

Budget Category	$ Amount	Overview Explanation
Personnel:	$ 167,640	BEMIDJI STATE UNIVERSITY 1 project manager at 10% FTE each year for 3 years ($10,540); 1 graduate research assistant at 100% FTE for 3 years plus tuition and fees ($64,600); 1 undergraduate research assistant at 33% FTE for 3 years ($15,000). UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA-DULUTH 1 graduate research assistant at 25% FTE for 2 years ($48,000); 1 undergraduate research assistant at 35% FTE for 18 mo. and 75% FTE for 6 mo. ($20,000); 1 GIS technician at 15% FTE for 2 years ($9,500). Allocation of effort among personnel categories are estimates that may be adjusted to best meet project objectives.
Equipment/Tools/Supplies:	$26,360	72 Temperature loggers @ $130 apiece ($9,360); 24 depth/temperature loggers @ $500 apiece ($12,000); flow meter ($5,000).
Travel Expenses in MN:	$18,000	BEMIDJI STATE UNIVERSITY Mileage ($6000), lodging ($3000), meals ($3000) UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA-DULUTH

		Mileage ($3000), lodging ($1500), meals ($1500)
Other:	$13,000	UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA-DULUTH Aerial imagery acquisition ($11,000) GIS Lab fee ($2,000)
TOTAL ENRTF BUDGET:	**$225,000**	

Explanation of Use of Classified Staff: None

Explanation of Capital Expenditures Greater Than $5,000: None

Number of Full-time Equivalents (FTE) Directly Funded with this ENRTF Appropriation: 5.6

Number of Full-time Equivalents (FTE) Estimated to Be Funded through Contracts with this ENRTF Appropriation: 0

B. Other Funds:

Source of Funds	$ Amount Proposed	$ Amount Spent	Use of Other Funds
Non-state			
Dr. Steve Windels (In-kind support)	$30,000	$30,000	Dr. Steve Windels will mentor a graduate student at the University of Minnesota Duluth on his personal time outside the scope, duties, and function of his current position with the National Park Service (valued at $60/hr @ 500 hours).
State			
Dr. Andrew Hafs and Bemidji State University (In-kind support)	$15,500	$15,500	Provide access to backpack electrofishing equipment, additional YSI meters, temperature loggers, flow meters, and canoes already owned.
Bemidji State University (In-kind support)	$69,075	$69,075	Will provide indirect costs (30.7%)
Minnesota Department of Natural Resources (In-kind support)	$33,000	$33,000	MN DNR Fisheries spends approximately $11,000 annually on beaver dam removal
Minnesota Department of Natural Resources (In-kind support)	$5,000	$5,000	MN DNR staff time (~$50/hr salary/comp*100 hours) to provide access to data (temperature, flow, other habitat data) and input in project scope, development, and final projects as requested
TOTAL OTHER FUNDS:	**$152,575**	**$152,575**	

VII. PROJECT STRATEGY:

A. Project Partners:

Dr. Andrew Hafs, trout ecology expert with Bemidji State University (will mentor 1 graduate student).

Dr. Steve Windels, beaver ecology expert and adjunct faculty at University of Minnesota-Duluth (will mentor 1 graduate student). Dr. Windels' work on this project would be outside the scope, duties, and function of his current position with the National Park Service and would be completed on his own time.

Dr. Lucinda Johnson, cold water fish habitat and climate change expert with UMD.

MNDNR staff from Area Fisheries Offices (Deserae Hendrickson and Dean Paron), Fisheries Research (Peter Jacobsen), Wildlife Research (John Erb), and Stream Habitat Coordinator (Brian Nerbonne) will provide access to data and input during all phases of the project.

B. Project Impact and Long-term Strategy:
This project will develop management recommendations that will optimize both stream dwelling brook trout and beaver populations and the associated ecological services they provide under current and future climate scenarios. Future funding is needed to evaluate how management actions affect individual movements, survival, and population growth of trout and beaver using radio tags and other techniques.

C. Funding History:

Funding Source and Use of Funds	Funding Timeframe	$ Amount
MN DNR Fisheries and Wildlife spends money annually on beaver dam removal as part of their management actions. The total amount spent on these action in the past is very difficult to estimate.		$

VIII. FEE TITLE ACQUISITION/CONSERVATION EASEMENT/RESTORATION REQUIREMENTS: NONE REQUIRED

IX. VISUAL COMPONENT or MAP(S):

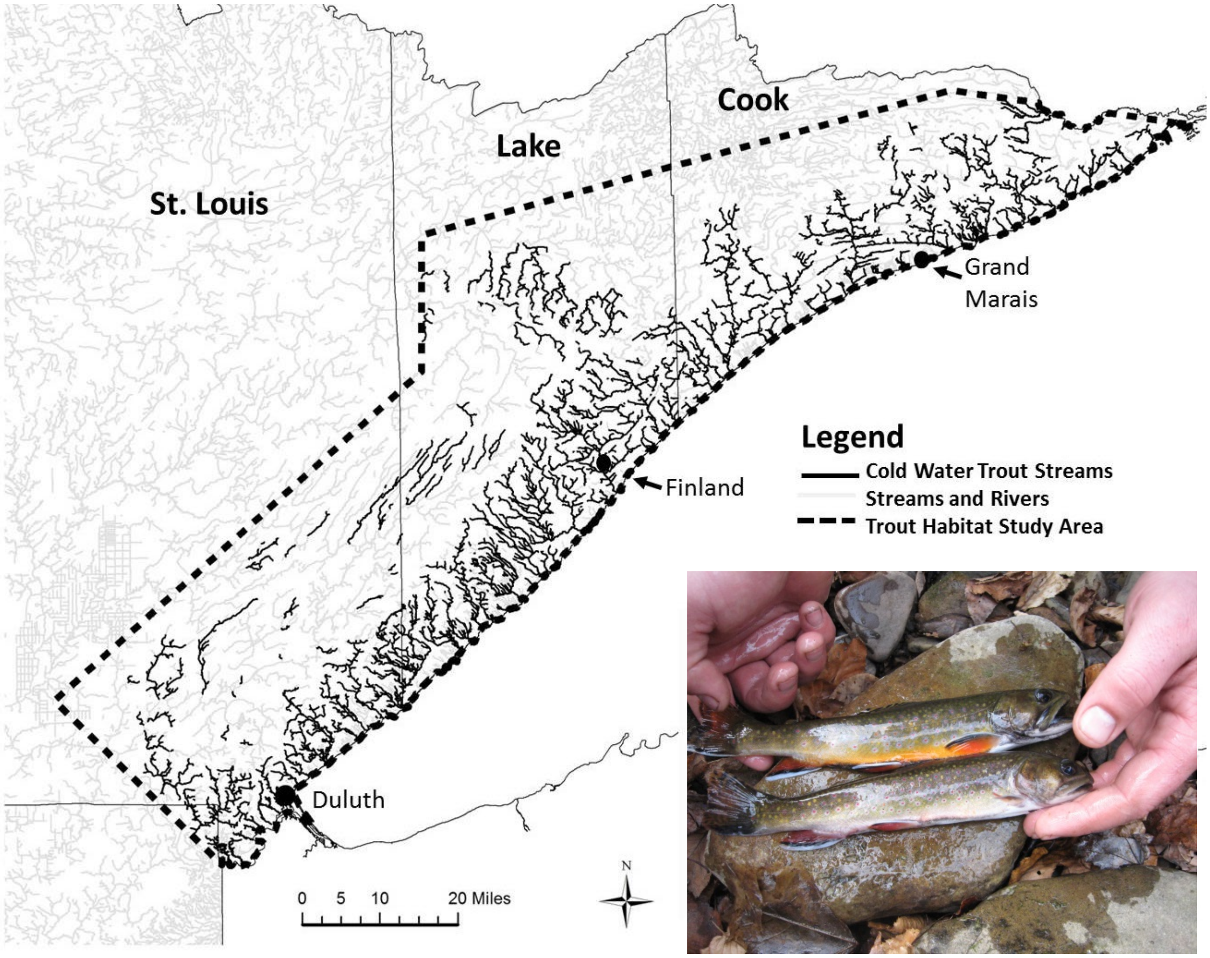


Figure 1. Location of cold water trout streams (Designated Trout Streams) where the effects of beavers on brook trout habitat will be studied.

Figure 2. Photo of a beaver dam that was recently removed from a NE MN brook trout stream (left). Also included are photos of a beaver (center) and a stream reach in which beaver activity is limited (right).

X. RESEARCH ADDENDUM:

XI. REPORTING REQUIREMENTS:

Periodic work plan status update reports will be submitted not later than January 1, 2017; July 1, 2017;

January 1, 2018; July 1, 2018, and January 1, 2019. A final report and associated products will be submitted between June 30 and August 15, 2019.

Final Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund
M.L. 2016 Project Budget

Project Title: Improving Brook Trout Stream Habitat Through Beaver Management
Legal Citation: *M.L. 2016, Chp. 186, Sec. 2, Subd. 03j*
Project Manager: *Andrew Hafs*
Organization: *Bemidji State University*
M.L. 2016 ENRTF Appropriation: $ *225,000*
Project Length and Completion Date: 3 *Years, June 30, 2019*
Date of Report: 8/26/2019

ENVIRONMENT AND NATURAL RESOURCES TRUST FUND BUDGET	Activity 1 Budget	Amount Spent	Activity 1 Balance	Revised Activity 2 Budget August 27, 2019	Amount Spent	Activity 2 Balance	TOTAL BUDGET	TOTAL BALANCE
BUDGET ITEM	***Effects on trout habitat characteristics***							
Personnel (Wages and Benefits)	$90,140	$90,140	$0	$91,565	$91,565	$0	$181,705	$0
Andrew Hafs, Project Manager: $10,540 (81% salary, 19% benefits); 10% FTE each year for 3 years								
1 Graduate Research Assistant, BSU: $52,800 (90% salary, 10% benefits); 100% FTE for 3 years, $11,800 for tuition and fees								
1 Graduate Research Assistant, UMD: $62,065 (80% salary, 20% benefits); 25% FTE for 2 years								
1 Undergraduate Research Assistant, BSU: $15,000 (90% salary, 10% benefits); 33% FTE for 3 years								
1 Undergraduate Research Assistant, UMD: $20,000 (100% salary:0% benefits); 35% FTE for 18 mo, 75% for 6 mo.								
1 GIS Technician, UMD: $9,500 (92% salary:8% benefits); 15% FTE for 2 years								
Equipment/Tools/Supplies	$26,360	$26,360	$0				$26,360	$0
72 Temperature loggers @ $130 apiece ($9,360)								
24 Depth/temperature loggers @ $500 apiece ($12,000)								
Flow meter (not to exceed $5,000)								
Travel expenses in Minnesota								
Travel to and between field study sites. Mileage: $6000; lodging: $3000; meals: $3000	$12,000	$12,000	$0				$12,000	$0
In-state travel for UMD personnel. Mileage: $1500; lodging: $1021; meals: $0				$2,521	$2,521	$0	$2,521	$0
Other								
Aerial imagery; publicly available imagery will used whenever possible, but additional imagery, either digital or hard copy, may need to be purchased to maximize coverage of study watersheds located in NE MN.				$1,270	$1,270	$0	$1,270	$0
GIS lab fee for UMD				$1,144	$1,144	$0	$1,144	$0
COLUMN TOTAL	**$128,500**	**$128,500**	**$0**	**$96,500**	**$96,500**	**$0**	**$225,000**	**$0**

School of Graduate Studies
Bemidji State University
1500 Birchmont Dr NE, #48
Bemidji, MN 56601-2699

EFFECT OF BEAVER ON BROOK TROUT HABITAT IN NORTH SHORE, LAKE SUPERIOR STREAMS

by

Kathryn Renik

A Thesis Submitted to the Faculty of the
DEPARTMENT OF BIOLOGY

In Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements
For the Degree of

Master of Science in Biology

BEMIDJI STATE UNIVERSITY
Bemidji, Minnesota, USA

August 2019

STATEMENT BY THE AUTHOR

This thesis has been submitted in partial fulfillment of requirements for an advanced degree at Bemidji State University and is deposited in the University Library to be made available to borrowers under the rules of the library.

Brief quotations from this thesis are allowable without special permission, provided accurate acknowledgement of the source is indicated. Requests for permission to use extended quotations or to reproduce the manuscript in whole or in part may be granted by the Department of Biology or the Dean, College of Business, Mathematics & Sciences when the proposed purpose is in the interest of scholarship. In all other instances, however, permission must be obtained from the author.

Signed: Kaitlyn Rauth

APPROVAL BY THESIS ADVISOR

THIS THESIS HAS BEEN APPROVED ON THE DATE SHOWN BELOW:

Andrew W. Hafs, Ph.D. Committee Chair Associate Professor of Biology	5 Aug 2019 Date
Marilyn D. Yoder Dean, College of Business, Mathematics & Sciences	8/14/2019 Date

EFFECT OF BEAVER ON BROOK TROUT HABITAT IN NORTH SHORE, LAKE SUPERIOR STREAMS

Kathryn Renik

Approved by:

____________________ 5 Aug 2019

Committee Chair Date

____

Committee Member

____

Committee Member

____

Graduate Faculty Representative

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to thank Andrew Hafs, Jeffrey Ueland, and Mark Fulton for providing mentoring and project guidance; Kylie StPeter, Adrianna Burrows, and Steve Hauschildt for their assistance in the field; undergraduate and graduate students for their time and help; Bemidji State staff among many different departments for their expertise and support; and my family and friends for their insight, love, and support throughout this project. A special thanks to my husband, Joe, because otherwise I would have never known how beautiful flowers could be without rainy days to help them grow. Funding for this project was provided by Bemidji State University and the Minnesota Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund, as recommended by the Legislative-Citizen Commission on Minnesota Resources.

Chapter 1 of this thesis is the first draft that was submitted and subsequently published as a featured article by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. The complete citation for that article is:

Johnson-Brice, S.M., K.M. Renik, S.K. Windels, and A.W. Hafs. 2018. A review of beaver–salmonid relationships and history of management actions in the Western Great Lakes (USA) region. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 38:1203-1225. https://doi.org/10.1002/nafm.10223

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Contents

LIST OF TABLES vii
LIST OF FIGURES viii
LIST OF APPENDICES x
CHAPTER 1: A REVIEW OF BEAVER-SALMONID RELATIONSHIPS AND HISTORY OF MANAGEMENT ACTIONS IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES (U.S.) REGION 11

INTRODUCTION 11

HISTORY OF SALMONIDS AND BEAVER IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION 14

REVIEW OF BEAVER INFLUENCE ON STREAMS AND SALMONIDS IN WESTERN GREAT LAKES 21

REVIEW OF BEAVER MANAGEMENT ON WGL SALMONID STREAMS 41

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS 53

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS 56

REFERENCES 57

TABLES 82

FIGURES 84

CHAPTER 2: EFFECT OF BEAVER ON BROOK TROUT HABITAT IN NORTH SHORE, LAKE SUPERIOR STREAMS 86

INTRODUCTION 87

METHODS 89

RESULTS 100

DISCUSSION 103

REFERENCES 107

FIGURES 115

APPENDIX A 127
APPENDIX B 130

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1.1. Summary of the main effects found from 21 beaver–salmonid studies conducted within the western Great Lakes region (Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Michigan). Average stream gradient was inferred from authors' comments or was obtained from stream assessments. Surficial geology was obtained from Soller et al. (2009). Textured grain size is further identified as coarse (C), fine (F), or medium (M); "patchy" indicates that bedrock is exposed. Analysis type was considered "empirical" if quantitative results were presented, "anecdotal" if no quantitative results were presented, or "mixed" if quantitative results were presented for only some of the study's variables. Results from each study were evaluated to determine whether beaver activity had a beneficial effect (↑), no effect (⇆), or a deleterious effect (↓) on salmonids. Studies with multiple arrow types in a cell indicate that multiple effects were found in different portions of the study area; unk. = unknown, ave. = average, and temp. = temperature. 82

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1. Map showing where beaver–salmonid studies have been conducted in the western Great Lakes region. Most of the studies are clustered regionally in northeast Wisconsin, east-central Minnesota, the north shore of Lake Superior, and the Upper Peninsula of Michigan. Several studies (Bradt 1935b; Salyer 1935; Twork 1936; Carbine 1944) did not include spatial information and are not pictured here. 84
Figure 1.2. Timeline of major events from different management eras and a graph of the approximate beaver population trend from the western Great Lakes (WGL) region (1870–present). The beaver population trendline was estimated from a combination of historical pelt records (Obbard et al. 1987), unpublished beaver colony count data from the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, and population data from the Wisconsin. 85
Department of Natural Resources (WDNR 2015). Percent maximum refers to the percentage of the maximum beaver population size after European settlement. Presettlement beaver abundance is unknown but was likely 50–100% of the 1990 peak. 85
Figure 2.1. Summer 2017 and 2018 stream and Beaver pond sampling sites along the North Shore, Lake Superior in Minnesota. 115
Figure 2.2. Maps represent the following calculated for Brook Trout in the Knife River: A) the average HSI (habitat suitability index), B) habitat suitability (m^2/100 m^2), C) growth rates (g/day), and D) growth availability (m^2/100 m^2). 116
Figure 2.3. Comparison of models used for stream sites between A) suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) and Brook Trout growth availability (m^2/100 m^2) and (B) average HSI (habitat suitability index) and mean Brook Trout growth (g/day). There is no evidence to suggest a statistical difference in means between model comparisons (*rho*=0.15; *rho*=0.12, respectively). 117
Figure 2.4. Comparison between pond and stream sampling sites of A) average HSI (habitat suitable index) scores and B) suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) calculated using the HSI model. There is no evidence to suggest a statistical difference in means between pond and stream sites (P=0.40; P=0.14, respectively). 118
Figure 2.5. No significant variables were identified as influencing A) the quality or B) quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the habitat suitability index (HSI) model. The regression tree identified no significant variables influencing C) stream area available for Brook Trout growth or D) mean Brook Trout growth in each site calculated using a bioenergetics model. 119
Figure 2.6. Significant variables affecting the quality of Brook Trout habitat, calculated from the habitat suitability index (HSI) model, included mean depth (m), mean velocity (m/sec), and maximum temperature (°C). Lower quality habitat occurred in streams with mean depth ≤ 0.128 m (P<0.001). Higher quality habitat occurred in streams with mean depth > 0.128 m, mean velocity ≤ 0.35 m/sec, and maximum temperature ≤ 24.26 °C (P<0.001; P=0.018; P=0.007, respectively). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers. 120
Figure 2.7. Regression tree analysis identified mean depth (m) and mean velocity (m/sec) as significant variables affecting Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the habitat suitability index (HSI) model. A lower quantity of habitat (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean depth ≤ 0.128 m (P=0.001). A greater quantity of habitat (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean

depth > 0.128 m and mean velocity ≤ 0.35 m/sec (*P*=0.001; *P*=0.002, respectively). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers..... 121

Figure 2.8. Regression tree analysis identified mean velocity (m/sec) and mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3) as a significant variables affecting Brook Trout growth availability (m^2/100 m^2) in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the bioenergetics model (Prey_Conc=Mean Prey Concentration). A greater quantity of growth (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean velocity ≤ 0.161 m (*P*<0.001) and the least amount of growth (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean velocity > 0.161 m/sec and mean prey concentrations ≤ 0.206 mg dry mass/m^3 (*P*<0.001; *P*=0.002, respectively). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers. 122

Figure 2.9. Regression tree analysis identified mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3) as a significant variables affecting mean Brook Trout growth (g/day) in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the bioenergetics model (Prey_Conc=Mean Prey Concentration). Growth rates (g/day) were higher in streams with mean prey concentration > 0.77 mg dry mass/m^3 (*P*<0.001) and lower in streams with mean prey concentration ≤ 0.136 mg dry mass/m^3 (*P*=0.015). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers. 123

Figure 2.10. Mean Brook Trout growth (m^2/100 m^2) compared to mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3) as calculated by the bioenergetics model in each stream site. 124

Figure 2.11. The regression tree identified no significant variables influencing A) the average HSI (habitat suitability index) score or B) the quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) of Beaver pond sites in North Shore tributaries calculated using the HSI model. 125

Figure 2.12. The quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) in Beaver ponds as calculated by the habitat suitability index (HSI) model compared to the average dissolved oxygen (mg/L) in each site. 126

LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix A.1. Summer 2017 and 2018 sampling sites along the North Shore, Lake Superior. 127
Appendix B.1. Bioenergetics Model Script 130

CHAPTER 1: A REVIEW OF BEAVER-SALMONID RELATIONSHIPS AND HISTORY OF MANAGEMENT ACTIONS IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES (U.S.) REGION

Abstract.- Within the western Great Lakes (WGL) U.S. region (Michigan, Minnesota, Wisconsin), the ecological impacts that North American Beavers *Castor canadensis* (hereafter referred to as Beaver) have on cold-water streams are generally considered to negatively affect salmonid populations where the two taxa interact. Beavers are common and widespread within the WGL region, while cold-water streams that support salmonid populations are scarcer landscape features; as such, all three states currently prioritize the habitat needs of salmonids in portions of each state by conducting Beaver control in cold-water tributaries. In this manuscript, we review the history of Beaver-salmonid interactions within the WGL region, describe how this relationship and management actions have evolved over the past century, and review all published studies from the region that have evaluated Beaver-salmonid interactions. Our review suggests the impact Beavers have varies spatially and temporally, depending on a variety of local ecological characteristics (e.g., stream gradient, prevalence of groundwater inputs). We found Beaver activity is often deleterious to salmonids in low-gradient stream basins, but generally beneficial in high-gradient basins; and ample groundwater inputs can offset the potential negative effects of Beavers by stabilizing the hydrologic and thermal regimes within streams. However, there was an obvious lack of empirical data and/or experimental controls within the reviewed studies, which we suggest emphasizes the need for more data-driven Beaver-salmonid research in the WGL region. Resource managers are routinely faced with an ecological dilemma between maintaining natural environmental processes within cold-water ecosystems and conducting Beaver control for the benefit of salmonids, and this dilemma is further complicated when the salmonids in question are a non-native species. We anticipate future Beaver-salmonid research will lead to a greater understanding of this ecologically-complex relationship that may better inform managers when and where Beaver control is necessary to achieve the desired management objectives.

INTRODUCTION

North American Beaver *Castor canadensis* activities affect many fish and wildlife species (Rosell et al. 2005; Windels 2017), but of particular interest to resource managers in the western Great Lakes (WGL) region is the effect that Beaver activity has on salmonids (family Salmonidae) in tributaries and inland streams within the region. As ecosystem engineers, Beavers disproportionately alter their environment through their dam-building and selective foraging habits (Rosell et al. 2005). Beaver dams impact streams by impounding the flow of running water, thereby reducing stream discharge and velocity (Naiman et al. 1988). Conditions upstream of the dam change from lotic to lentic, causing sediment, organic material, and water to accumulate (Naiman et al. 1986; Gurnell 1998). Over time, this leads to further alterations to stream hydrology, channel geomorphology, and riparian biogeochemical pathways (Naiman et al. 1988, 1994). These stream modifications can have cascading effects on salmonids, depending on local ecosystem characteristics. Most salmonid species spawn in stream sections with a slope between 0.5% and 3% (Beechie et al. 2008), coinciding with slopes preferred by Beaver (Allen 1983); as such, interactions between the two taxa have important implications for the long-term growth, sustainability, and size and age structure of local salmonid populations.

Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* is the only native salmonid species that regularly uses WGL streams, though several non-native Pacific salmonid species have been introduced since the late 19th century (Crawford 2001) and use WGL tributaries for spawning and rearing habitat (e.g., Rainbow Trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* [Biette et al. 1981], Chinook Salmon *O. tshawytscha,* and Coho Salmon *O. kisutch* [Carl 1982]). Most salmonid introductions and subsequent stocking programs were in response to declining commercial fisheries, stream habitat degradation, and to enhance recreational angling opportunities within Great Lakes streams (Mills et al. 1993). In the early 20th century, Beaver populations in the region began to recover from two centuries of overharvest (Knudsen 1963; Longley and Moyle 1963) at the same time that resource managers were focused on increasing salmonid populations, leading sportsmen and resource managers to begin evaluating the impact that growing Beaver populations had on cold-water stream ecosystems (Knudsen 1962).

Each state within the WGL region currently uses some form of control measures (e.g., trapping, Beaver removal, and dam removal) on cold-water salmonid streams where Beaver populations exist, though no synthesis on Beaver-salmonid studies or previous management programs within the region has been conducted to date. For the purpose of this review, we consider the WGL region to be coincident with the Laurentian Mixed Forest Province (unit code 212; Cleland et al. 2007) (geographic extent is similar to the Northern Lakes and Forest Ecoregion; Omernik and Gallant 1988), where all published studies to date have been conducted (Figure 1). We present an overview of Beaver-salmonid relationships within the WGL region, with a focus on how management practices have evolved over the past century. Our intent was not to duplicate the content of two other comprehensive global reviews of Beaver-fish interactions (Collen and Gibson 2001; Kemp et al. 2012), but to provide a refined review of Beaver-salmonid interactions that will be useful for biologists, natural resource managers, and other interested parties, particularly in the WGL region.

The first section details the early history of Beavers, native and non-native salmonids, and the efforts by resource managers within the WGL region to increase population sizes of both taxa. We then review the main effects that Beaver activities have on salmonid populations and habitat characteristics, summarize results from all published studies conducted within the WGL region, and identify information gaps where additional research can improve our understanding of the Beaver-salmonid relationship. This last section is most pertinent to Beaver's effects on Brook, Brown *Salmo trutta*, and to a lesser degree Rainbow trouts, as these species interact with Beavers more often than other salmonid species within WGL stream systems. Finally, we review the history of Beaver management actions on cold-water streams in the WGL region, and present recommendations for resource managers to use when designing management strategies aimed at addressing current and future Beaver-salmonid conflicts.

HISTORY OF SALMONIDS AND BEAVER IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION

Salmonid history

Agricultural and logging practices in the late 19th and early 20th centuries had a substantial impact on stream habitats in the WGL region. Vast tracts of old growth forest within the WGL region were clear-cut during this period, causing hydrologic and geomorphologic changes to streams (Fitzpatrick and Knox 2000; Whelan 2004) resulting from increased sediment loading, and stream flow and discharge rates (Verry et al. 1983; Verry 1986). The kinetic energy from log transportation down streams, coupled with large scale de-snagging and blasting operations, also had an enormous impact on streams (Whelan 2004; Zorn et al. unpublished), while land conversions during the homesteading era permanently altered the hydrologic and sediment dynamics of nearby stream systems (Fitzpatrick and Knox 2000; Anderson et al. 2006). Both short and long-term modifications to the lands surrounding WGL streams likely had a negative impact on historic native salmonid populations and habitats (DuBois and Pratt 1994). Indeed, logging, habitat degradation, and overexploitation are believed to have caused the extirpation of the Arctic grayling *Thymallus arcticus* from Michigan streams (Vincent 1962; Westerman 1974).

The first hatchery and stocking programs in the WGL region began in response to the declining native salmonid populations during the end of the 19th century. Atlantic Salmon *Salmo salar*, Chinook Salmon, Rainbow Trout, Brown Trout, and Cutthroat Trout *O. clarki* were stocked in the WGL region by 1900 (Emery 1985; Whelan 2004). Most of these early introductions failed to produce self-sustaining populations (Emery 1985; Crawford 2001; Whelan 2004); however, successful introductions of Brook, Brown, and Rainbow trouts did occur in portions of the WGL region. The first steelhead (potamodromous Rainbow Trout) populations were established in areas separate from where they were originally planted (Westerman 1974), and in the late 19th century Brook Trout were stocked along Minnesota’s Lake Superior coastline, expanding their range into thousands of miles of suitable habitat (Smith and Moyle 1944; Waters 1999). Brown Trout have been stocked in Michigan since 1884, where they have since become an important component of inland fisheries due to their ability to survive in warmer and more degraded streams than Brook Trout (Westerman 1974; Unfer and Pinter 2017).

The decline of Lake Trout *Salvelinus namaycush* fisheries in lakes Michigan and Superior during the mid-20th century led to a second era of salmonid stocking throughout the WGL region. The unintentional introduction of the invasive Sea Lamprey *Petromyzon marinus* after construction of the Welland Canal (Smith and Tibbles 1980), coupled with overexploitation of Lake Trout, led to the collapse of Lake Trout fisheries by the 1950s

(Smith 1968; Lawrie and Rahrer 1973; Wells and McLain 1973). Following the establishment of Alewives *Alosa pseudoharengus* and Rainbow Smelt *Osmerus mordax*, resource managers returned to stocking non-native salmonids to restore and diversify commercial fisheries, and control the non-native Alewives and Rainbow Smelt (Smith 1968; Crawford 2001; Whelan 2004). Chinook Salmon, Coho Salmon, and Rainbow Trout were introduced into the WGL region during this era, establishing successful and important sport and commercial fisheries (see: Parsons 1973; Emery 1985; Crawford 2001 for extensive summaries of salmonid introductions into the Great Lakes).

Today, many non-native salmonids continue to be stocked in the WGL region. The Michigan Department of Natural Resources (MDNR) currently stocks Chinook Salmon, Coho Salmon, and Brown Trout into Lake Michigan; splake (male Brook Trout × female Lake Trout) into lakes Huron and Superior; Rainbow Trout into lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior; and Brown and Rainbow trouts into inland streams (MDNR 2018). Minnesota currently stocks steelhead into Lake Superior, and Brown and Rainbow trouts into inland streams (Great Lakes Fishery Commission 2018). Finally, the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR) stocks Brown Trout, Rainbow Trout, and splake into lakes Michigan and Superior; Chinook and Coho salmons into Lake Michigan; and Brown and Rainbow trouts into inland streams (J. Mosher 2017, WDNR, personal communication). With the exception of the Lake Superior North shore steelhead population (MNDNR 2016), the effects of Beaver activity on non-native adfluvial salmonids remains largely unknown. Most of these species use WGL tributaries for spawning and rearing habitat, and are likely affected by Beavers in some capacity.

Managers within the WGL region are particularly concerned about interactions between Beavers and native Brook Trout. There are 2 variations of Brook Trout (tributary and coaster) that are distinguished by different morphological and life history traits (Burnham-Curtis 2000; D'Amelio 2002; Wilson et al. 2008). Tributary, or ‘resident’, Brook Trout reside entirely within riverine ecosystems and are generally smaller in size, while coasters are an adfluvial form of Brook Trout that are larger and mature at a later age than residents (Ridgway 2008; Wilson et al. 2008). Historically abundant throughout Lake Superior and select Lake Huron tributaries, coasters were highly prized among anglers and provided a productive fishery until the population crashed by the early 1900s due to overexploitation and habitat degradation (Huckins et al. 2008; Schreiner et al. 2008). Today, coasters exist in isolated remnant populations along the Lake Superior coastline (Wilson et al. 2008). The Great Lakes Fishery Commission developed a coaster Brook Trout rehabilitation plan in 2003 designed to aid Brook Trout proliferation throughout the Lake Superior basin (Newman et al. 2003; Schreiner 2008). The main objective of the plan is to establish wide-spread populations of Brook Trout that can successfully co-exist with naturalized, non-native salmonids (Newman et al. 2003). In addition to stocking programs and managing human exploitation, the plan also identifies controlling Beaver activity as a potential method for improving and maintaining spawning and rearing habitat (Newman et al. 2003). Following release of the rehabilitation plan and a related conference synthesizing coaster Brook Trout research in 2003 (Coaster Brook Trout Initiative), research on Lake Superior Brook Trout populations has increased substantially (e.g., Ridgway 2008; Huckins et al. 2008; Wilson et al. 2008; Dumke et al. 2010).

Brown and resident Brook trouts are the most common salmonids within WGL streams, and inland salmonid management of these species has largely focused on improving stream habitat and riparian land-use practices following the logging era. Stream improvement methods included using riprap for erosion control, wood and rock deflectors, log dams, tree plantings, stream bank debrushing, and waterfall modifications (Hunt 1988; Avery 2004; Goldsworthy et al. 2016). Inland management programs have generally been conducted at the local or watershed scale, though Michigan (Zorn et al. unpublished) and Wisconsin are currently developing state-wide inland salmonid management plans to guide salmonid management over the coming years. Though Beaver management has often been a peripheral part of management plans aimed at improving stream habitats and increasing salmonid populations, for some resource managers in the WGL region Beaver management is believed to be the most cost-effective salmonid habitat improvement method (Avery 2004; Willging 2017).

Beaver history

Before the fur trade reached the WGL region (approx. 1650), Native Americans harvested Beavers as a secondary source of food and warmth (Schorger 1965). Following European contact, Beaver pelts quickly became the most important trade good for Native Americans in the region, particularly as Beaver numbers declined in the eastern U.S. The fur trade began in the WGL region towards the end of the 17th century and continued through the middle of the 19th century until Beaver numbers diminished as a result of extensive exploitation (see: Ross 1938; Longley and Moyle 1963; Schorger 1965 for summaries of the fur trade within the WGL region).

Harvest by Native Americans during the pre-settlement era was likely far less than harvests during the fur trade era, when the Hudson Bay Company sold nearly 500,000 pelts annually in Europe (Obbard et al. 1987; Müller-Schwarze 2011). Many of these pelts came from Canada, but the WGL region quickly earned a reputation for producing some of the highest quality pelts available (Schorger 1965). Native Americans conducted most of the Beaver trapping in the region, trading pelts with English and French colonists. Accurate estimates of pre-settlement Beaver abundance are lacking (one estimate that includes Ontario puts the population at 2 million Beaver; Alcoze 1981), but pelt records from the WGL region indicate that Beaver populations were robust.

As the fur trade declined, settlers in the WGL region continued unregulated trapping of Beavers, further reducing Beaver abundance in the region (Knudsen 1963) and subsequently leading to periods of closed or partially closed trapping seasons. Wisconsin was the first state to enact partially closed trapping seasons from 1865–1879, where Beaver trapping was allowed only from November 1–May 1. Several full-season closures followed over the next several decades: 1893–1898, 1903–1916, and 1924–1933 (Knudsen 1963). Early Minnesota Beaver management followed a similar trajectory, with the first law restricting harvest occurring in 1875 (Longley and Moyle 1963). However, unrestricted harvest limits during the open season led to further population declines, until the state completely prohibited the take of Beavers at any time of year in 1909 (Longley and Moyle 1963). Beavers were not harvested again until 1919 when trappers were issued a license to remove nuisance Beavers (Longley and Moyle 1963). Michigan did not have its first closed Beaver season until 1920, and it remained closed until the Beaver population had increased dramatically during the 1920s (Bradt 1935b).

During this period of closed harvest seasons, wildlife managers across the WGL region also conducted a number of relocation and reintroduction efforts to assist Beaver propagation. It was common for landowners to request the release of Beavers on their property, which were often nuisance animals that needed to be removed from other locations (Bradt 1935b). One noteworthy reintroduction effort occurred in Itasca State Park, MN in 1901 when 3 Beavers arrived in Minnesota from Canada and were subsequently released into the park (Longley and Moyle 1963). Over the next two decades local managers monitored the Beavers' progress, and by 1921 it was estimated that nearly 1000 Beavers resided in the park (Longley and Moyle 1963). This event has reached folklore status in Minnesota, in part, because it demonstrates the rapidity at which Beavers can reproduce and colonize new areas. As a result of the restricted trapping seasons and conservation efforts from game managers, Beaver populations began to irrupt throughout the WGL region.

The rapid colonization and growth of Beavers in the WGL region was likely further influenced by ecological factors that promoted Beaver expansion. The timber harvest practices that severely degraded streams in the WGL region also altered forest composition across the region, including general shifts in forest structure from communities dominated by conifers to communities dominated by deciduous trees (White and Mladenoff 1994; Schulte et al. 2007). In Michigan and Wisconsin, selective logging of White Pine *Pinus strobus*, Hemlock *Tsuga canadensis*, and old growth hardwoods, followed by periods of intense slash fires, converted large tracts of forest to Sugar Maple

Acer saccharum, aspen *Populus grandidentata* and *P. tremuloides*, and oak *Quercas* spp. (Whitney 1987; White and Mladenoff 1994). As a result of logging and fire suppression management practices, Minnesota forests that had been adapted to periodic fire regimes underwent composition changes that resulted in forests dominated by aspen, spruce *Picea* spp., and Balsam Fir *Abies balsamea* (Friedman and Reich 2005). Aspen in particular has repeatedly been shown to be a preferred food item for Beavers (e.g., Aldous 1938; Stegeman 1954; Hall 1960), and the dramatic increase in the distribution and abundance of aspen is thought to have played a substantial role in the rapid Beaver population recovery (Knudsen 1963; Longley and Moyle 1963; WDNR 2015).

The reduction of natural predators in the WGL region also likely contributed to Beaver population recovery. In the early 20th century, state and federal bounties for Wolves *Canis lupus* led to significant Wolf population declines across the region (Boitani 2010). Considering Beavers have been shown to be an important food source for wolves (Mech 1970; Gable et al. 2016, 2018), even accounting for up to 50% of seasonal wolf diets (Voigt et al. 1976; Gable et al. 2017), suppressed Wolf populations could have allowed for Beaver population expansion at an even faster rate (Hartman 1994). Black Bears *Ursus americanus*, Coyotes *Canis latrans*, Bobcats *Lynx rufus*, Canada Lynx *L. canadensis*, and Mountain Lions *Felis concolor* also occasionally predate on Beavers (Baker and Hill 2003), and reduced populations of these other predators through the 1970s may have contributed to the rapid Beaver expansion.

REVIEW OF BEAVER INFLUENCE ON STREAMS AND SALMONIDS IN WESTERN GREAT LAKES

We reviewed the effects of Beaver activity on salmonid population ecology, growth rates, and habitat quality in the WGL region. We performed literature searches using ‘Google Scholar’ and ‘Web of Science’; keyword searches included ‘Beaver and trout’, ‘Beaver and salmonids’, ‘Michigan Beaver and trout’, ‘Minnesota Beaver and trout’, ‘Wisconsin Beaver and trout’. Additional relevant articles were obtained from bibliographies of acquired articles with emphasis on study site location, fish species, and Beaver activity. Our review was limited to studies that have been published in peer-reviewed journals, theses and dissertations, and reports from state agencies that have been published or made publicly available. We acknowledge that state, federal, and tribal agencies from the WGL region likely have unpublished data pertaining to Beaver-salmonid interactions. However, we have based this review only on data and reports that are readily available to the public.

We reviewed 21 studies evaluating Beaver-salmonid interactions in Michigan, Minnesota, and Wisconsin (Table 1), which spanned 1935–2012, the most recent year that a Beaver-salmonid study has been published. Some published reports from the WGL region contain duplicate data (e.g., Avery 1992 and Avery 2002; and Hale and Jarvenpa 1950 and Hale 1966), so we selected only one of these reports for representation in Table 1. Each study was evaluated to determine if the conclusions were based on empirical data or were anecdotal in nature. From each article, statements pertaining to the effect of Beaver on salmonids were evaluated as positive, negative, or no effect. Since relatively little research has been conducted in the WGL region, in each section we first present the main effects that Beaver activity has on salmonid populations and habitat characteristics from studies across the taxa’s ranges. We then review the main results from studies conducted within the WGL region, and identify information gaps where future research could be conducted.

Stream hydrology and geomorphology

Beaver dams generally create lower but more consistent flows in stream systems (Cook 1940; Bruner 1989; Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999), increasing the water-holding capacity of a watershed, elevating the water table, and suppressing peak discharges (Finnegan and Marshall 1997; Bouwes et al. 2016). Beaver dams reduce stream energy and increase retention time by dissipating energy through the dam materials and riparian vegetation (Woo and Waddington 1990; Dunaway et al. 1994), and creating more complex flow pathways (Majerova et al. 2015). Generally, stream velocity is greater and substratum is coarser below Beaver dams compared to above dams, potentially benefitting fish that depend on those habitat characteristics (Smith and Mather 2013). Salmonids living in areas with low stream flow or drought can also benefit from Beaver dam presence (Cook 1940; Knudsen 1962; Bruner 1989; Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999), as streams with Beaver impoundments can retain water longer during dry periods than streams without Beaver dams (Parker 1986; Gurnell 1998). Beaver dams can augment low stream flows by recharging alluvial aquifers, and while the amount of water storage behind dams is relatively minor in comparison to the recharged aquifers (Dunne 1978; Lowry 1993), Beaver ponds can nonetheless provide refuge for salmonids during low flow periods (provided water temperatures remain within thermal limits).

Most research evaluating how Beaver dams influence hydrologic pathways has been conducted in mountainous areas, so the effects of Beaver dams on stream hydrology in the WGL region are likely different. In contrast to mountainous areas where salmonid streams are often sourced by snowmelt, WGL salmonid streams are sourced by precipitation and groundwater inputs. Consequently, the distribution and abundance of salmonids in the WGL region are generally determined by reach and watershed characteristics that influence the hydrologic and thermal regimes of stream systems (Lyons 1996; Wehrly et al. 2003). In particular, reach geomorphology, catchment area, and bedrock and quaternary (surficial) geologies can reasonably predict the spatial assemblage of salmonid populations (Wiley et al. 1997; Wang et al. 2003), due to their influence on groundwater flow patterns. Salmonid presence is correlated with hydrologically stable stream systems (Zorn et al. 2002) that are generally comprised of surficial materials with greater hydraulic connectivity, such as glacial outwashes and coarse-textured glacial till landforms (Wiley et al. 1997). However, within the WGL region there is substantial variation in bedrock and surficial geologies (Soller et al. 2009). Glacial erosion and deposition resulted in diverse landforms throughout the WGL region that differ in their ability to hold and transport water (Neff et al. 2005), and this heterogenous composition makes extrapolating results of Beaver-salmonid studies from one area to another difficult. How Beaver dams may influence lateral and longitudinal flow pathways will likely differ between surficial materials, though this topic remains largely unexplored within the region. Though no discernible patterns of surficial geology were found in the reviewed studies (Table 1), it’s likely that patterns may emerge if surficial geology is evaluated alongside local watershed, topographic, and thermal characteristics. Our sample size is not large enough to draw such conclusions, but future research may be able to reexamine this issue.

Beaver ponds increase the spatial heterogeneity and longitudinal complexity between stream reaches by altering the geomorphology of stream systems (Naiman et al. 1988). Salmonid populations are dependent on habitat heterogeneity, with different life stages requiring unique habitat characteristics and a degree of connectivity to fulfill their distinctive life history (Bjornn and Reiser 1991; Schlosser 1991). As such, increased habitat complexity from Beaver activity may positively influence salmonid populations by providing a greater selection of places to forage, rest, and avoid high flow events (Bouwes et al. 2016). Since Beaver ponds are ephemeral in nature, they may also benefit fish by offering a unique heterogenous habitat component that functions on a spatiotemporal scale (Fausch et al. 2002).

Cold-water streams in the WGL region have been observed to become wider and shallower following repetitive dam construction (Salyer 1935). Following Beaver trapping and dam removal in a Pine County, Minnesota stream, the stream channels became deeper and narrower, and the pool-riffle ratio improved (Haugstad 1970). Other observations included the narrowing of stream channels, and an increase in average stream flow velocity and coarse gravel substrate following woody debris and Beaver dam removal on Lake Superior tributaries (DuBois and Schram 1993; Dumke et al. 2010). We note that in some systems the narrowing of channels may cause streams to become incised and/or entrenched, and particularly in Western U.S. stream systems Beavers are commonly used as a biological restoration tool to reduce channel incision (Burchsted et al. 2010; Pollock et al. 2014). In the Peshtigo River watershed, Wisconsin, an increase in Beaver colonies reduced water flow rates in feeder streams (Patterson 1951), while in central Wisconsin, Beaver activity may have positively influenced salmonid populations by retaining water within ponds while other stream sections dried up (Knudsen 1962).

Water chemistry

The effects of Beaver activity on water chemistry vary regionally and are dependent upon original conditions (Collen and Gibson 2001), and the impact of Beavers on dissolved oxygen (DO) levels is particularly important to salmonids. Beaver activities may decrease DO levels in a stream by increasing water temperatures and reducing stream flow, the latter of which also decreases stream aeration. Although Smith et al. (1991) suggested the influence of Beaver dams on DO levels is localized to within impoundments as stream water quickly achieves complete reoxygenation just downstream of the dam. As Beaver ponds age and expand, increases in microbial respiration within flooded soils and allochthonous inputs of organic matter also occur (Pollock et al. 1995; Songster-Alpin and Klotz 1995; Bertolo et al. 2008). Some of the organic matter gets deposited as sedimental layers within the impoundments (Johnston and Naiman 1987), further reducing DO levels (commonly referred to as sediment oxygen demand).

Observations from the WGL region have generally found Beaver activity negatively affects DO levels (Table 1). Prior to Beaver dam removal, DO levels were recorded as low as 0.1 mg/L within Beaver ponds in one Wisconsin watershed (Avery 2002). However, a reinvestigation of this study concluded there was only a 2 mg/L improvement in DO after Beaver dam removal, even with Beaver ponds creating localized areas of oxygen depletion (Popelars 2008). In Pine County, Minnesota, Klein and Newman (1992) recorded the lowest DO levels in dammed stream sections, but found DO levels increased into suitable salmonid thresholds after dam removal. Salyer (1935) stated that the organic matter present in Beaver ponds throughout Michigan streams reduced DO levels, but that reduction varied from minute to extreme depending on the system.

Beaver impoundments also affect other water chemistry characteristics including pH and dissolved nutrient levels (Smith et al. 1991; Johnston 2017). Beaver activity alters the distribution and loading of nutrients within riparian ecosystems, where impoundments act as nutrient sinks with greater concentrations of dissolved organic material relative to other stream sections (Naiman et al. 1986; Johnston and Naiman 1987; Naiman et al. 1994). In particular, Beaver impoundments sequester large amounts of dissolved carbon, phosphorous, and nitrogen (Dillon et al. 1991; Naiman et al. 1994; Johnston 2012, 2014), which may benefit salmonids in nutrient-poor ecosystems. However, a recent meta-analysis suggests that phosphorous retention generally occurs only in older ponds (Ecke et al. 2017). An early study from the Michigan Upper Peninsula (UP) found Beaver ponds to be more acidic than other stream reaches (Salyer 1935), yet recent research indicates that Beaver wetlands actually increase the acid-neutralizing capacity of streams by retaining acidic inputs within sediment layers (Smith et al. 1991; Cirmo and Driscoll 1993; Margolis et al. 2001; Błędzki et al. 2010). This may benefit salmonids in stream systems with high acid deposition, but this has not yet been examined.

Water temperature

Stream temperature is often the most important limiting factor for suitable salmonid habitat in the WGL region, and Beaver activity can influence stream temperatures in several different ways. Beaver activities can indirectly increase water temperatures by impounding streams and reducing canopy cover, leading to increased rates of solar radiation (Evans 1948; Patterson 1951; Christenson et al. 1961; Hale 1966).

Beaver ponds can maintain water temperatures independent of air temperature changes (Weber et al. 2017), as impoundments can force water around and beneath Beaver dams, cooling it as it seeps through the ground and back into the stream (White 1990; Westbrook et al. 2006; Müller-Schwarze 2011). Temperature stratification can also occur in deep ponds, potentially providing salmonid species with thermal refugia during warmer months (Gard 1961; Benson 2002; Bouwes et al. 2016). The effects of Beaver dams on water temperature may differ with Beaver pond age and size (Cook 1940; Call 1970), as newer ponds generally have greater percolation through the dam relative to older ponds, reducing water retention time (Call 1970).

Observations on stream temperature were the most commonly cited effects from within the WGL region, with most studies reporting negative effects from Beaver activity (Table 1). Stream temperatures in the Peshtigo River watershed in Wisconsin were elevated due to reduced streamside cover from Beaver activity (Patterson 1951), and similar observations were made in the Knife River, Minnesota (Smith and Moyle 1944). In the same study, summer water temperatures were significantly cooler following Beaver dam removal (Smith and Moyle 1944), and more recently, water temperatures below Beaver dam outlets in the Knife River watershed were within the stressful and/or lethal threshold limits of Brook Trout more than 50% of the time (Peterson 2012). Water temperatures in the Pemonee River watershed, Wisconsin were cooler following Beaver dam removal, and remained cooler even 18 years after the initial dam removal efforts (Avery 2002). However, Beaver activity had no significant influence on stream temperatures within several study systems in the WGL region (Adams 1949, 1954; Shetter and Whalls 1955; Hale 1966; Klein and Newman 1992; DuBois and Schram

1993; Dumke et al. 2010). Additionally, Hale (1966) believed salmonids used Beaver ponds as thermal refuge in a Lake Superior tributary in Minnesota, while McRae and Edwards (1994) found Beaver dams reduced the magnitude of thermal diel fluctuations within their study area. McRae and Edwards (1994) also examined the influence of Beaver dam density and Beaver pond size on stream temperatures, concluding that temperature was not influenced by either factor. We note their study area (Peshtigo River watershed) has ample groundwater inputs throughout the stream system, which may partially explain the observed stable thermal regimes.

The effects of Beaver activity on water temperature have received more attention and research in the WGL region than other aspects of the Beaver-salmonid relationship. However, we believe some of the recorded effects on water temperature may be misleading as they were often recorded at locations where water temperatures are likely higher than the average stream temperature (e.g., surface water temperatures, or at the immediate outlet of Beaver dams). Recording temperatures at the bottom of Beaver ponds and/or from a moderate distance (>50 m) downstream of dams could obtain a more accurate representation of how Beavers influence thermal regimes.

The spatial assemblage of salmonids within the WGL region are closely tied to the thermal regimes of stream systems (Lyons 1996; Wehrly et al. 2003). As a cold-water species, salmonids' persistence within streams is reliant on just that—*cold water*. That Beaver dam presence increases stream temperatures within the WGL region appears conclusive (Table 1); yet, whether this increase in temperature has a deleterious impact on salmonids is dependent on whether the resultant water temperature exceeds salmonid temperature limits, or if thermal refugia is not readily accessible. If the resultant water temperature remains within salmonid thermal tolerance limits, then Beaver dam presence cannot be considered to negatively affect stream temperatures. There is a tendency to conclude that any increase in temperature is a negative attribute; but this is only true when the increased temperature has a negative effect on salmonid survival. Many streams within the WGL region that contain salmonids have natural temperature regimes that approach salmonid thermal limits, and Beaver presence within these stream systems is more likely to raise stream temperatures above salmonid thermal limits. Understanding the natural thermal regimes of streams is important to recognize whether Beaver dam presence will ultimately stress and/or lead to salmonid mortality, and whether these patterns will change under varying environmental conditions.

Spawning habitat

Salmonid reproductive success and population persistence is dependent on the ability of individuals to reach spawning grounds and dig redds in habitat suitable for egg survival (Beechie et al. 2008). Habitat variables that affect site selection by salmonids include gravel size, water velocity, depth, and temperature (Essington et al. 1998; Armstrong et al. 2003; Beechie et al. 2008). Salmonid eggs require free-flowing cold water in order to provide enough oxygen to the developing embryos (Chapman 1988), and many salmonid species (e.g., Brook Trout and Chinook Salmon) exhibit a preference for spawning sites within the hyporheic zone where groundwater upwellings and surface water flow pathways interact (Curry and Noakes 1995; Geist and Dauble 1998). Salmonids generally dig redds in reaches with coarse-textured gravel substrates, and the distribution of suitable habitat may limit salmonid populations within stream systems (Kondolf and Wolman 1993). Limited spawning habitat availability may lead to redd superimposition (Curry and Noakes 1995), although some salmonid species (e.g., Brown Trout) also display a behavioral preference to spawn on existing redd sites even in low redd densities (Essington et al. 1998). Redds that are dug too deep into substrates can reduce egg hatching success due to the effects on temperature and diminished access to free-flowing water (Crisp 1996; Sternecker et al. 2012). Additionally, the deposition of fine sediments may reduce egg survival and emergence (Chapman 1988), but this may be offset if stream flows are high enough to prevent sediment buildup (Payne and Lapointe 1997; Armstrong et al. 2003).

Beaver activities can affect salmonid spawning habitats by altering sediment dynamics within stream systems. Organic materials are deposited as layers of fine sediment within Beaver impoundments (Johnston and Naiman 1987), which can ultimately affect salmonid populations when the fine sediments bury gravel substrates (Alexander and Hansen 1986; Waters 1995; Lisle 2010). Based on a sample of 353 active Beaver ponds located throughout Wisconsin, layers of mineral and organic matter were present in 100% of bottom sediments, with all samples revealing silt layers ranging from approximately 1 to 5 cm in depth (Christenson et al. 1961; Knudsen 1962). Patterson (1951) suggested that Brook Trout were unable to spawn due to siltation and blocked migration caused by Beaver dams in Wisconsin streams, and Salyer (1935) observed that silt was deposited over salmonid eggs in Michigan streams. Scarcity of age-0 Brook Trout upstream of dams and decreased viability of eggs located directly downstream were observed in a Minnesota stream (Hale 1966). Beaver dam removal was also observed to reduce sand bed loading and expose gravel substrates, improving access to salmonid spawning sites (Haugstad 1970; DuBois and Schram 1993; Dumke et al. 2010).

Contrarily, the retention of siltation behind an impoundment may lead to a greater prevalence of gravel substrate downstream (Levine and Meyer 2014), potentially improving salmonid spawning habitat (Grasse 1951).

Movement Barrier

Beaver dams can limit salmonids' access to suitable spawning habitat by impeding movements within stream reaches. Limitation of these movements may lead to a decline or extirpation of salmonid populations in streams or stream segments (Bylak et al. 2014), and the degree to which Beaver dams impede salmonid movement can often be influenced by stream flow conditions (Schlosser 1995a; Snodgrass and Meffe 1998). Salmonids that spawn during higher stream flows in spring (e.g., Rainbow Trout) may find dams passable, while other species that spawn during lower average stream flows (e.g., Brook Trout) may be unable to bypass dams and potentially force them to spawn in less suitable habitat (Grasse and Putnam 1955). Shallow plunge pools can hinder Brook Trout's ability to jump (Kondratieff and Myrick 2006), which may further restrict the fish's ability to pass Beaver dams during low flow conditions. Brook Trout passed dams more frequently than Brown Trout in Utah more often during periods of high stream flow by taking advantage of side channels and increased stream flow over and through dams (Lokteff et al. 2013).

Beaver dams were frequently reported to impede salmonid migration from published studies within the WGL region (Table 1). However, only two of the studies used tagged fish to evaluate how Beaver dams affected salmonid movements. Salyer (1935) found salmonids could readily pass dams downstream, but not upstream, where better spawning habitats were generally located; and Avery (2002) noted an increase in the spatial distribution of Brook Trout following Beaver dam removal, suggesting that the dams impeded movement into some reaches. Other studies from the WGL region speculated or used anecdotal evidence to conclude Beaver dams impede salmonid migration (Table 1). Because most of the published research from the WGL region on this topic is speculative, it is possible salmonids are actually able to bypass some Beaver dams. Logically the presence of dams hinders salmonid movements greater than if the dams were not present; but that does not necessarily mean fish are *unable* to bypass the dams and thereby limit up/downstream migration. Ultimately, more research is needed to determine which salmonid species are better able to navigate dams; the characteristics of dams (e.g., height, permeability) that are more likely to restrict salmonid movements; the stream flow conditions that often restrict salmonid movements; and finally, whether restricted movements will have an appreciable impact on salmonid populations. From a population perspective, if Beaver dams restrict passage under certain scenarios the detrimental effects may be exacerbated if the dams limit access to the often-limited spawning habitat sites during the spawning season(s). Using telemetry studies to monitor fine-scale salmonid movements could provide a greater understanding into the ability salmonids have to bypass Beaver dams (e.g., Lokteff et al. 2013).

Individual growth rates

Beaver dam presence tends to positively affect salmonid growth rates (Cook 1940; Patterson 1951; Shetter and Whalls 1955; Rosell and Parker 1996; McCaffery 2009). During low-flow summer months, juvenile Brook Trout adopt a habitat-use strategy that reduces energetic demands by seeking out deep, low-velocity pools (Sotiropoulos et al. 2006), which likely includes utilizing Beaver impoundments. Beaver activity can also lead to increased invertebrate productivity. Aquatic invertebrates are a primary food source for several age classes of stream-dwelling salmonids, and invertebrate populations readily respond to changes in stream systems induced by Beaver activities (McDowell and Naiman 1986). As a section of stream changes from lotic to lentic, invertebrate composition generally shifts from filter-feeding insects to collector-gatherers (Sprules 1941; McDowell and Naiman 1986). Beaver ponds may have a lower species diversity of invertebrates, but generally have a higher total biomass and density of aquatic organisms relative to other stream reaches (Rupp 1955; Gard 1961; McDowell and Naiman 1986). However, stream sedimentation can decrease the abundance of invertebrate orders Ephemeroptera, Plecoptera, and Trichoptera which are important food sources for all salmonid life stages, potentially limiting growth rates (Hale 1966; McMahon 1983; Waters 1995). Increased sedimentation may also cause an increase in burrowing invertebrates, thereby reducing the amount of vulnerable prey available to salmonids and impairing growth (Suttle et al. 2004). The interplay of sedimentation, invertebrate community shifts, and salmonid growth rates is complex and warrants additional research, as most of the information regarding how Beavers influence these dynamics remains speculative.

Salmonids tend to be larger within Beaver impoundments relative to other stream sections (Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999; Bylak et al. 2014), and results from published studies in the WGL region generally support this conclusion (Table 1). In a Lake Superior tributary in Minnesota, the largest Brook Trout were found within Beaver ponds, with growth attributed to higher populations of minnows (Hale 1966). Higher water temperatures associated with Beaver ponds may also contribute to increased salmonid growth (Rosell and Parker 1996), though considering many salmonid streams within the WGL region are already near the upper thermal limits of salmonids during summer months (see *Water quality* section), this increase in temperature may be deleterious. Avery (2002) found the average size of age-1 Brook Trout to be larger after removing Beaver dams from a watershed in northeastern Wisconsin, attributing the increase in growth rate to decreased water temperatures, increased gravel exposure, and increased aquatic invertebrate biomass. The summer after a Beaver dam collapsed in a Lake Superior tributary in Minnesota, Hale (1966) observed invertebrate species composition more closely resembled communities found in streams rather than Beaver ponds. These results suggest invertebrate composition can respond quickly to changes in stream habitat, and corroborates the findings from Avery's (2002) study.

The observation of larger fish within Beaver ponds does not necessarily reflect a faster growth rate, but is perhaps a function of how Beaver dams influence the distribution of different salmonid age classes. Indeed, Beaver dams have been shown to influence the spatial distribution of fish (see next section), so creel data alone cannot definitively indicate that Beaver ponds positively influence salmonid growth rates. Future research from the WGL region could use a paired study design to compare salmonid growth rates in streams with and without Beaver ponds to determine the influence that Beaver ponds exert on growth rates.

Population dynamics

In general, Beaver ponds influence the spatial and temporal distribution of fish species and age classes within stream systems by increasing the heterogeneity of habitat features (Schlosser 1995a; Snodgrass and Meffe 1998; Schlosser 1998; Snodgrass and

Meffe 1999; Schlosser and Kallemeyn 2000; Mitchell and Cunjak 2007). Research from Minnesota has shown that Beaver ponds can influence the spatial assemblage of fish, where fish abundance was higher in upland ponds and species richness was greater in streams and collapsed ponds (i.e., ponds with degraded dams that are not actively retaining water) (Schlosser and Kallemeyn 2000). Further, species richness and species composition can vary within and among Beaver ponds over time (Snodgrass and Meffe 1998), but currently no study that has evaluated fish assemblages within Beaver ponds has included a salmonid component. In addition to providing refuge for salmonids during summer months and periods of low flow, salmonids may benefit from overwintering habitat provided by large pools above Beaver dams (Cunjak 1996; Virbickas et al. 2015). Many streams within the WGL region freeze during winter so Beaver ponds may provide invaluable refuge for salmonids, but this has not been empirically tested to date. Conversely, extended ice cover on Beaver ponds could also contribute to winter fish kills if conditions within the ponds become hypoxic (Keast and Fox 1990; Fox and Keast 1990).

Beaver ponds can also affect fish population dynamics by creating population source-sink relationships within stream systems (Schlosser 1995a, 1995b). Beaver ponds can offer greater rearing habitat availability within streams (Leidholt-Bruner et al. 1992), and the lateral habitats along the shallow, littoral edges of Beaver ponds may be critical for the survival of juvenile fish (Moore and Gregory 1988; Schlosser 1991, 1995b). Beaver ponds can thereby act as key source areas for fish species (Fausch et al. 2002), depending on the spatial variation of pond morphology and the permeability of pond boundaries within stream systems (Schlosser 1995a, 1998). For Brook Trout, Beaver ponds serve as potential source areas due to abundant benthic fauna that can be exploited (Gard 1961). Although Johnson et al. (1992) found Beaver ponds with habitat factors that promote high Brook Trout densities actually led to localized populations of small, stunted Brook Trout, suggesting Brook Trout growth rates are density dependent. Source-sink dynamics of fish populations are complex, and all studies that have found source-sink population dynamics within Beaver ponds did not include salmonids in their evaluation. Yet, given that Beaver dams increase the complexity and heterogeneity of stream systems, it seems probable that source-sink dynamics of salmonid populations could develop within Beaver pond complexes where fish could have access to a variety of habitats across suitable spatial and temporal scales.

Beaver activities can alter biotic interactions between salmonids and other species that may affect predation risk. Beaver ponds provide habitat for a variety of bird and mammal predators, including Great Blue Herons *Ardea herodias*, Osprey *Pandion haliaetus*, mergansers *Mergus* spp., Northern River Otters *Lontra canadensis*, American Mink *Neovison vison*, and Northern Raccoons *Procyon lotor* (Windels 2017). Because salmonids can become concentrated in Beaver ponds, they may face increased predation pressure as a result (Salyer 1935; Needham 1938), though this has not been tested to date. In Wisconsin, reduced salmonid catch rates were noted following an increase in piscivorous fish populations, including Northern Pike *Esox lucius*, likely due to the shallow, grassy habitat and higher water temperatures within Beaver ponds (Knudsen 1962). Conversely, the increased habitat heterogeneity from dam creation may provide refuge from predators for various life stages (Snodgrass and Meffe 1998).

Beaver activity has also been suggested to increase the prevalence of disease and parasites in salmonids (Knudsen 1962). Greater siltation and water temperatures can induce stress in salmonids, thereby increasing their susceptibility to disease (Grasse 1951; Wood and Armitage 1997; Gordon et al. 2004). Observations in Michigan streams showed increased prevalence of trematodes associated with black spot disease (Miller 1940), and parasitic nematodes in salmonids inhabiting Beaver ponds (Salyer 1935). The prevalence of gill lice *Salmincola edwardsii*, a parasite that is often found in Beaver impoundments, has reportedly increased recently in several Wisconsin streams (WDNR 2015). More research is needed to understand whether Beaver ponds are responsible for facilitating parasite proliferation within these stream systems.

Salmonid population densities in the WGL region have been shown to increase following Beaver dam construction (Salyer 1935; Bradt 1935b; Hale and Jarvenpa 1950; Patterson 1951; Knudsen 1962). Similar to growth rates, angler catch rates from within Beaver ponds tend to be greater than other stream sections (Table 1), which could lead to misconceptions of larger salmonid population sizes than are actually present within the streams. In several Lake Superior tributaries in Minnesota, greater Brook Trout densities were actually found in streams with less Beaver activity (Hale 1966), and in Pine County, Minnesota streams, the removal of Beaver dams resulted in improvements in Brook Trout catch rates (Haugstad 1970). In a long-term Wisconsin study, the distribution and abundance of Brook Trout was substantially improved 4 and 18 years after Beaver dam removal (Avery 2002); although, another Wisconsin study found that Beaver dam removal had little impact on Brook Trout population density, while the density of younger Brown and steelhead trouts increased (DuBois and Schram 1993). Patterson

(1951) found decreases in populations of Brook and Brown trouts several years after Beaver occupation of stream reaches, but the declines were likely influenced by intense angling pressure that occurred following the aggregation of fish within the ponds.

While Beaver dam removal projects can provide insight into salmonid population responses, few studies have used a paired study design to objectively compare population responses. Moreover, because population responses may take several years to emerge (e.g., Avery 2002), accurate evaluations of how Beavers influence salmonid populations likely requires a long-term monitoring plan that is often logistically challenging to implement. Future evaluations of how Beaver dams influence salmonid population dynamics should include both a paired study design and a long-term monitoring plan in order to adequately evaluate population responses that may have a temporal delay.

Conclusions from Beaver-salmonid review

Our review found a dearth of empirical data evaluating Beaver-salmonid interactions in the WGL region, limiting what conclusions we can draw from existing information on the subject. The majority of the studies occurred before 1970, and many studies relied heavily on anecdotal observations for their conclusions (Table 1). Few studies employed any statistical analysis, and only four studies were published in peer-reviewed journals. Species descriptions were often left as “trout” which further obscures the generalizability of results. Nonetheless, the studies we reviewed are often used as justification for implementing Beaver management programs (e.g., WDNR 2015) despite an absence of experimental controls or systematic sampling methodologies. Additionally, the majority of the WGL region studies reviewed were conducted in clustered locations within the WGL region (Figure 1). To date, no Beaver-salmonid studies from Michigan, Minnesota, or Wisconsin have occurred outside of the Laurentian Mixed Forest Province, though we believe that most state agencies have a large amount of unpublished data pertaining to Beaver-salmonid interactions. Considering the sparse information that is currently available to the public, we believe the dissemination of this data could provide valuable insight into how Beavers affect salmonids within the region. However, state agencies are often limited in their capacity to conduct and/or publish studies as a result of funding and staff shortages, likely contributing to the lack of publicly available data from the WGL region.

Despite the variability of results found within the WGL region, some patterns did emerge from the studies evaluated. Beaver activity tended to benefit salmonids during the first 2–4 years following dam construction. Salmonids likely take advantage of the pools and increased habitat heterogeneity that newly created impoundments offer them by using these features for refugia and food sources. Yet over time, the accumulation of sediment and alterations to water quality characteristics and discharge regimes often has a deleterious effect on local salmonid populations. Additionally, Beaver activity was more often deleterious in low-gradient stream systems (i.e., slopes < 2%; Rosgen 1994). The few studies evaluating the impact of Beaver in relatively high-gradient systems (Salyer 1935; Evans 1948; Hale and Jarvenpa 1950; Hale 1966) reported positive effects more often than other studies. Beaver dams fail more frequently in high-gradient stream reaches (Gurnell 1998), and thus ponds upstream of dams tend to be younger on average than those in low-gradient reaches. Ponds in high-gradient systems may fail before they are able to degrade and become unsuitable habitat for trout. Nonetheless, this general pattern has inconsistencies, as Hale (1966) reported that Beaver dams often persisted beyond 4 years in his study area with high-gradient streams, and resulted in ponds that were poor Brook Trout habitat.

REVIEW OF BEAVER MANAGEMENT ON WGL SALMONID STREAMS

Rise of Beaver-salmonid conflicts

Despite extensive poaching that occurred during closed trapping seasons in the 1920s, by 1930 Beavers had expanded their range to every major salmonid stream in Michigan (Bradt 1935a; Salyer 1935). In response, the Michigan state legislature ordered the first Beaver-salmonid study in 1933 (Bradt 1935a). This first report (Salyer 1935) was an extensive combination of field-based observations and experimental manipulations, and relied heavily on input from local fish and game chapters that were noticeably divided about the "Beaver problem". Though results from experimental stream sections indicated that Beaver activity tended to be deleterious for salmonid populations (Table 1), Salyer (1935) acknowledged that Beaver could become an aid for salmonid streams if managed correctly, particularly in the high-gradient tributaries of Lake Superior. Salyer also suggested that a balance between the three desirable natural resources (Beaver, salmonids, forest) was needed (Figure 2); however, he does not elaborate on this point, and concluded his report by noting that Beavers should not occupy cold-water streams without active control.

In response to Salyer's (1935) report, the Civilian Conservation Corps removed more than 5,000 Beaver dams from Michigan cold-water streams over a 2-year period (Bradt 1947). This action was coupled with extensive trapping efforts and resulted in a precipitous decline in the Michigan Beaver population. It should be noted that following the extensive dam removal project, Michigan anglers noticed fishing success actually declined in UP salmonid streams (Carbine 1944), suggesting the project overshot its management goals. Indeed, though Carbine (1944) advocated for Beaver control in the UP and believed Salyer (1935) incorrectly asserted that Beaver presence was good for salmonids in Lake Superior tributaries, he wrote: “There is no denying that it was a sad day when that program was started (p. 29).” Wildlife management was still in its infancy in the 1930s, and though Salyer’s recommendations were aggressive and ultimately resulted in poorer fishing conditions, they were also emblematic of the growing emphasis placed on scientific research and experimental manipulation that characterized his era of resource managers. Salyer recognized that effectively managing for Beaver, salmonids, and timber resources was a complex and polarizing issue that required extensive research into understanding the intricacies of the Beaver-salmonid relationship. His investigation laid the foundation for WGL region Beaver-salmonid research, prompting managers in Minnesota and Wisconsin to begin similar investigations into Beaver-salmonid interactions in their states.

Controversy regarding Beaver-salmonid management reached Wisconsin by the mid-1930s and was the catalyst for the first Beaver dam removal efforts in Wisconsin (Hunt 1988), when 740 Beaver dams were removed from northern streams (Christenson et al. 1961). Despite harvesting nearly 50,000 Beavers from 1934–1944, the Beaver population continued to increase in the late 1940s (Christenson et al. 1961; Knudsen 1963). In 1949, the Wisconsin Conservation Department issued an official statement acknowledging the increasing problem that Beavers posed to fish and timber management (Christenson et al. 1961), prompting a decade-long investigation to determine the best possible multiple-use management plan for Beaver, salmonid, and forest resources (Knudsen 1962). Wisconsin Conservation Department trappers also live-trapped and relocated 2,200 nuisance Beavers from 1951–1957 as part of the state-wide Beaver management plan (Knudsen and Hale 1965). Knudsen (1962) concluded that while Beavers provide greater value to Wisconsin communities than previously assumed, salmonid and timber resources must be prioritized over Beaver in some areas, particularly on slow-moving, low-gradient streams where Beaver activity was detrimental to salmonid habitat. Management recommendations included adopting specialized harvest sites to reduce Beaver impacts on salmonid streams and timber resources, but Beaver populations should otherwise be maximized due to the economic and aesthetic values associated with Beaver presence (Knudsen 1962). The management recommendations are emblematic of an increased focus on using adaptive management strategies that were more responsive to competing Beaver, salmonid, and forest resources occupying the same area (Figure 2).

In Minnesota, three studies (Smith and Moyle 1944; Hale 1950, 1966) were conducted along the north shore of Lake Superior to evaluate what impact Beaver impoundments were having on salmonid streams. While most of Minnesota had open trapping seasons starting in 1939, the north shore had closed or partially closed trapping seasons nearly every year into the 1960s (Hale 1966). Due to increased Beaver activities in the region, higher stream temperatures were attributed to a lack of shade produced by Beaver meadows (Smith and Moyle 1944). This led to a proposed management program for the Knife River in the 1940s, which included Beaver and dam removal, and stream habitat improvement projects (Smith and Moyle 1944). Most of the north shore streams are relatively high-gradient, and results from Hale's (1950, 1966) studies found Beaver presence to have some benefits for Brook Trout. Hale (1966) concluded that a low Beaver population was preferable for the north shore watershed, but did not recommend any particular management objectives.

Progression of adaptive management strategies

As Beaver management progressed throughout the WGL region, resource managers began to use adaptive management recommendations that came out of early investigations. In the early years of Beaver management, it was clear that some strategies had detrimental effects on Beaver, salmonids, or both. Long-term studies like Knudsen (1962) led to a new era of resource management that used an adaptive approach towards evaluating Beaver-salmonid-forest relationships (Figure 2).

Salmonid streams in east-central Minnesota tend to be low-gradient, and by the 1960s the Beaver population continued to grow (MNDNR, unpublished data; Figure 2) and anglers reported poor fishing conditions in reaches occupied by Beaver. Following the results from a study which substantiated Beaver presence to negatively impact salmonid populations (Haugstad 1970), a habitat improvement project began that centered on Beaver dam removal and eradication from the streams. Over a 2-year period, 617 Beavers and 482 Beaver dams were removed from streams, resulting in 120 km of “fair” to “good” quality salmonid habitat and noticeably larger salmonid populations (Haugstad 1970). In addition to the regular open trapping season, professional and permit trappers assisted in the Beaver eradication efforts. Despite some landowners’ resistance to the eradication efforts, Haugstad (1970) concluded that a liberal Beaver-trapping season should be used throughout counties with prime salmonid streams. Results from a later study within the same basin suggested that Beaver activity negatively affected salmonids (Klein and Newman 1992), but the authors' management recommendations reflected a shift towards using a more nuanced approach to Beaver-salmonid interactions. Klein and Newman (1992) recommended managers should consider site-specific plans that balance the economic costs and ecological benefits incurred by conducting Beaver management.

By the 1970s in Wisconsin, three main Beaver control methods were utilized: (1) removal of Beavers and structures by Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR) personnel; (2) removal of Beavers and structures by permitted private citizens; and (3) extension of Beaver seasons and regular bag limits on waters with recurring problems (Payne and Peterson 1986). Beaver and human populations continued to rise across the state at this time, along with the number of Beaver complaints. An analysis of Beaver complaint trends in two northern Wisconsin counties found most complaints involved timber resources and roads, while fish habitat comprised only 4-5% of all complaints (Payne and Peterson 1986). These results were similar to those reported across the state from 1950–59, when fish complaints accounted for 5% of all complaints (Knudsen 1962). It should be noted that Beaver removal from salmonid streams was not limited to those originating from complaints filed with the state, as extensive Beaver dam removal projects by WDNR personnel were also occurring across Wisconsin.

Hunt (1988) suggested Beaver and dam removal was a widespread habitat management strategy used across Wisconsin from 1953–1985, though little data is available until the 1980s. An extensive dam removal effort occurred in Wisconsin's Penomee River watershed, where 546 Beaver dams were removed from 1982–1986

(Avery, 1992). In the late 1980s, the WDNR began a partnership with the U.S. Department of Agriculture Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service Animal Damage Control program (APHIS-ADC) to conduct dam removal in salmonid streams (Dickerson 1989), in addition to supplemental trapping of Beavers from individual streams (Ribic et al. 2017, Willging 2017). One such Beaver management program has occurred in the Chequamegon-Nicolet National Forest (CNNF) since 1988 (Willging 2017). The program targeted the most heavily impacted streams first, and in 1988 alone, 480 Beaver and 668 dams were removed from streams in the CNNF (Dickerson 1989). Since then, aerial and ground surveys have been conducted annually to identify Beaver presence and inform Beaver management priorities to maintain stream systems in free-flowing conditions (Willging 2017). Ribic et al. (2017) recently conducted an analysis on the long-term effects the CNNF Beaver program had on Beaver colony density through 2013, and results found the control program was successful in reducing Beaver colony densities along targeted streams. The success of this management strategy is not entirely surprising, as history has repeatedly shown intense trapping efforts can successfully reduce or eradicate local Beaver populations from an area. Nonetheless, the CNNF management program demonstrates the effectiveness of using a targeted approach towards resolving a Beaver-salmonid conflict, and is an example of a program that successfully used wildlife management to achieve its habitat restoration goals (Willging 2017).

The Wisconsin Beaver and dam removal programs began at a time when the Beaver population was approaching its maximum level (Figure 2). Low fur prices likely discouraged recreational trapping efforts, causing the Beaver population to spike and a resultant increase in the number of Beaver complaints to over 2,000 annually (WDNR 1990). At this time, the WDNR also experimented with a trapper subsidy program to assist with population reduction efforts (WDNR 1990). A team was assembled in 1990 to overhaul Beaver management strategies, and culminated in the development of the 1990 Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan (WDNR 1990). One of the key management objectives to come out of the 1990 Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan was the development of 4 distinct Beaver management zones, each with slightly different regulations (WDNR 1990). The zones were primarily based on regional Beaver densities, frequency and category of Beaver complaints, and incorporation of regional waterfowl data, with the intent of designing a program that used a greater adaptive management approach. Regarding salmonid streams, the zones also differed in quantity and quality of streams as determined by the 1980 statewide stream classification project (WDNR, 1980). Large, heavily impacted cold-water streams in the northern management zones were made a management priority, using a combination of APHIS-ADC personnel, WDNR trappers, and locally contracted trappers to conduct targeted Beaver and dam removals similar to the CNNF program (WDNR 1990).

Current beaver management on salmonid streams

In 2001, Michigan established their current Beaver adaptive management program based on two primary principles: (1) Beaver, salmonids, and their habitats are managed for human needs and wants; and (2) the less common natural resource (i.e., cold-water streams) must be provided for, while still providing opportunities for Beavers to exist (MDNR 2005). High-quality salmonid streams were identified by state fisheries divisions and approved by designated eco-region teams. Local managers are responsible for responding to and determining nuisance Beaver presence on salmonid streams. The management plan also states that a zone of intact vegetation is required around the stream in order to protect water quality, and this zone is managed by local forestry divisions to discourage Beaver use. Nuisance control is carried out by a combination of Wildlife, Law Enforcement, Forest Management, and Parks and Recreation Management personnel, depending on the region and type of land (public or private) on which the nuisance Beavers are located.

Since the 1970s, the Minnesota DNR (MNDNR) has used Beaver management on salmonid streams to maintain connectivity and modify habitat conditions in selected streams (D. Paron 2017, MNDNR, personal communication). For example, the MNDNR has conducted Beaver and Beaver dam removal in the Knife River watershed since 1994. The watershed contains approximately half of all accessible adfluvial salmonid spawning and rearing habitat along the north shore of Lake Superior, making it a management priority in the region (MNDNR 2016). Relative to other north shore watersheds, the Knife River is comparatively low-gradient and is one of the only areas where wild steelhead spawn. Beaver control is carried out by contract trappers and MNDNR personnel, and is funded by revenue generated from fishing licenses and trout stamps (MNDNR 2016). In 2017, the authors of this paper (SJB, KMR, SKW, AWH) began a research project to better understand the current and historical impact that Beaver activity has on north shore Brook Trout populations, and to provide information as to whether Beaver management should be expanded into areas beyond the Knife River watershed.

In 2015, the WDNR created a “Beaver Task Force” to develop a new Beaver Management Plan to be used through 2025 that is considerably more extensive than other management plans in the WGL region. The northern Wisconsin Beaver population has been on a steady decline for the last 2 decades (Figure 2), prompting the WDNR to increase research efforts across the state (WDNR 2015). In particular, WDNR managers have adopted an interdisciplinary approach to better inform management practices by understanding the positive and negative effects that Beavers have on their ecosystems. The WDNR received input from stakeholders across the state that included trappers, tribal communities, public and private land managers, biologists, and citizens, in order to create a plan that effectively addresses the multiple-use Beaver-salmonid-forest management strategy that has existed in the state since the 1960s (WDNR 2015). WDNR personnel plan to increase research throughout multiple ecoregions in the state, including using paired experimental design studies that incorporate reference streams to compare with stream manipulations. At present, APHIS-ADC continues to conduct Beaver control on 200 salmonid streams totaling approximately 2400–2700 km (WDNR 2015; Willging 2017).

Management implications

Salmonid research and management has shifted towards using a landscape ecology perspective to understand how large-scale ecological processes influence the spatiotemporal dynamics of fish populations. The physical and hydrologic properties of landscapes can be applied with reasonable accuracy to describe the nature and quality of riverscapes (see earlier sections), and this perspective has led to significant advances in fish biology and management (Fausch et al. 2002). One of the difficulties with managing Beaver-salmonid interactions is that Beaver activity can affect salmonid habitat characteristics differently at the stream or even reach scale, and resource managers are faced with reconciling these disparate perspectives of scale when managing Beaver-salmonid conflicts. Early Beaver management on salmonid streams was often conducted under the assumption that the effects Beavers have on salmonids in one area are transferrable to other areas in the region. However, managers have become increasingly cognizant of the spatial variability of the Beaver-salmonid relationship, and there has been a greater focus on using small-scale, adaptive management strategies to resolve Beaver-salmonid conflicts. Finely calibrated Beaver and dam removal efforts may be just as effective as large-scale removal programs (McRae and Edwards 1994; Ribic et al. 2017), and this approach has the added benefit of minimizing the impact on local Beaver populations.

There is also a temporal component of the Beaver-salmonid relationship that could be taken into account when designing management plans. In our review, we commonly found Beaver dams may benefit salmonids in the first 2–4 years following dam creation before negative effects arise. We suggest that in some areas where Beaver management occurs on an annual basis, an alternative management strategy could be conducting Beaver management more sporadically (e.g., every 3–5 years). This strategy may mitigate the long-term negative effects of Beaver activity on salmonid populations while still preserving the short-term benefits, and would also reduce the costs of labor and resources associated with conducting annual Beaver management. Because dams generally persist on the landscape much longer in low-gradient streams, this management strategy is probably more applicable to those stream systems. Intensive Beaver control may nonetheless be needed in areas where other habitat restoration efforts occur simultaneously, as Beaver presence for even a short period of time may nullify the resources invested in restoring stream habitats.

Numerous stakeholders are influenced by Beaver-salmonid interactions, and striking a balance between the often-conflicting groups is no easy task (Willging 2017). Within the WGL region, non-profit organizations such as Trout Unlimited and local steelhead organizations are heavily involved with salmonid habitat management projects. Trout Unlimited has established successful partnerships with state and federal agencies to assist with salmonid management goals throughout the WGL region, and recently the Lake Superior Steelhead Association was awarded multiple grants to conduct Beaver dam removal and habitat rehabilitation within the Knife River watershed along Lake Superior (ML 2014, Ch. 256, Art. 1, Sec. 2, Subd.5(h)). Though non-profit organizations advocating for Beaver conservation are relatively uncommon throughout the region, many conservationists are opposed to Beaver management programs on salmonid streams. Indeed, controversy over management strategies has existed in the WGL region since the first Beaver-salmonid studies, and continues to this day (WDNR 2015). Considering management decisions influence anglers, trappers, waterfowl hunters, foresters, and conservationists alike, resource managers must often make decisions that are unpopular with one or more of these groups. Where possible, the justification for making unpopular management decisions should be informed by empirically collected data that accurately characterizes the nature of the Beaver-salmonid relationship of the stream region(s) in question.

Many salmonid populations in the WGL region are non-native species, which further complicates management priority decisions. The ecological impacts introduced salmonids have on stream ecosystems has not been comprehensively evaluated across the WGL region, but their introduction likely has a significant effect on resource competition with native salmonids (Krueger and May 1991). Brown Trout have been shown to exclude Brook Trout from resting positions in streams and prey on juvenile Brook Trout in a Michigan stream (Fausch and White 1981), and Brown Trout replaced Brook Trout when habitat disturbances occurred in Valley Creek, Minnesota (Waters 1983). Yet, many anglers prefer to fish for non-native salmonids, influencing management decisions in the WGL region. In streams along the north shore of Lake Superior, for example, anglers prefer to fish for non-native steelhead and Kamloops Rainbow trouts over native Brook Trout (Gartner et al. 2002; Schroeder 2013). Per survey results, individual anglers in the north shore report fishing for steelhead for more than 11 years on average (Gartner et al. 2002), indicating that steelhead presence in cold-water streams has a long-term influence on anglers' decision to fish in the watersheds; whether this preference continues in the event that coaster Brook Trout populations recover remains to be seen. In its current state, angling culture in the WGL region often favors the preservation and even proliferation of non-native salmonid populations despite the potential ecological consequences.

The effects from climate change may also have a substantial impact on salmonids. Many cold-water streams within the WGL region already approach the thermal tolerance for salmonids (Wehrly et al. 2003), and predicted increases in summer air temperatures could raise stream temperatures even further. Salmonids are expected to endure substantial habitat loss in the WGL region under projected climate change models (Sinokrot et al. 1995; Lyons et al. 2010; Herb et al. 2016), and Beaver activity may exacerbate this problem in some areas. Contrarily, Beaver ponds may offer valuable refugia for salmonids within streams during periods of drought by retaining water longer; and for many wildlife species, Beaver wetlands provide essential open water habitat that actually mitigate the negative effects of drought (Hood and Bayley 2008). Beaver populations may also be negatively impacted by a changing climate, which further complicates this relationship. Though little research has been conducted evaluating the impact of climate on Beavers, preliminary research from Wisconsin indicates that both wetter years and years with moderate droughts are associated with lower Beaver colony densities (Ribic et al. 2017). Similarly, studies on the closely related Eurasian Beaver *Castor fiber* suggest that increases in climatic variability and precipitation may negatively affect Beaver reproduction and resource availability (Campbell et al. 2012, 2013, 2017). Understanding the complex Beaver-salmonid relationship and implementing appropriate management plans may become even more challenging for researchers and managers in a changing climate, and future research should examine how this relationship could evolve.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Throughout the past century there has been a dramatic shift in Beaver management practices that have occurred throughout the WGL region. Following the near extirpation of Beavers due to overharvesting and habitat loss, early management was focused on promoting population growth through reintroductions and closed trapping seasons. Beaver populations rebounded within a few decades, and new management goals aimed at population control were established throughout the region. The first Beaver control measures on salmonid streams, and in the region in general, tended to overshoot their targets and often led to significant declines in local Beaver populations. By incorporating scientific-based research into game and fish management, over time resource managers increasingly used localized, adaptive management strategies to mediate Beaver-salmonid interactions.

The Great Lakes region once supported abundant populations of native salmonids, attracting anglers from afar and providing an economic resource to local communities. Due to overexploitation, habitat degradation, and competition with non-native species, native salmonid populations crashed, prompting rehabilitation efforts throughout the WGL region. Despite the varying success of historical salmonid stocking programs, their impact on modern day fisheries and fishery management practices cannot be understated. Today, habitat degradation and climate change are considered some of the most serious management issues concerning salmonid populations within the WGL region, and many agencies are involved in the continuous monitoring of stream systems and local salmonid populations. The degree to which Beaver management is prioritized as a habitat restoration tool varies greatly within the WGL region, ranging from a peripheral component of many management plans to an integral component of others. Nonetheless the Beaver-salmonid relationship has received considerable interest from public and scientific communities alike, and has remained a contentious issue within the WGL region since it first arose nearly a century ago. Agencies are currently addressing Beaver-salmonid interactions through an ongoing effort to co-manage each species at sustainable population levels, while recognizing the recreational and ecological impact that each species provides.

While most research conducted in the WGL region has shown that Beaver activity has a deleterious effect on salmonid populations, we found several examples where Beaver activity was found to benefit salmonids (Table 1). We have highlighted numerous information gaps throughout this review that could enhance our understanding of the Beaver-salmonid relationship, and identified scenarios when salmonids may benefit from Beaver presence. All three states in the WGL region have prioritized the habitat requirements of salmonids over the presence of Beavers in portions of the state, primarily because cold-water streams are a scarcer resource and angling is a popular source of recreation for citizens. As ecosystem engineers and a keystone species, Beavers provide valuable ecological services to forest ecosystems in the WGL region (Johnston 2017), and removing Beavers from stream reaches where their presence may actually benefit salmonids results in a lose-lose situation for forest ecosystems and natural resource management goals. We suggest the decision to remove Beavers from cold-water streams should consider secondary ecosystem consequences associated with decreased Beaver presence before implementing management plans.

Prior to European colonization, Beavers and salmonids (native Brook Trout) were presumably able to coexist on the landscape without human intervention, and interactions between the two taxa were therefore the result of natural ecological processes within WGL stream ecosystems. What is different now from historical conditions? Why do many areas within the WGL region now require Beaver control in order to maintain healthy, sustainable salmonid populations? Many resource managers believe that Beaver populations are larger now than they have historically been due to the increase in young forest, though this hypothesis has yet to be rigorously tested. It is possible that Beaver activities have always had a predominantly negative impact on salmonids (Brook Trout) in the WGL region, and the natural ecological processes are very similar to what is found in the region today. Anglers may therefore expect larger salmonid populations in WGL streams than are supportable based on natural processes. Identifying the historical conditions that existed prior to European colonization may provide insight into how Beaver-salmonid dynamics have deviated over the past three centuries (beyond the introduction of non-native salmonids to WGL streams), and that information could be used to guide current and future resource management plans in cold-water streams. But even with historical context, resource managers will still often be confronted with the ecological and ethical dilemma that many currently face: should WGL cold-water streams be managed for the benefit of maintaining robust, well-dispersed salmonid populations; or be managed to replicate 'natural' ecological processes, even to the potential detriment of salmonids? The answer to this question will undoubtedly vary throughout the WGL region, depending on local ecological conditions, and cultural and resource management priorities. We hope our synthesis is a catalyst for further Beaver-salmonid research from the WGL region, and encourages scientifically based management plans that identify when and where Beaver control is necessary to achieve the desired resource management objectives.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We thank Dean Paron, Brian Nerbonne, Don Schreiner, Nathaniel Stewart, Max Wolter, Heidi Rantala, and 3 anonymous reviewers for insightful comments that improved the content of this manuscript. We also thank Jeff Mosher for providing current stocking program information from Wisconsin. Funding for this project was provided by the University of Minnesota Duluth, Bemidji State University, and the Minnesota Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund, as recommended by the Legislative-Citizen Commission on Minnesota Resources (project M.L. 2016, Chp. 186, Sec. 2, Subd.03j).

REFERENCES

Adams, A.K. 1948. Beaver-trout investigations in Michigan. Final Report 1213, Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Lansing.

Adams, A. K. 1949. Beaver-trout investigations in Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fish Division. Fisheries Research Report No. 1213.

Adams, A. K. 1954. Some physico-chemical effects of Beaver dams upon Michigan trout streams in the Watersmeet area. Doctoral Thesis. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI.

Alcoze, T. M. 1981. Pre-settlement Beaver population density in the Upper Great Lakes Region. Dissertation. Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI.

Aldous, S. E. 1938. Beaver food utilization studies. The Journal of Wildlife Management 2(4):215–222.

Alexander, G. R., and E. A. Hansen. 1986. Sand Bed Load in a Brook Trout Stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6(1):9–23.

Allen, A. W. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: Beaver. U.S. Fish Wildl. Serv. FWS/OBS-82/10.30. Revised.

Anderson, J., N. Baratono, A. Streitz, J. Magner, and E. S. Verry. 2006. Effect of historical logging on geomorphology, hydrology, and water quality in the Little

Fork River Watershed. Environmental Outcomes and Regional Divisions, Minnesota Pollution Control Agency. Pages 1–74.

Armstrong, J. D., P. S. Kemp, G. J. A. Kennedy, M. Ladle, and N. J. Milner. 2003. Habitat requirements of Atlantic Salmon and Brown Trout in rivers and streams. Fisheries Research 62(2):143–170.

Avery, E. L. 1992. Effects of removing Beaver dams upon a northern Wisconsin brook trout stream. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resoureces. Final D-J Project Report, F-83R.

Avery, E. L. 2002. Fish community and habitat responses in a northern Wisconsin Brook Trout stream 18 years after Beaver dam removal. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Final Project Report F-95-P. Pages 1–63.

Avery, E. L. 2004. A compendium of 58 trout stream habitat development evaluations in Wisconsin 1985-2000. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Research Report No. 187. Pages 1–100.

Baker, B. W., and E. P. Hill. 2003. Beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Pages 288–310 in G. A. Feldhamer, B. C. Thompson, and J. A. Chapman, editors. Wild mammals of North America: biology, management, and conservation. The Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Maryland, USA.

Beechie, T. J., H. Moir, and G. R. Pess. 2008. Hierarchical Physical Controls on Salmonid Spawning Location and Timing. Pages 83–101 in D. A. Sear and P. DeVries, editors. Salmonid spawning habitat in rivers: physical controls, biological responses, and approaches to remediation. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Md.

Benson, R. L. 2002. Estimation of Brook Trout movement in a Beaver pond complex using multi-state capture-recapture models: examination of restricted movement. M.Sc. Thesis. University of Montana, Missoula, MT.

Bertolo, A., P. Magnan, and M. Plante. 2008. Linking the occurrence of Brook Trout with isolation and extinction in small Boreal Shield lakes. Freshwater Biology 53(2):304–321.

Biette, R. M., D. P. Dodge, R. L. Hassinger, and T. M. Stauffer. 1981. Life History and Timing of Migrations and Spawning Behavior of Rainbow Trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) Populations of the Great Lakes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38(12):1759–1771.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. Reiser. 1991. Habitat Requirements of Salmonids in Streams. Page 138 in W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. American Fisheries Society Special Publication.

Boitani, L. 2010. Wolf conservation and recovery. Pages 317–340 in L. D. Mech and L. Boitani, editors. Wolves. University of Chicago Press.

Bouwes, N., N. Weber, C. E. Jordan, W. C. Saunders, I. A. Tattam, C. Volk, J. M. Wheaton, and M. M. Pollock. 2016. Ecosystem experiment reveals benefits of natural and simulated Beaver dams to a threatened population of steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Scientific Reports 6:28581–12.

Bradt, G. W. 1935a. Beaver-trout management activities. Michigan Department of Conservation. Fisheries Research Report No. 316. Pages 1–13.

Bradt, G. W. 1935b. Michigan's Beaver-trout management program. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 65(1):253–257.

Bradt, G. W. 1947. Michigan Beaver management. Game Division, Michigan Dept. of Conservation, Lansing, MI.

Bruner, K. L. 1989. Effects of Beaver on streams, streamside habitat, and Coho Salmon fry populations in two coastal Oregon streams. M.S. Thesis. Oregon State University, Corvalis, OR.

Burchsted, D., M. D. Daniels, R. Thorson, and J. Vokoun. 2010. The River Discontinuum: Applying Beaver Modifications to Baseline Conditions for Restoration of Forested Headwaters. BioScience 60(11):908–922.

Burnham-Curtis, M. K. 2000. Genetic profiles of elected Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* populations from Lake Superior. Research completion report prepared for U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Ashland Fisheries Resource Office.

Bylak, A., K. Kukuła, and J. Mitka. 2014. Beaver impact on stream fish life histories: the role of landscape and local attributes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 71(11):1603–1615.

Błędzki, L. A., J. L. Bubier, L. A. Moulton, and T. D. Kyker-Snowman. 2010. Downstream effects of Beaver ponds on the water quality of New England first- and second-order streams. Ecohydrology 4(5):698–707.

Call, M. W. 1970. Beaver Pond Ecology and Beaver-trout Relationships in Southeastern Wyoming. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, WY.

Campbell, R. D., P. Nouvellet, C. Newman, D. W. Macdonald, and F. Rosell. 2012. The influence of mean climate trends and climate variance on Beaver survival and recruitment dynamics. Global Change Biology 18(9):2730–2742.

Campbell, R. D., C. Newman, D. W. Macdonald, and F. Rosell. 2013. Proximate weather patterns and spring green-up phenology effect Eurasian Beaver (*Castor fiber*) body mass and reproductive success: the implications of climate change and topography. Global Change Biology 19(4):1311–1324.

Campbell, R. D., F. Rosell, C. Newman, and D. W. Macdonald. 2017. Age-related changes in somatic condition and reproduction in the Eurasian Beaver: Resource history influences onset of reproductive senescence. PLoS ONE 12(12):e0187484.

Carbine, W. F. 1944. Results of the Beaver-trout investigation in the Upper Peninsula. Institute for Fisheries Research, Michigan Department of Conservation. Fisheries Research Report No. 953. Pages 1–31.

Carl, L. M. 1982. Natural Reproduction of Coho Salmon and Chinook Salmon in Some Michigan Streams. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 2(4):375–380.

Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical Review of Variables Used to Define Effects of Fines in Redds of Large Salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117(1):1–21.

Christenson, L. M., A. E. Ehly, J. B. Hale, R. H. Hovind, J. M. Keener, C. Kabat, G. J. Knudsen, and D. J. ODonnell. 1961. Beaver-trout-forest relationships. R. L. Hine, editor. Wisconsin Conservation Department, Madison, WI.

Cirmo, C. P., and C. T. Driscoll. 1993. Beaver pond biogeochemistry: Acid neutralizing capacity generation in a headwater wetland. Wetlands 13(4):277–292.

Cleland, D. T., J. A. Freeouf, J. E. Keys, G. J. Nowacki, C. A. Carpenter, and W. H. McNab. 2007. Ecological Subregions: Sections and Subsections for the Conterminous United States. Gen. Tech. Report WO-76D. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service.

Collen, P., and R. J. Gibson. 2001. The general ecology of Beavers (*Castor* spp.), as related to their influence on stream ecosystems and riparian habitats, and the subsequent effects on fish – a review. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 10(4):439–461.

Cook, D. B. 1940. Beaver-trout relations. Journal of Mammalogy 21(4):397–401.

Crawford, S. S. 2001. Salmonine Introductions to the Laurentian Great Lakes. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences No. 132. NRC Research Press.

Crisp, D. T. 1996. Environmental requirements of common riverine European salmonid fish species in fresh water with particular reference to physical and chemical aspects. Hydrobiologia 323(3):201–221.

Cunjak, R. A. 1996. Winter habitat of selected stream fishes and potential impacts from land-use activity. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53(S1):267–282.

Curry, R. A., and D. L. G. Noakes. 1995. Groundwater and the selection of spawning sites by Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52(8):1733–1740.

D'Amelio, S. 2002. Conservation genetics and metapopulation structure of Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) in Nipigon Bay (Lake Superior, Ontario). M.S. Thesis. Trent University, Peterborough, Ontario.

Dickerson, L. 1989. Beaver and dam removal in Wisconsin trout streams. Presented at Fourth Eastern Wildlife Damage Control Conference.

Dillon, P. J., L. A. Molot, and W. A. Scheider. 1991. Phosphorus and Nitrogen Export from Forested Stream Catchments in Central Ontario. Journal of Environmental Quality 20(4):857–864.

DuBois, R. B., and D. M. Pratt. 1994. History of the fishes of the Bois Brule River System, Wisconsin, with emphasis on the salmonids and their management. Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts and Letters 82:33–71.

DuBois, R. B., and S. T. Schram. 1993. Salmonid population trends following stream-bank debrushing and Beaver control on a Lake Superior Tributary. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Research Report No. 157.

Dumke, J. D., T. R. Hrabik, V. J. Brady, K. B. Gran, R. R. Regal, and M. J. Seider. 2010. Channel Morphology Response to Selective Wood Removals in a Sand-Laden Wisconsin Trout Stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 30(3):776–790.

Dunaway, D., S. R. Swanson, J. Wendel, and W. Clary. 1994. The effect of herbaceous plant communities and soil textures on particle erosion of alluvial streambanks. Geomorphology 9(1):47–56.

Dunne, T. 1978. Water in environmental planning. T. Dunne and L. B. Leopold, editors. W. H. Freeman, San Francisco.

Ecke, F., O. Levanoni, J. Audet, P. Carlson, K. Eklöf, G. Hartman, B. McKie, J. Ledesma, J. Segersten, A. Truchy, and M. Futter. 2017. Meta-analysis of environmental effects of Beaver in relation to artificial dams. Environmental Research Letters 12(11):113002.

Emery, L. 1985. Review of fish species introduced into the Great Lakes, 1819-1974. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 45.

Essington, T. E., P. W. Sorensen, and D. G. Paron. 1998. High rate of redd superimposition by Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) and Brown Trout (*Salmo trutta*) in a Minnesota stream cannot be explained by habitat availability alone. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55(10):2310–2316.

Evans, T. R. 1948. Beaver-trout-waterfowl problems. 10th Midwest Wildlife Conference.

Fausch, K. D., and R. J. White. 1981. Competition between Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) and Brown Trout (*Salmo trutta*) for positions in a Michigan stream. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38(10):1220–1227.

Fausch, K. D., C. E. Torgersen, C. V. Baxter, and H. W. Li. 2002. Landscapes to Riverscapes: Bridging the Gap between Research and Conservation of Stream Fishes. BioScience 52(6):483–498.

Finnegan, R. J., and D. E. Marshall. 1997. Managing Beaver habitat for salmonids: working with Beavers. in P. A. Slaney and D. Zaldokas, editors. Fish Habitat Rehabilitation Procedures.

Fitzpatrick, F. A., and J. C. Knox. 2000. Spatial and temporal sensitivity of hydrogeomorphic response and recovery to deforestation, agriculture, and floods. Physical Geography 21(2):89–108.

Fox, M. G., and A. Keast. 1990. Effects of winterkill on population structure, body size, and prey consumption patterns of pumpkinseed in isolated Beaver ponds. Canadian Journal of Zoology 68(12):2489–2498.

Friedman, S. K., and P. B. Reich. 2005. Regional legacies of logging: Departure from presettlement forest conditions in northern Minnesota. Ecological Applications 15(2):726–744.

Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, and J. G. Bruggink. 2017. The Problems with Pooling Poop: Confronting Sampling Method Biases in Wolf (*Canis lupus*) Diet Studies. Canadian Journal of Zoology:cjz–2016–0308.

Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, J. G. Bruggink, and A. T. Homkes. 2016. Where and how wolves (*Canis lupus*) kill Beavers (*Castor canadensis*). PLoS ONE 11(12):e0165537.

Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, M. C. Romanski, and F. Rosell. 2018. The forgotten prey of an iconic predator: a review of interactions between grey wolves *Canis lupus* and Beavers *Castor* spp. Mammal Review 48(2):123–138.

Gard, R. 1961. Effects of Beaver on Trout in Sagehen Creek, California. The Journal of Wildlife Management 25(3):221–242.

Gartner, W. C., L. L. Love, D. Erkkila, and D. C. Fulton. 2002. Economic Impact and Social Benefits Study of Coldwater Angling in Minnesota. Prepared for: Minnesota Department of Natural Resources. Pages 1–129. Tourism Center, University of Minnesota Extension Service, St. Paul, MN.

Geist, D. R., and D. D. Dauble. 1998. Redd Site Selection and Spawning Habitat Use by Fall Chinook Salmon: The Importance of Geomorphic Features in Large Rivers. Environmental Management 22(5):655–669.

Goldsworthy, C. A., K. A. Reeves, J. E. Blankenheim, and N. R. Peterson. 2016. Fisheries Management Plan for the Minnesota waters of Lake Superior, 3rd edition. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.

Gordon, N. D., T. A. McMahon, B. L. Finlayson, C. J. Gippel, and R. J. Nathan. 2004. Stream hydrology: an introduction for ecologists, 2nd edition. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.

Grasse, J. E. 1951. Beaver ecology and management in the Rockies. Journal of Forestry 49(1):3–6.

Grasse, J. E., and E. F. Putnam. 1955. Beaver management and ecology in Wyoming. Wyoming Game and Fish Commission Bulletin No. 6.

Great Lakes Fishery Commission. 2018. Great Lakes Fish Stocking Database. Great Lakes Fishery Commission, New Franken, WI.

Gurnell, A. M. 1998. The hydrogeomorphological effects of Beaver dam-building activity. Progress in Physical Geography 22(2):167–189.

Hale, J. G. 1950. Trout populations and catches during 1950 in three northeastern Minnesota trout streams, including comparisons in catch from Beaver ponds, improved, and unimproved sectors. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Investigational Report No. 105. Pages 1–20.

Hale, J. G. 1966. Influence of Beaver on some trout streams along the Minnesota North Shore of Lake Superior. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Investigational Report No. 244. Page 29.

Hale, J. G., and O. Jarvenpa. 1950. Beaver-trout relations on the north shore of Lake Superior watershed. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Investigational Report No. 143. Pages 1–22.

Hall, J. G. 1960. Willow and aspen in the ecology of Beaver on Sagehen Creek, California. Ecology 41(3):484–494.

Hartman, G. 1994. Long-term population development of a reintroduced Beaver (*Castor fiber*) population in Sweden. Conservation Biology 8(3):713–717.

Haugstad, M. C. 1970. Trout habitat control in Minnesota. Minnesota Conservation Department, St. Paul.

Hägglund, Å., and G. Sjöberg. 1999. Effects of Beaver dams on the fish fauna of forest streams. Forest Ecology and Management 115(2-3):259–266.

Herb, W., K. Blann, L. Johnson, R. Garono, J. Jereczek, M. White, and H. Sorensen. 2016. Sustaining Minnesota's Lake Superior Tributaries in a Changing Climate. Final Report to NOAA's Office for Coastal Management. Pages 1–283.

Hood, G. A., and S. E. Bayley. 2008. Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) mitigate the effects of climate on the area of open water in boreal wetlands in western Canada. Biological Conservation 141(2):556–567.

Huckins, C. J., E. A. Baker, K. D. Fausch, and J. B. K. Leonard. 2008. Ecology and Life History of Coaster Brook Trout and Potential Bottlenecks in Their Rehabilitation. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28(4):1321–1342.

Hunt, R. L. 1988. A compendium of 45 stream habitat development evaluations in Wisconsin during 1953-1985. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Technical Bulletin No. 162. Pages 1–84.

Johnston, C. A. 2012. Beaver wetlands. Pages 161–171 in D. P. Batzer and A. Baldwin, editors. Wetland habitats of North America ecology and conservation concerns. Berkeley, California, USA.

Johnston, C. A. 2014. Beaver pond effects on carbon storage in soils. Geoderma 213:371–378.

Johnston, C. A., editor. 2017. Beavers: Boreal Ecosystem Engineers. Springer-Verlaug Press.

Johnston, C. A., and R. J. Naiman. 1987. Boundary dynamics at the aquatic-terrestrial interface: The influence of Beaver and geomorphology. Landscape Ecology 1(1):47–57.

Keast, A., and M. G. Fox. 1990. Fish community structure, spatial distribution and feeding ecology in a Beaver pond. Environmental Biology of Fishes 27(3):201–214.

Kemp, P. S., T. A. Worthington, T. E. L. Langford, A. R. J. Tree, and M. J. Gaywood. 2012. Qualitative and quantitative effects of reintroduced Beavers on stream fish. Fish and Fisheries 13(2):158–181.

Klein, M. M., and R. M. Newman. 1992. The effects of Beaver dams on trout and trout streams in Pine County, Minnesota. Page 109. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.

Knudsen, G. J. 1962. Relationship of Beaver to forests, trout and wildlife in Wisconsin. Wisconsin Department of Conservation. Technical Bulletin No. 25. Pages 1–56.

Knudsen, G. J. 1963. History of Beaver in Wisconsin. Wisconsin Department of Conservation. Miscellaneous Research Report No. 7. Pages 1–20.

Knudsen, G. J., and J. B. Hale. 1965. Movements of Transplanted Beavers in Wisconsin. The Journal of Wildlife Management 29(4):685–688.

Kondolf, G. M., and M. G. Wolman. 1993. The sizes of salmonid spawning gravels. Water Resources Research 29(7):2275–2285.

Kondratieff, M. C., and C. A. Myrick. 2006. How High Can Brook Trout Jump? A Laboratory Evaluation of Brook Trout Jumping Performance. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135(2):361–370.

Krueger, C. C., and B. May. 1991. Ecological and genetic effects of salmonid introductions in North America. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48(S1):66–77.

Lawrie, A. H., and J. F. Rahrer. 1973. Lake Superior: A Case History of the Lake and its Fisheries. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 19.

Leidholt-Bruner, K., D. E. Hibbs, and W. C. McComb. 1992. Beaver dam locations and their effects on distribution and abundance of Coho Salmon fry in two coastal Oregon streams. Northwest Science 66(4):218–223.

Levine, R., and G. A. Meyer. 2014. Beaver dams and channel sediment dynamics on Odell Creek, Centennial Valley, Montana, USA. Geomorphology 205(Supplement C):51–64.

Lisle, T. E. 2010. Effects of aggradation and degradation on riffle-pool morphology in natural gravel channels, northwestern California. Water Resources Research 18(6):1643–1651.

Lokteff, R. L., B. B. Roper, and J. M. Wheaton. 2013. Do Beaver Dams Impede the Movement of Trout? Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 142(4):1114–1125.

Longley, W. H., and J. B. Moyle. 1963. The Beaver in Minnesota. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Technical Bulletin No. 6. Pages 1–88.

Lowry, M. M. 1993. Groundwater elevations and temperature adjacent to a Beaver pond in central Oregon. M.S. Thesis. Oregon State University, Corvalis, OR.

Lyons, J. 1996. Patterns in the species composition of fish assemblages among Wisconsin streams. Environmental Biology of Fishes 45(4):329–341.

Lyons, J., J. S. Stewart, and M. Mitro. 2010. Predicted effects of climate warming on the distribution of 50 stream fishes in Wisconsin, U.S.A. Journal of Fish Biology 77(8):1867–1898.

Majerova, M., B. T. Neilson, N. M. Schmadel, J. M. Wheaton, and C. J. Snow. 2015. Impacts of Beaver dams on hydrologic and temperature regimes in a mountain stream. Hydrology and Earth System Sciences 19(8):3541–3556.

Margolis, B. E., M. S. Castro, and R. L. Raesly. 2001. The impact of Beaver impoundments on the water chemistry of two Appalachian streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58(11):2271–2283.

McCaffery, M. 2009. The influence of an ecosystem engineer on nutrient subsidies and fish invasions in southwestern Montana. Doctoral Dissertation. University of Montana, Missoula, MT.

McDowell, D. M., and R. J. Naiman. 1986. Structure and function of a benthic invertebrate stream community as influenced by Beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Oecologia 68(4):481–489.

McMahon, T. E. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: coho salmon. Western Energy and Land Use Team, Division of Biological Services, Research and Development, Fish and Wildlife Service, U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Washington, DC.

McRae, G., and C. J. Edwards. 1994. Thermal Characteristics of Wisconsin Headwater Streams Occupied by Beaver: Implications for Brook Trout Habitat. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123(4):641–656.

MDNR. 2005. Beaver management. Michigan Department of Natural Resources. DNR Department Procedure 39.21-20.

MDNR. 2018. Fish Stocking Database. Michigan Department of Natural Resources.

Mech, L. D. 1970. The Wolf: the ecology and behavior of an endangered species. University of Minnesota Press.

Miller, M. J. 1940. Black Spot in Fishes. Canadian Journal of Comparative Medicine and Veterinary Science 4(11):303–305.

Mills, E. L., J. H. Leach, J. T. Carlton, and C. L. Secor. 1993. Exotic Species in the Great Lakes: A History of Biotic Crises and Anthropogenic Introductions. Journal of Great Lakes Research 19(1):1–54.

Mitchell, S. C., and R. A. Cunjak. 2007. Stream flow, salmon and Beaver dams: roles in the structuring of stream fish communities within an anadromous salmon dominated stream. Journal of Animal Ecology 76(6):1062–1074.

MNDNR. 2016. Lake Superior Fisheries Management Plan Addendum #1: Beaver management on trout streams. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.

Moore, K. M. S., and S. V. Gregory. 1988. Summer Habitat Utilization and Ecology of Cutthroat Trout Fry (*Salmo clarki*) in Cascade Mountain Streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 45(11):1921–1930.

Müller-Schwarze, D. 2011. The Beaver: Its Life and Impact. Second edition. Cornell University Press.

Naiman, R. J., C. A. Johnston, and J. C. Kelley. 1988. Alteration of North American Streams by Beaver. BioScience 38(11):753–762.

Naiman, R. J., G. Pinay, C. A. Johnston, and J. Pastor. 1994. Beaver influences on the long-term biogeochemical characteristics of boreal forest drainage networks. Ecology 75(4):905–921.

Naiman, R. J., J. M. Melillo, and J. E. Hobbie. 1986. Ecosystem alteration of boreal forest streams by Beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Ecology 67(5):1254–1269.

Needham, P. R. 1938. Trout streams: conditions that determine their productivity and suggestions for stream and lake management. Comstock Publishing Company, Inc., Ithaca, N.Y.

Neff, B. P., A. R. Piggott, and R. A. Sheets. 2005. Estimation of shallow ground-water recharge in the Great Lakes Basin. USGS Scientific Investigations Report 2005-5284.

Newman, L. E., R. B. DuBois, and T. N. Halpern, editors. 2003. A Brook Trout rehabilitation plan for Lake Superior. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Misc. Publ. 2003-03.

Obbard, M. E., J. E. Jones, R. Newman, A. Booth, A. J. Satterthwaite, and G. Linscombe. 1987. Furbearer Harvests in North America. Pages 1007–1034 in M. Novak, J. A. Baker, M. E. Obbard, and B. Malloch, editors. Wild Furbearer Management and Conservation in North America. Queen's Printer for Ontario.

Omernik, J. M., and A. L. Gallant. 1988. Ecoregions of the upper Midwest states. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/600/3-88/037. Corvalis, Oregon.

Parker, M. 1986. Beaver, water quality and riparian systems. Laramie, WY.

Parsons, J. W. 1973. History of salmon in the Great Lakes, 1850-1970. U.S. Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife Technical paper no. 68.

Patterson, D. 1951. Beaver-trout relationships. Wisconsin Conservation Department. Investigative Report No. 822. Page 34.

Payne, B. A., and M. F. Lapointe. 1997. Channel morphology and lateral stability: effects on distribution of spawning and rearing habitat for Atlantic Salmon in a wandering cobble-bed river. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54(11):2627–2636.

Payne, N. F., and R. P. Peterson. 1986. Trends in complaints of Beaver damage in Wisconsin. Wildlife Society Bulletin 14(3):303–307.

Peterson, N. R. 2012. Stream Temperature Report. Completion Report. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, F-29-R(P)30 (Year 2).

Pollock, M. M., R. J. Naiman, H. E. Erickson, C. A. Johnston, J. Pastor, and G. Pinay. 1995. Beaver as Engineers: Influences on Biotic and Abiotic Characteristics of Drainage Basins. Pages 117–126 in C. G. Jones and J. H. Lawton, editors. Linking Species & Ecosystems. Springer US, Boston, MA.

Pollock, M. M., T. J. Beechie, J. M. Wheaton, C. E. Jordan, N. Bouwes, N. Weber, and C. Volk. 2014. Using Beaver Dams to Restore Incised Stream Ecosystems. BioScience 64(4):279–290.

Popelars, J. D. 2008. Using GIS to reevaluate Beaver dam effects on local environments in northern Wisconsin Brook Trout streams during the 1980s. Papers in Resource Analysis. Saint Mary's University of Minnesota Central Services Press.

Ribic, C. A., D. M. Donner, A. J. Beck, D. J. Rugg, S. Reinecke, and D. Eklund. 2017. Beaver Colony Density Trends on the Chequamegon-Nicolet National Forest, 1987–2013. PLoS ONE 12(1):e0170099–15.

Ridgway, M. S. 2008. A Roadmap for Coasters: Landscapes, Life Histories, and the Conservation of Brook Trout. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 137(4):1179–1191.

Rosell, F., and H. Parker. 1996. The Beaver's (*Castor* spp.) role in forest ecology: a key species returns. Fauna 49:192–211.

Rosell, F., P. Collen, H. Parker, and O. Bozser. 2005. Ecological impact of Beavers *Castor fiber* and *Castor canadensis* and their ability to modify ecosystems. Mammal Review 35(3-4):248–276.

Rosgen, D. L. 1994. A classification of natural rivers. CATENA 22(3):169–199.

Ross, F. E. 1938. The Fur Trade of the Western Great Lakes Region. Minnesota History 19(3):271–307.

Rupp, R. S. 1955. Beaver-Trout Relationship in the Headwaters of Sunkhaze Stream, Maine. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 84(1):75–85.

Salyer, J. C. 1935. Preliminary report on the Beaver trout investigation. American Game 24(1):6–13–15.

Schlosser, I. J. 1991. Stream fish ecology: a landscape perspective. BioScience 41(10):704–712.

Schlosser, I. J. 1995a. Dispersal, boundary processes, and trophic-level interactions in streams adjacent to Beaver ponds. Ecology 76(3):908–925.

Schlosser, I. J. 1995b. Critical landscape attributes that influence fish population dynamics in headwater streams. Hydrobiologia 303(1-3):71–81.

Schlosser, I. J. 1998. Fish recruitment, dispersal, and trophic interactions in a heterogeneous lotic environment. Oecologia 113(2):260–268.

Schlosser, I. J., and L. W. Kallemeyn. 2000. Spatial variation in fish assemblages across a Beaver-influenced successional landscape. Ecology 81(5):1371–1382.

Schorger, A. W. 1965. The Beaver in Early Wisconsin. Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters 54:147–179.

Schreiner, D. R. 2008. Coaster Brook Trout Rehabilitation in Lake Superior: Introduction. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28(4):1305–1306.

Schreiner, D. R., K. I. Cullis, M. C. Donofrio, G. J. Fischer, L. Hewitt, K. G. Mumford, D. M. Pratt, H. R. Quinlan, and S. J. Scott. 2008. Management Perspectives on

Coaster Brook Trout Rehabilitation in the Lake Superior Basin. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28(4):1350–1364.

Schroeder, S. 2013. Trout angling in Minnesota. University of Minnesota, Minnesota Cooperative Fish and Wildlife Research Unit, Department of Fisheries, Wildlife, and Conservation Biology.

Schulte, L. A., D. J. Mladenoff, T. R. Crow, L. C. Merrick, and D. T. Cleland. 2007. Homogenization of northern U.S. Great Lakes forests due to land use. Landscape Ecology 22(7):1089–1103.

Shetter, D. S., and M. J. Whalls. 1955. Effect of Impoundment on Water Temperatures of Fuller Creek, Montmorency County, Michigan. The Journal of Wildlife Management 19(1):47–54.

Sinokrot, B. A., H. G. Stefan, J. H. McCormick, and J. G. Eaton. 1995. Modeling of climate change effects on stream temperatures and fish habitats below dams and near groundwater inputs. Climatic Change 30(2):181–200.

Smith, B. R., and J. J. Tibbles. 1980. Sea Lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*) in Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior: History of Invasion and Control, 1936–78. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 37(11):1780–1801.

Smith, J. M., and M. E. Mather. 2013. Beaver dams maintain fish biodiversity by increasing habitat heterogeneity throughout a low-gradient stream network. Freshwater Biology 58(7):1523–1538.

Smith, L. L., and J. B. Moyle. 1944. A biological survey and fishery management plan for the streams of the Lake Superior north shore watershed. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Technical Bulletin No. 1.

Smith, M. E., C. T. Driscoll, B. J. Wyskowski, C. M. Brooks, and C. C. Cosentini. 1991. Modification of stream ecosystem structure and function by Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) in the Adirondack Mountains, New York. Canadian Journal of Zoology 69(1):55–61.

Smith, S. H. 1968. Species Succession and Fishery Exploitation in the Great Lakes. Journal Fisheries Research Board of Canada 25(4):667–693.

Snodgrass, J. W., and G. K. Meffe. 1998. Influence of Beavers on stream fish assemblages: Effects of pond age and watershed position. Ecology 79(3):928–942.

Snodgrass, J. W., and G. K. Meffe. 1999. Habitat use and temporal dynamics of blackwater stream fishes in and adjacent to Beaver ponds. Copeia 1999(3):628–639.

Soller, D. R., M. C. Reheis, C. P. Garrity, and D. R. Van Sistine. 2009. Map Database for Surficial Materials in the Conterminous United States: U.S. Geological Survey Data Series 425.

Songster-Alpin, M. S., and R. L. Klotz. 1995. A comparison of electron transport system activity in stream and Beaver pond sediments. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52(6):1318–1326.

Sotiropoulos, J. C., K. H. Nislow, and M. R. Ross. 2006. Brook Trout, *Salvelinus fontinalis*, microhabitat selection and diet under low summer stream flows. Fisheries Management and Ecology 13(3):149–155.

Sprules, W. M. 1941. The Effect of a Beaver Dam on the Insect Fauna of a Trout Stream. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 70(1):236–248.

Stegeman, L. 1954. The production of aspen and its utilization by Beaver on the Huntington Forest. The Journal of Wildlife Management 18(3):348–358.

Sternecker, K., D. E. Cowley, and J. Geist. 2012. Factors influencing the success of salmonid egg development in river substratum. Ecology of Freshwater Fish 22(2):322–333.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14(4):969–974.

Unfer, G., and K. Pinter. 2017. Fisheries Management of Stream-Resident Brown Trout Populations – Possibilities and Restrictions. Pages 649–665 in Brown Trout. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.

Verry, E. S. 1986. Forest Harvesting and Water: the Lake States Experience. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 22(6):1039–1047.

Verry, E. S., J. R. Lewis, and K. N. Brooks. 1983. Aspen clearcutting increases snowmelt and storm flow peaks in north central Minnesota. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 19(1):59–67.

Vincent, R. E. 1962. Biogeographical and ecological factors contributing to the decline of Arctic grayling, *Thymallus arcticus* (Pallas), in Michigan and Montana. PhD Thesis, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI.

Virbickas, T., S. Stakėnas, and A. Steponėnas. 2015. Impact of Beaver Dams on Abundance and Distribution of Anadromous Salmonids in Two Lowland Streams in Lithuania. PLoS ONE 10(4):e0123107.

Voigt, D. R., G. B. Kolenosky, and D. H. Pimlott. 1976. Changes in Summer Foods of Wolves in Central Ontario. The Journal of Wildlife Management 40(4):663–668.

Wang, L., J. Lyons, P. Rasmussen, P. Seelbach, T. Simon, M. Wiley, P. Kanehl, E. Baker, S. Niemela, and P. M. Stewart. 2003. Watershed, reach, and riparian influences on stream fish assemblages in the Northern Lakes and Forest Ecoregion, U.S.A. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 60(5):491–505.

Waters, T. F. 1983. Replacement of Brook Trout by Brown Trout over 15 Years in a Minnesota Stream: Production and Abundance. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 112(2A):137–146.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams: sources, biological effects, and control. American Fisheries Society, Monograph 7. Bethesda, MD.

Waters, T. F. 1999. The Superior North Shore: A Natural History of Lake Superior's Northern Lands and Waters. University of Minnesota Press.

WDNR. 1990. Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan 1990-2015. Pages 1–16. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources.

WDNR. 2015. Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan 2015-2025. Pages 1–72. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources.

Weber, N., N. Bouwes, M. M. Pollock, C. Volk, J. M. Wheaton, G. Wathen, J. Wirtz, and C. E. Jordan. 2017. Alteration of stream temperature by natural and artificial Beaver dams. PLoS ONE 12(5):e0176313–23.

Wehrly, K. E., M. J. Wiley, and P. W. Seelbach. 2003. Classifying Regional Variation in Thermal Regime Based on Stream Fish Community Patterns. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 132(1):18–38.

Wells, L., and A. L. McLain. 1973. Lake Michigan: Man's effects on native fish stocks and other biota. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 20. Page 55.

Westbrook, C. J., D. J. Cooper, and B. W. Baker. 2006. Beaver dams and overbank floods influence groundwater-surface water interactions of a Rocky Mountain riparian area. Water Resources Research 42(6).

Westerman, F. A. 1974. On the history of trout planting and fish management in Michigan. in: Michigan fisheries centennial report 1873-1973. Michigan Department of Natual Resources Fisheries Management Report Number 6. Lansing, Michigan. Pages 15–37.

Whelan, G. E. 2004. A Historical Perspective on the Philosophy behind the Use of Propagated Fish in Fisheries Management: Michigan’s 130-Year Experience. American Fisheries Society Symposium 44:307–315.

White, D. S. 1990. Biological relationships to convective flow patterns within stream beds. Hydrobiologia 196(2):149–158.

White, M. A., and D. J. Mladenoff. 1994. Old-Growth Forest Landscape Transitions From Pre-European Settlement to Present. Landscape Ecology 9(3):191–205.

Whitney, G. G. 1987. An Ecological History of the Great Lakes Forest of Michigan. Journal of Ecology 75(3):667–684.

Wiley, M., S. Kohler, and P. Seelbach. 1997. Reconciling landscape and local views of aquatic communities: lessons from Michigan trout streams. Freshwater Biology 37(1):133–148.

Willging, R. C. 2017. Beaver and Trout in the 21st Century. The Wildlife Professional (November/December):26–30.

Wilson, C. C., W. Stott, L. Miller, S. D'Amelio, M. J. Jennings, and A. M. Cooper. 2008. Conservation genetics of Lake Superior Brook Trout: issues, questions, and directions. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28(4):1307–1320.

Windels, S. K. 2017. Beavers as engineers of wildlife habitat. in C. A. Johnston, editor. Beavers: Boreal Ecosystem Engineers. Springer-Verlaug Press.

Woo, M., and J. M. Waddington. 1990. Effects of Beaver Dams on Subarctic Wetland Hydrology. Arctic 43(3):223–230.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological Effects of Fine Sediment in the Lotic Environment. Environmental Management 21(2):203–217.

Zorn, T. G., P. W. Seelbach, and M. J. Wiley. 2002. Distributions of Stream Fishes and their Relationship to Stream Size and Hydrology in Michigan's Lower Peninsula. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 131(1):70–85.

Zorn, T., T. Cwalinski, N. Godby, B. Gunderman, and M. Tonello. (unpublished). Management Plan for Inland Trout in Michigan. Draft. Michigan Department of Natural Resources. Pages 1–89.

TABLES

Table 1.1. Summary of the main effects found from 21 beaver–salmonid studies conducted within the western Great Lakes region (Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Michigan). Average stream gradient was inferred from authors' comments or was obtained from stream assessments. Surficial geology was obtained from Soller et al. (2009). Textured grain size is further identified as coarse (C), fine (F), or medium (M); "patchy" indicates that bedrock is exposed. Analysis type was considered "empirical" if quantitative results were presented, "anecdotal" if no quantitative results were presented, or "mixed" if quantitative results were presented for only some of the study's variables. Results from each study were evaluated to determine whether beaver activity had a beneficial effect (↑), no effect (⇆), or a deleterious effect (↓) on salmonids. Studies with multiple arrow types in a cell indicate that multiple effects were found in different portions of the study area; unk. = unknown, ave. = average, and temp. = temperature.

Reference	State	Study scope	Stream gradient(s)	Data type	Stream temp.	Siltation	Migration barrier	Spawning habitat	Stream flow	Water chem. (DO, pH)	Population size	Avg. catch rate	Avg. catch size
Adams (1949)	Michigan	3 streams	Mixed	Empirical	⇆ / ↓					⇆ / ↓		↑	
Adams (1954)	Michigan	4 streams	Mixed	Empirical	⇆ / ↓		⇆			⇆ / ↓		↑ / ⇆	
Avery (1992)	Wisconsin	1 watershed	Low	Empirical	↓			↓			↑ /↓	↑	↑
Avery (2002)	Wisconsin	1 watershed	Low	Empirical	↓			↓	↑ / ↓		↓	↓	↓
Bradt (1935b)	Michigan	State	Mixed	Anecdotal								↓	↓
Carbine (1944)	Michigan	Upper Peninsula	Mixed	Anecdotal	↓		↓					↑	↑
Christenson *et al.* (1961)[1]	Wisconsin	State	Mixed	Mixed	⇆*	↓ *	↓	↓	↓	↓	↑‡		↑‡
DuBois and Schram (1993)	Wisconsin	1 tributary	Low	Mixed	⇆*	↓*		↓			↑ / ↓ *		
Dumke *et al.* (2010)	Wisconsin	1 tributary	Low	Empirical	⇆	↓		↓	↓				
Evans (1948)	Minnesota	8 streams	High	Mixed	⇆ / ↓ *		⇆						
Hale (1950)	Minnesota	3 streams	High	Empirical								↑	↑
Hale (1966)[1]	Minnesota	5 streams	High	Mixed	⇆		↓				↑*	↓*	↑*
Haugstad (1970)	Minnesota	20 streams	Low	Anecdotal	↓	↓		↓	↓		↓		
Klein and Newman (1992)	Minnesota	3 streams	Low	Empirical	⇆ / ↓	⇆ /↓		↓	↓	↓	↑ /↓		
Knudsen (1962)	Wisconsin	State	Mixed	Anecdotal	↓	↓	⇆		↑		↑		↑
McRae and Edwards (1994)	Wisconsin	4 streams	Low	Empirical	↑ / ⇆ /↓								
Patterson (1951)	Wisconsin	3 watersheds	Low	Mixed	↓*	↓*	↓	↓			↑ / ↓‡		↑ / ↓
Salyer (1935)	Michigan	State	Mixed	Mixed	⇆*	↓	↓ *	↓		↓ *	↑ / ↓‡	↑ /↓‡	
Shetter and Whalls (1955)[1]	Michigan	1 stream	High	Empirical	⇆				⇆			⇆	
Twork (1936)[1]	Michigan	Unknown	Unknown	Mixed	⇆*	↑	↓		⇆		↑		

* Denotes data-driven variables from studies that used mixed analyses.

‡ Positive effects found only in first 2-4 years after dam establishment.

[1] Christenson *et al.* (1961), Hale (1966), and Shetter and Whalls (1955) found increased water temperatures downstream of dams, and Twork (1936) stated a decrease in temperature after dam removal; however, stream temperatures did not exceed the thermal limits for brook trout (20-24 ºC).

FIGURES

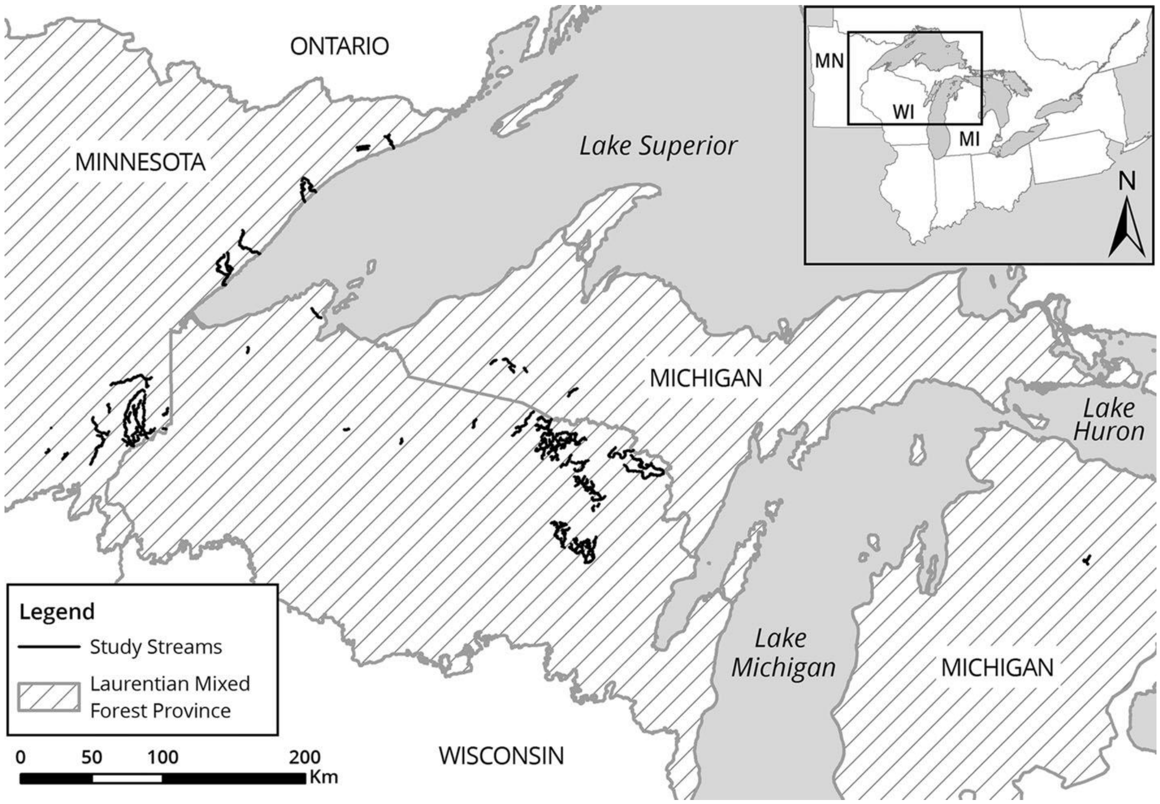


Figure 1.1. Map showing where beaver–salmonid studies have been conducted in the western Great Lakes region. Most of the studies are clustered regionally in northeast Wisconsin, east-central Minnesota, the north shore of Lake Superior, and the Upper Peninsula of Michigan. Several studies (Bradt 1935b; Salyer 1935; Twork 1936; Carbine 1944) did not include spatial information and are not pictured here.

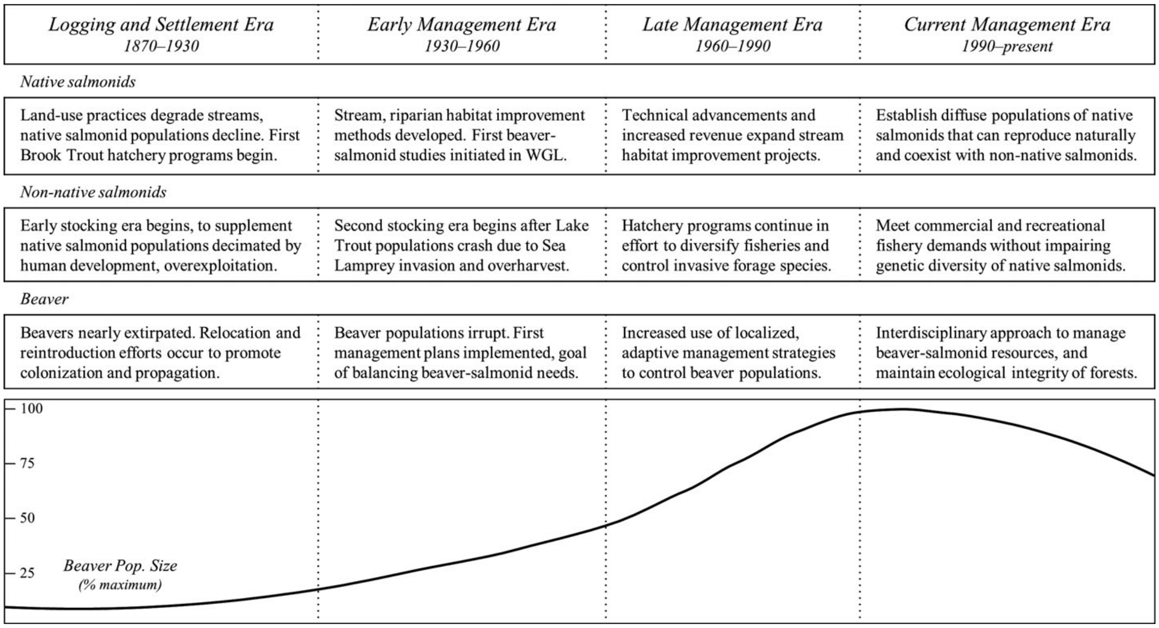


Figure 1.2. Timeline of major events from different management eras and a graph of the approximate beaver population trend from the western Great Lakes (WGL) region (1870–present). The beaver population trendline was estimated from a combination of historical pelt records (Obbard et al. 1987), unpublished beaver colony count data from the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, and population data from the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR 2015). Percent maximum refers to the percentage of the maximum beaver population size after European settlement. Presettlement beaver abundance is unknown but was likely 50–100% of the 1990 peak.

CHAPTER 2: EFFECT OF BEAVER ON BROOK TROUT HABITAT IN NORTH SHORE, LAKE SUPERIOR STREAMS

Abstract.- In Minnesota, North American Beavers *Castor canadensis* (hereafter Beaver) are considered to have an overall negative affect on native Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis*. Brook Trout provide a valued and productive sport fishery to the North Shore streams of Lake Superior and since revival of the Beaver population from past trapping and timber harvest, a reexamination of the complex ecological relationship where the two taxa interact is imperative. Suitable Brook Trout habitat is characterized by cold, spring-fed water with silt-free rocky substrate and abundant cover, all of which Beaver may directly, or indirectly, affect. Data collection occurred on 79 (200 m) stream sections and 21 Beaver ponds spanning the North Shore during summers 2017 and 2018. Habitat suitability index (HSI) were used to determine the average HSI and quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) in both stream and pond sites. A bioenergetics model was employed to calculate growth availability (m^2/100 m^2) and mean growth (g/day) for Brook Trout in stream sites. Classification regression trees were used to identify significant thresholds in which Beaver activity, such as distance to nearest Beaver pond and number of dams upstream of sampled sites, influenced the quantity or quality of Brook Trout habitat and growth. No significant predictor variables were identified in the regression tree as affecting the average HSI, area of suitable Brook Trout habitat, Brook Trout growth availability, or growth rates in stream sites. Alternatively, the quantity and quality of Brook Trout habitat in streams of this region appears to be better described by microhabitat variables (depth, velocity, temperature) that are eminent in individual stream sites. Brook Trout growth in stream sites was strongly influenced by velocity (m/sec) and mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3). Results from interpolated habitat maps of Beaver pond sites indicated that 12 of the 21 ponds sampled contained suitable Brook Trout habitat, with dissolved oxygen (mg/L) identified as a threshold for determining if ponds contained suitable Brook Trout habitat. This study recommends focusing on individual stream characteristics and Beaver pond dissolved oxygen concentrations to achieve desired Brook Trout habitat and aid in the development of management strategies pertaining to these two taxa in North Shore, Lake Superior streams.

INTRODUCTION

Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* are a native salmonid in Northeast Minnesota, providing a valued and productive sport fishery to the area. Since 1879, the North Shore streams of Lake Superior have been famous for their trout fishing (Smith and Moyle 1944; Schreiner et al. 2008) and have since remain desired by anglers, with those who fished Lake Superior streams spending over $21 million in direct sales each year (Gartner et al. 2002). North American Beaver *Castor canadensis* have reinhabited Northeastern Minnesota since their near extermination in the 1800's and the impact of their increased populations to coldwater stream ecosystems has fostered concern from anglers and resource managers (Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). Active Beaver control is currently occurring on 6% of the total 3,368 km of designated trout streams and tributaries in the Lake Superior watersheds (MNDNR 2016).

Brook Trout populate numerous aquatic systems, inhabiting small headwater streams, large rivers, ponds, and large inland lakes and coastal areas (Raleigh 1982). They are often associated with high water quality (Schreiner et al. 2008) and prefer cool waters associated with spring-fed ground water (Raleigh 1982). Brook Trout have an upper critical thermal limit of 24 °C, with warmer water temperatures most often considered the limiting factor for distribution (Creaser 1930; Raleigh 1982). Riverine Brook Trout habitat is characterized by silt-free, rocky substrate in riffle-run areas with moderate flow (Raleigh 1982). Clear, cold lakes and ponds, often those that are oligotrophic, represent optimal lacustrine Brook Trout habitat (Raleigh 1982). Brook Trout require high dissolved oxygen concentrations, preferring maximum saturation

(Raleigh 1982), but have a greater pH tolerance range, often more tolerant than other salmonids to a low pH (Creaser 1930; Raleigh 1982).

Beaver are often referred to as ecological engineers because of their considerable impact on landscapes they inhabit and their alteration of ecosystems. Colonization of a stream by Beaver induces many hydrological, chemical, and physical changes, with conditions upstream of a Beaver dam changing from lotic to lenthic (Patterson 1951; Collen and Gibson 2001). Ramifications of Beaver dam building and foraging habits may negatively affect Brook Trout habitat by reducing stream discharge and velocity, consequently increasing temperatures and siltation (Naiman et al. 1988). Alterations of stream hydrology and morphology induced by Beaver may additionally influence water chemistry, with changes in pH and dissolved oxygen having potential negative effects on Brook Trout (Naiman et al. 1988). Repercussions of Beaver activity and stream impoundment could include changes in aquatic invertebrate composition (Sprules 1941; McDowell and Naiman 1986) and impaired Brook Trout movement (Grasse and Putnam 1955). By transforming a section of the stream to lentic, positive impacts of Beaver could include stabilizing stream flow (Parker 1986; Gurnell 1988), providing rearing (Leidholt-Bruner et al. 1992) and overwintering habitat (Cunjak 1996; Virbickas et al. 2015), reducing the magnitude of thermal diel fluctuations (McRae and Edwards 1994), and reducing siltation below the dam (Levine and Meyer 2014).

The Beaver-salmonid relationship has been investigated since the early 1900's and dramatic shifts in Beaver management practices and Brook Trout rehabilitation efforts within the last century mandate revised management plans specific for the region (Call 1970; Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). Beaver tend to provide favorable Brook Trout habitat conditions on high gradient, high elevation streams with significant snow melt runoff and springs present (Call 1970; Collen and Gibson 2001). On low gradient, low elevation streams with slow to moderate flow fed by surface waters, Beaver tend to impair Brook Trout habitat (Call 1970; Collen and Gibson 2001). This gradient trend was observed among multiple studies evaluating the effect of Beaver on salmonids in streams located within the western Great Lakes U.S. region (Michigan, Minnesota, and Wisconsin), including those focused on Lake Superior's north shore in Minnesota (Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). However, Johnson-Bice et al. (2018) note inconsistencies within this pattern, and coupled with a lack of empirical data, recommend that more data-driven research be conducted to disentangle the complex Beaver-salmonid relationship.

Due to increased Beaver populations and the desire to conserve native Brook Trout in the North Shore, Lake Superior region, this ecologically intricate relationship needs to be re-investigated to successfully co-manage each species. Since the effect of Beaver on Brook Trout varies regionally, the management strategy pertaining to these two species should be defined specifically for the North Shore of Lake Superior. Therefore, the objectives of this study are: 1) test for a relationship between Brook Trout habitat and the amount of Beaver activity in select North Shore, Lake Superior streams and 2) provide recommendations to agencies managing for Brook Trout and Beaver in the North Shore, Lake Superior region.

METHODS

Study Area

This study was conducted in Lake, Cook, and St. Louis counties of Northeastern Minnesota along Lake Superior's north shore. The North Shore spans from the Canadian border south to Duluth and encompasses a watershed area of approximately 4,143 km^2 (MPCA 2014). Deciduous, evergreen, and mixed forests comprise approximately 85.7% of the North Shore region. Open water and wetlands consist of approximately 8% of the area, with wetland coverage greatest inland (Lahti et al. 2013). The remaining land area in this region consists of grasslands, pasture, barren land, and urbanization (Lahti et al. 2013). The terrain is steep, with elevations ranging from approximately 700 m above mean sea level down to approximately 183 m at Lake Superior (Lahti et al. 2013). Water retention is poor on the North Shore (Smith and Moyle 1944) and springs rarely exist above 244 m (Surber 1923). Since few large springs exist, and large groundwater aquifers are absent due to shallow bedrock (Detenbeck et al. 2003; Herb and Stefan 2010), the water supplying North Shore's tributaries is derived from lakes, swamps, and precipitation (Smith and Moyle 1944; Herb and Stefan 2010).

The North Shore is located in the Great Lakes basin in Northeastern Minnesota and is divided into two major watersheds, Lake Superior North and Lake Superior South. There are approximately 1,616 km^2 in the Lake Superior South watershed containing 1,717 km of stream, with 1,287 km classified as coldwater (MPCA 2014). The Lake Superior North watershed located in the United States is approximately 2,527 km^2 in size with major streams including the Baptism, Manitou, Caribou, and Brule River (MPCA 2017). North Shore streams are unique in that the headwaters are located in bogs and marshes and have lethargic flows, whilst near the mouth of Lake Superior, streams have high gradients, commonly exceeding 19 m/km, with high flows (Lahti et al. 2013; MPCA 2014). Within the North Shore watersheds there are approximately 244 trout streams (Axler et al. 2009), with 185 of those containing Brook Trout (MNDNR 2017).

Data collection occurred in 79 (200 m) stream sections and 21 Beaver ponds during summers 2017 and 2018 within the North Shore (Figure 2.1, Appendix A.1). Sampling occurred during July and August, capturing low flow and high temperatures that are critical factors limiting suitable Brook Trout habitat (Raleigh 1982). Sites were chosen based on accessibility and varying degrees of stream characteristics and Beaver activity that included stream width, stream order, distance to headwater, abundance of upstream Beaver dams, and distance to nearest Beaver dam.

Data was recorded directly into an ArcGIS attribute table using a Trimble GeoExplorer 7x GPS unit with Trimble TerraSync Centimeter Edition software that allowed for georeferencing and sub meter accuracy. Data was recorded at points along evenly spaced transects, with spacing dependent on average stream wetted width and pond area to ensure consistent sampling effort among sites. In streams, point and transect spacing were measured 1.0 m apart when average stream width was $\leq$ 2.0 m, 2.0 m apart when width was > 2.0 m but $\leq$ 4.0 m, 2.5 m apart when width was > 4.0 m but $\leq$ 6.0 m, and 3.0 m apart when stream width was > 6 m. Data points in Beaver ponds were collected at points along eight transects with equal distancing between transects and points dependent on pond size. In large Beaver ponds, only the 1600 m^2 area directly above the dam was measured. Data collection occurred in Beaver ponds at earliest time possible during morning hours to capture low dissolved oxygen concentrations due to plant respiration that would limit Brook Trout habitat.

Models

Habitat suitability index (HSI) models are used to analyze the relationship between a species life history and its unique habitat requirements by estimating available habitat from an applied knowledge of abiotic optimal ranges for the species of interest (Ahmadi-Nedushan et al. 2006). This study used two different Brook Trout HSI models, as suggested by Raleigh (1982), which encompassed multiple Brook Trout life stages (adult, juvenile, and fry) and quantified suitable habitat in stream and pond sites. Suitability curves were used to determine the HSI score for individual variables collected at each data point (Raleigh 1982). The habitat measurements and suitability index curves are based on the assumption that extreme values of a variable most often limit the carrying capacity of Brook Trout habitat (Raleigh 1982). Temperature, depth, velocity, substrate size, pH, and dissolved oxygen are specific Brook Trout habitat characteristics potentially influenced by Beaver and, therefore, were criteria for the chosen individual HSI variables. These variables were measured, dependent on site type (riverine or lacustrine), and suitability index curves were then used to determine an individual HSI score for each variable. Individual HSI scores for each data point variable were applied to the following Raleigh (1982) Brook Trout HSI models to provide an overall HSI score for each data point sampled:

$$\text{Riverine HSI} = (V_1 \text{ x } V_4 \text{ x } V_5 \text{ x } V_7)^{1/4}$$

$$\text{Lacustrine HSI} = (V_1 \text{ x } V_3 \text{ x } V_{13})^{1/3}$$

where V_1 is the temperature suitability index, V_3 is the dissolved oxygen suitability index, V_4 is the average thalweg depth suitability index, V_5 is the average velocity suitability index, V_7 is the average substrate size suitability index, and V_{13} is the pH suitability index. The lacustrine HSI model was invoked when sampling Beaver ponds and the riverine HSI model for stream sites. The two different HSI models are being used due to environmental differences between stream and pond sites. For example, Beaver ponds resemble lacustrine environments where velocity should not dramatically differ throughout, and therefore, should not be included as a model variable.

Bioenergetics models are another popular tool used by fisheries biologists to estimate suitable habitat from quantifiable abiotic variables (Hartman and Sweka 2003) and this study used a drift feeding bioenergetics model (Hafs et al. 2014) to calculate the area in each stream site suitable for Brook Trout growth. Model parameters from Hafs et al. (2014) were modified to represent Brook Trout and variables exclusive to individual sites were then manually inputted into Hafs et al. (2014) model script in R (R Development Core Team 2008; Appendix B.1). Growth was estimated for an individual Brook Trout located in a 0.5 m x 0.5 m pixel during a 1-day period by subtracting bioenergetic costs from energy consumed (Hafs et al. 2014). This process was done for every pixel within the stream section, which allowed for the area of growth availability (m^2/100 m^2) and mean growth (g/day) for Brook Trout in each stream site sampled to be calculated. The bioenergetics model was only used for stream sites due to low velocities in lacustrine environments resulting in expendable drift concentrations.

Model Variables

Data collected at each point within a stream sampling site included depth (m), velocity (m/sec), and temperature (°C) to later be applied to the models previously discussed, as well as substrate (cm) that was applied only to the HSI model. In Beaver pond sites, data collected at each interval point included depth (m), pH, dissolved oxygen (mg/L), and temperature (°C) were later applied only the HSI model. A Yellow Springs Instruments (YSI) multiparameter meter (Model Professional Plus) was used to measure temperature, pH, and dissolved oxygen, with measurements taken at site bottom. Depth and velocity in stream sites were measured using a portable velocity flow meter and standard metric wading rod (Hach FH950 Handheld Flow Meter; Hach Company, Loveland, Colorado), with velocity measurements taken at 60% depth.

Two temperature loggers (Thermochron iButton DS1922L/T; Maxim Integrated Products, San Jose, CA) were deployed in the thalweg of sampling sites prior to field season and continuously recorded site temperatures once every two hours throughout summer months. In Beaver pond sites, four temperature loggers were placed evenly across the widest section at the bottom of the pond. Temperature data was investigated, and loggers showing evidence of becoming airborne during deployment were omitted from analysis. The average maximum daily temperature during July and August was determined for individual sites and used to adjust temperatures that were collected in the field at each data point. Since the HSI model depicts extreme values that most often limit habitat (Raleigh 1982), this adjustment allowed for each data point to represent warmest temperatures reached during Brook Trout critical months.

Aquatic invertebrate collection occurred only in stream sampling sites and drift data was applied to the bioenergetics model. One or two drift nets (30 cm x 47 cm frame, 500 μm; WaterMark Stream drift net), dependent on stream width, were installed upstream of sampling sections in riffle areas and remained until data point collection was completed. The amount of time (min) the drift net was deployed in the stream and the velocity (m/sec) and depth (m) measured directly in front of the drift net were recorded. Samples were collected from drift nets at the end of the sampling period and transferred to bottles containing a 95% ethanol solution. In the laboratory, samples containing a high density of invertebrates were subsampled following a fixed-count protocol (Barbour et al.

(1999) to reach the desired sample size of 200 organisms ± 20%. Invertebrates were identified to family, lowest taxonomic level possible due to time constraints, using Bouchard (2004). Body length of specimens, measurements excluding antennae and cerci, was measured under a dissecting microscope, recorded to the nearest 0.01 mm, and later used to determine prey concentration (mg dry mass/ m^3) in the bioenergetics model.

Habitat Maps

Spatially interpolated habitat maps for each site were created in GIS from overall HSI values calculated at each data point. Raleigh's (1982) Brook Trout HSI model allowed for the overall HSI scores to be calculated for each data point collected. Calculations were performed in ArcGIS from values collected at the site and recorded in the point shapefile attribute table. The overall HSI scores provided a value from 0-1 (0 unsuitable, 1 optimum habitat) for each data point collected along transects in sampled sections.

Kriging is a geostatistical interpolation method in GIS that allows optimum values to be predicted from the weights of control point data and for prediction assessment explaining spatial variation in modeled maps (O'Sullivan and Unwin 2010). The "kriging" tool under the Geospatial Analysis extension was used to interpolate HSI scores. Ordinary kriging was performed and the most accurate model was achieved by obtaining a root-mean-square standardized closest to 1, an average standard error closest to 0, and the smallest root-mean-square error and average standard error possible (Johnston et al. 2001).

Interpolated values were reclassified to produce a map depicting Brook Trout habitat of sampled sections. A polygon was created around the stream site and the data frame was clipped to the polygon shape to represent interpolated habitat values only in the sampled sections. The Spatial Analysis tool "reclassify" was executed for each kriged interpolation to reclassify the data as suitable (HSI ≥ 0.10) and unsuitable (HSI < 0.10) as suggested by Brown et al. (2000). This allowed for the area of suitable habitat (m^2/100 m^2) for each stream site to be calculated by using the "GA layer to contour" and "calculate geometry" tools.

Predictor Variables

Specific variables were measured at the sampling site or remotely to investigate the effect of Beaver on Brook Trout habitat. To determine algal biomass at each stream site, rocks were randomly collected at each site during a two-day period in July. They were later processed in the laboratory by drying each rock at 70 °C, weighing it, ashing it for 2 hours at 400 °C, and reweighing it. The ash-free dry mass (AFDM) was estimated by subtracting the dry mass (DM) from the residual ash of each individual rock. The volume of displacement (L) was determined for each rock and then used to estimate surface area (cm^2) with the equation provided by Cooper and Testa (2001). The AFDM value was then divided by the surface area (cm^2) of the sampled rock to represent the biomass of benthic algae in each sampling site (Lamberti et al. 2006).

Remote variables of stream sites were measured using ArcGIS 10.4.1 (Environmental Systems Research Institute; ESRI) and the US Geological Survey online program StreamStats version 4.1.8 (USGS 2016). Digitization and spatial interpolations performed in ArcGIS used Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) Zone 15 and the 1983 North American datum (NAD 1983). Stream feature data was obtained from GIS layers made available online by Minnesota Geospatial Commons and stream features were digitized using statewide composite imagery (MnGeo Composite Image Service 2017) in ArcGIS. This allowed for upstream dam abundance on main branch per drainage area, stream length (m), distance to nearest upstream Beaver dam (m), area of nearest upstream Beaver dam (m^2), and distance to headwater (m) to be calculated. The upstream presence of a spring, lithology, soil texture, geomorphology, and geological environment of each site were also determined. Latitude was determined by using the "calculate geometry" tool in ArcGIS and stream order was determined using the "stream order" tool. Average stream elevation was calculated by using a digital elevation model (DEM) in ArcGIS provided by MnGeo Composite Image Service (2017). Reach slope was calculated by determining the difference in elevation of the section (rise) divided by the reach length (run) using the DEM in ArcGIS.

Other remote variables were computed using USGS StreamStats. The site basin was delineated by identifying the stream using the "search" tool, selecting the state or regional study, finding the site location, zooming to level 16, and activating the "delineation" tool. Once the basin was delineated at the site, scenarios including drainage area (m^2), water storage in basin (%), hydrologic soil type A (%), and change in elevation (m) were selected and measured.

Predictor variables were also measured to investigate the relationship between lacustrine suitable Brook Trout habitat availability and Beaver activity. The predictor variables measured at Beaver pond sites included dam length (m), maximum dam width (m), maximum dam height (m), pool depth (m) directly upstream of the Beaver dam, and area of the scour pool (m^2) at the base of the dam. Measurements also included sedimentation depth (cm), estimated percent of terrestrial vegetation underwater, the maximum width (m) of bank underwater in Beaver ponds, and the observed number of relief channels around a Beaver dam. Beaver pond area (m^2), Beaver pond perimeter (m), and Beaver pond age (classified as “New”, “Mid”, and “Old” as suggested by Snodgrass and Meffe (1998)) were measured remotely using ArcGIS and statewide composite imagery (MnGeo Composite Image Service 2017). Other variables measured from stream feature data was obtained from GIS layers included upstream spring presence, wetland classification, vegetation type, and geomorphology. Drainage area (m^2) and mean basin slope are other remote variables that were computed using USGS StreamStats methods previously described. Pond latitude and stream order were also calculated by methods previously discussed.

Statistics

Spearman correlation was used to determine if there was a correlation between the bioenergetics model and riverine HSI model and to examine model precision. To determine if the quantity and quality of Brook Trout habitat in stream sites was similar to that found in Beaver ponds, a Wilcoxon rank-sum test was used since data was not normally distributed (Dalgaard 2008).

Conditional inference regression tree (cTree) modeling provides an easily implemented and interpreted statistical method that can handle complex data, such as that commonly found in ecology (Quinn and Keough 2002; Zuur et al. 2007; Johnstone et al. 2014). This type of model was used to examine and provide a simple decision-making flow chart to represent the relationship between Brook Trout habitat quality and quantity, as well as growth availability in stream sites, and their associated predictor variables. Predictor variables used to investigate the relationship in stream sites included biomass of benthic algae, drainage area (m^2), upstream dam abundance on main branch per drainage area, stream length (m), distance to nearest upstream Beaver dam (m), area of nearest upstream Beaver dam (m^2), distance to headwater (m), stream order, water storage in basin (%), hydrologic soil type A (%), site latitude, site slope. Predictor variables used to investigate the Beaver and Brook Trout relationship in pond sites included dam length (m), maximum dam width (m), maximum dam height (m), depth of the pool (m), area of scour pool (m^2), depth of sedimentation (cm), number of relief channels, median sedimentation (cm), terrestrial vegetation underwater (%), pond latitude, wetland classification, type of vegetation surrounding pond, geomorphology, and the maximum width (m) of bank underwater in Beaver ponds. The cTree model was implemented through the 'party' package and R version 3.3.2 (R Development Core Team 2008). This model uses unbiased recursive partitioning and splits the tree nodes based on the *P* value of a single input variable and its response (R Development Core Team 2008). The stop criterion for a split can be controlled and permutation tests for the cTree include "Bonferroni", "MonteCarlo", "Univariate", and "Teststatistic" (R Development Core Team 2008). The "Bonferroni" test type was specified to correct for multiple testing that could attribute to exaggerated p-values (Dalgaard 2008). The "Bonferroni" test type determined significant splits ($P \leq 0.05$) in the cTree and minimized error in variable selection (Dalgaard 2008).

The cTree model inputs included the predictor variables and the calculated average HSI, suitable habitat (m^2/100 m^2), growth availability (m^2/100 m^2), and mean growth (g/day) of sampling sites. The cTree model output identified variables that had a significant effect on Brook Trout suitable habitat and presented these variables as response categories in a regression tree. The relevant predictor variable was displayed with its associated *P* value and node number. Immediately below the significant predictor variable, categories or numerical ranges identified as initiating the split were displayed. When the stop criterion had been reached, and no other splits could occur, boxplots were displayed with medians, ranges and upper and lower quartiles of the average HSI, suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2), Brook Trout growth availability (m^2/100 m^2), or mean Brook Trout growth (g/day) in each response category.

RESULTS

Spatial interpolations of Brook Trout habitat and growth calculated from the HSI and bioenergetics model for sites located along the North Shore, Lake Superior allowed for the following results to be determined (Figure 2.2). Comparison of the HSI and bioenergetics model in stream sites in regards to Brook Trout suitable habitat (m^2/100 m^2) and growth availability (m^2/100 m^2), and also average HSI and mean Brook Trout growth (g/day), suggests low precision between the two methods (*rho*=0.15; *rho*=0.12, respectively; Figure 2.3). There was not enough evidence to suggest a significant difference in average HSI (W=929.0, P=0.40; Figure 2.4A) or amount of suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) (W=1004.5, P=0.139; Figure 2.4B) between stream and Beaver pond sites.

Regression tree analysis used to investigate the effect of Beaver on Brook Trout habitat and growth, as determined by the HSI and bioenergetics model in stream sites, did not find the following predictor variables significant: drainage area, basin water storage, hydrological soil A, algal biomass, upstream dam abundance on main branch per drainage, area of upstream Beaver pond, tree width of nearest upstream dam, distance to nearest dam, distance to headwater, stream order, maximum site temperature, spring presence, site latitude, site slope, lithology, soil texture, geomorphology, and geological environment (Figures 2.5). Regression tree analysis indicated that Beaver activity did not influence the average HSI and habitat suitability (m^2/100 m^2) in stream sites, and therefore, microhabitat variables were further investigated. Microhabitat variables compared to HSI model results included mean depth (m), mean velocity (m/sec), mean temperature (°C), and maximum temperature (°C). Variables further investigated and compared to growth availability (m^2/100 m^2), calculated from the bioenergetics model, included mean depth (m), mean velocity (m/sec), mean temperature (°C), maximum temperature (°C), mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3), and mean prey energy density.

Regression tree analysis identified that significant microhabitat variables affecting the average HSI, calculated from the HSI model, included mean depth (m), mean velocity (m/sec), and maximum temperature (°C) (P<0.001; P=0.018; P=0.007, respectively). Streams with low quality Brook Trout habitat occurred had mean depths ≤ 0.128 m (IQR=0.03-0.17, median=0.07, n=16; Figure 2.6) and streams composed of higher quality habitat occurred had mean depths > 0.128 m, mean velocities ≤ 0.35 m/sec, and maximum temperatures ≤ 24.26 °C (IQR=0.10-0.53, median=0.28, n=20; Figure 2.6). Significant microhabitat variables identified by regression tree analysis that influence the quantity of Brook Trout habitat, calculated from the HSI model, in stream sites were mean depth (m) and mean velocity (m/sec) (P=0.001; P=0.002, respectively; Figure 2.7). Streams with a low amount of suitable habitat (m^2/100 m^2) occurred with mean depths ≤ 0.128 m (IQR=0.72-74.82, median=13.65, n=16; Figure 2.7). A greater quantity of habitat ($m^2/100\ m^2$) occurred in streams with mean depth > 0.128 m and mean velocity ≤ 0.35 m/sec (IQR=0.00-100.00, median=91.11, n=40; Figure 2.7).

Regression tree analysis identified mean velocity (m/sec) and mean prey concentrations (mg dry mass/m^3) as having a significant affect on Brook Trout growth availability ($m^2/100\ m^2$) in stream sites, calculated using the bioenergetics model ($P<0.001$; $P=0.002$, respectively; Figure 2.8). A greater quantity of Brook Trout growth ($m^2/100\ m^2$) occurred in streams with mean velocity ≤ 0.161 m (IQR=0.00-100.00, median= 63.65, n=28; Figure 2.8). The least amount of growth ($m^2/100\ m^2$) occurred in streams with mean velocity > 0.161 m/sec and mean prey concentrations ≤ 0.206 mg dry mass/m^3 (IQR=0.00-15.31, median=0.46, n=26; Figure 2.8). A significant variable identified by the regression tree as affecting Brook Trout growth rates (g/day) was mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3) ($P<0.001$) (Figure 2.9). Mean Brook Trout growth rates were highest in stream sites with mean prey concentration > 0.77 mg dry mass/m^3 (IQR=0.29-10.65, median=2.00, n=7; Figure 2.9) and lowest in streams with mean prey concentration ≤ 0.136 mg dry mass/m^3 (IQR=0.00-0.01, median=0.00, n=23; Figure 2.9). When directly comparing mean Brook Trout growth (g/day) to mean prey density (mg dry mass/m^3) for each stream site, mean growth significantly increased as mean prey density increased ($P<0.001$; Figure 2.10).

No significant predictor variables in Beaver pond sites were identified in the regression tree when compared to average HSI (Figure 2.11A) and area of suitable Brook Trout habitat ($m^2/100\ m^2$) (Figure 2.11B). The median HSI in the 21 pond sites sampled was 0.14 (range=0.00-0.90; Figure 2.11A), compared to stream sites with a median HSI of 0.20 (range=0.03-0.35; Figure 2.5A). The area of suitable Brook Trout habitat in Beaver pond sites ranged from 0.00-100.00 $m^2/100\ m^2$ with a median area of 33.10 $m^2/100\ m^2$ (Figure 2.11B), compared to stream sites with a median area of 65.11 $m^2/100\ m^2$ (range=0.00-100.00; Figure 2.5B). However, results from interpolated habitat maps of Beaver pond sites indicated that 12 of the 21 ponds sampled contained suitable Brook Trout habitat with a median HSI of 0.45 (range=0.02-0.90; Figure 2.4A) and median area of 95.93 $m^2/100\ m^2$ (range=2.72-100.00 area $m^2/100\ m^2$; Figure 2.4B), noticeably higher in comparison to stream sites containing suitable habitat (Figure 2.4A). When the quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat in Beaver ponds as calculated by the habitat suitability index (HSI) model was compared to the average dissolved oxygen (mg/L) in each site, a greater area of suitable habitat was achieved when dissolved oxygen concentrations were above 4.16 mg/L (Figure 2.12).

DISCUSSION

There are a myriad of potential effects of Beaver on Brook Trout habitat commonly cited in literature and this project represents the largest comprehensive study conducted in the region investigating the relationship between these two taxa (Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). However, from the breadth of variables investigated in this study, none were identified as significant. Results, therefore, indicate that Beaver activity may not be affecting Brook Trout habitat in North Shore, Lake Superior sites located downstream of Beaver dams. Alternatively, the quantity and quality of Brook Trout habitat in streams of this region appears to be better described by microhabitat variables that are eminent in individual stream sites. Results indicated that higher quality Brook Trout habitat was present in streams that exhibited greater depths, slower velocities, and lower maximum temperatures and it did not appear that Beaver activity significantly influenced any of these variables. A greater quantity of Brook Trout habitat was present in streams distinguished by greater depths and slower velocities, also not significantly influenced by Beaver activity.

Results indicated that Beaver activity was not affecting Brook Trout growth in North Shore, Lake Superior streams. It was determined that Brook Trout had greater growth potential in streams characterized by higher prey densities, unaffected by Beaver activity. In study sites, the stream section area providing the greatest Brook Trout growth potential was characterized with slower velocities and higher prey concentrations. These results suggest that a greater focus on individual stream characteristics, not necessarily Beaver activity, should be considered to achieve desired Brook Trout habitat and growth in North Shore, Lake Superior streams.

The ability to determine variables affecting the quantity and quality of suitable habitat provided by a Beaver pond may also prove beneficial to agencies managing Brook Trout, specifically to those contemplating removal of a specific Beaver dam. Results from this study indicated that select Beaver ponds on North Shore, Lake Superior streams provide suitable habitat for Brook Trout, and pertaining to the average HSI calculated in ponds, better quality Brook Trout habitat than stream sites sampled. Dissolved oxygen was identified as the threshold regarding whether ponds in the region contained suitable Brook Trout habitat. Beaver ponds with dissolved oxygen concentrations > 4.2 mg/L provided not only suitable Brook Trout habitat, but also high quality Brook Trout habitat.

Brook Trout require high dissolved oxygen concentrations (Raleigh 1982) and the effect of Beaver activity on dissolved oxygen levels varies regionally and is dependent upon original stream conditions (Collen and Gibson 2001; Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). Within the region, observations have suggested that Beaver activity generally negatively affects dissolved oxygen concentrations (Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). Microbial respiration within flooded soils and decomposition of organic matter may attribute to reduced dissolved oxygen levels (Pollock et al.1995; Songster-Alpin and Klotz 1995; Bertolo et al. 2008; Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). Although sedimentation depths were not identified in this study as affecting Brook Trout habitat in Beaver ponds, the sediment oxygen demand in Beaver impoundments warrants further investigation.

Increased photosynthesis and respiration generated by greater surface area and additional light was observed to induce greater diurnal oxygen fluctuations in Beaver impoundments compared to free-flowing streams (Burchsted et al. 2016) and potentially stressing Brook Trout inhabiting the pond. However, maximum oxygen levels in Beaver impoundments may exceed those found unimpounded stream sections due to increased photosynthesis (Burchsted et al. 2016). The concern of diurnal fluctuations could be addressed by deploying loggers to consistently record dissolved oxygen concentrations in a Beaver pond of interest. Identification of dissolved oxygen concentrations as a significant variable affecting Brook Trout habitat in Beaver ponds will allow managers to make a decision on Beaver dam removal regarding the improvement of Brook Trout habitat by simply measuring dissolved oxygen levels in the Beaver pond of concern.

Since the effect of Beaver on Brook Trout is vastly dependent on ecological characteristics and varies regionally, this study advocates further research on this complex relationship. It is commonly cited that Beaver ponds tend to positively affect salmonid growth rates (Cook 1940; Patterson 1951; Shetter and Whalls 1955; Rosell and Parker 1996; McCaffery 2009; Johnson-Bice 2018) and additional research on diet analysis and bioenergetics of Brook Trout inhabiting Beaver ponds would provide better insight. It would also be beneficial to determine Brook Trout population estimates in Beaver ponds compared to stream areas and to investigate connectivity through genetic analyses. Specifically in the North Shore region, further investigation on groundwater interactions is also warranted. The data and models provided by this study would be applicable to other salmonid species and could provide a foundation for future research.

Results provided from this study distinguish instream variables important to achieving desired Brook Trout habitat and give insight on those involved in the complex Beaver and Brook Trout relationship. This reduces the amount of time and money spent by only measuring necessary variables. By measuring dissolved oxygen concentrations in a specific Beaver pond, managers can discern potential Brook Trout habitat, in addition to potential repercussions of Beaver dam removal. Results provided by this project allow for agencies in the Northeast Minnesota region to efficiently make decisions in regards to Beaver and Brook Trout populations and successfully co-manage these two species.

REFERENCES

Ahmadi-Nedushan, B., A. St-Hilaire, M. Berube, E. Robichaud, N. Thiemonge, and B. Bobee. 2006. A review of statistical methods for the evaluation of aquatic habitat suitability for instream flow assessment. River Resource and Applications 22:503–523.

Axler, R., C. Kleist, G. Host, C. Hagley, M. Lonsdale, J. Reed, J. Schomberg, N. Will, J. Henneck, G. Sjerven, E. Ruzycki, T. Carlson, B. Munson, and C. Richards. 2009. LakeSuperiorStreams: Community Partnerships For Understanding Water Quality and Stormwater Impacts at the Head of the Great Lakes (http://lakesuperiorstreams.org). University of Minnesota-Duluth.

Barbour, M.T., J. Gerritsen, B.D. Snyder, and J.B Stribling. 1999. Chapter 7: Benthic macroinvertebrate protocols. *In* Rapid Bioassessment Protocols for Use in Streams and Wadeable Rivers: Periphyton, Benthic Macroinvertebrates, and Fish, 2nd edition. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 841-B-99-002, Washington, D.C.

Bertolo, A., P. Magnan, and M. Plante. 2008. Linking the occurrence of Brook Trout with isolation and extinction in small Boreal Shieldlakes. Freshwater Biology 53:304–321.

Bouchard Jr., R.W. 2004. Guide to aquatic invertebrates of the Upper Midwest: identification manual for students, citizen monitors, and aquatic resource professionals. University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN.

Brown, S.K., K.R. Buja, S.H. Jury, M.E. Monaco, and A. Banner. 2000. Habitat suitability index models for eight fish and invertebrate species in Casco and Sheepscot Bays, Maine. American Journal of Fisheries Management 20:408–435.

Burchsted, D., C. Brehme, M.B. Green, J. Jacobs, and W. Wollheim. 2014. Natural dams and biogeochemistry at the river network scale: implications for water quality. University of New Hampshire, New Hampshire Water Resources Research Center, Annual Report 2014NH183B, Relay.

Call, M.W. 1970. Beaver pond ecology and Beaver-trout relationships in southeastern Wyoming. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, WY.

Collen, P., and R.J. Gibson. 2001. The general ecology of Beavers (*Castor* spp.), as related to their influence on stream ecosystems and riparian habitats, and the subsequent effects on fish-a review. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 10:439–461.

Cook, D.B. 1940. Beaver–trout relations. Journal of Mammalogy 21:397–401.

Cooper, C.M. and S. Testa, III. 2001. A quick method of determining rock surface area for quantification of the invertebrate community. Hydrobiologia 452:203–208.

Creaser, C.W. 1930. Relative importance of hydrogen-ion concentration, temperature, dissolved oxygen, and carbon-dioxide tension, on habitat selection by Brook Trout. Ecology 11:246–262.

Cunjak, R.A. 1996. Winter habitat of selected stream fishes and potential impacts from land-use activity. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53:267–282.

Dalgaard, P. 2008. Introductory statistics with R, 2nd Edition. Springer, New York.

Detenbeck, N.E., C.M. Elonen, D.L. Taylor, L.E. Anderson, T.M. Jicha, and S.L. Batterman. 2003. Effects of hydrogeomorphic region, catchment storage and mature forest on baseflow and snowmelt stream water quality in second-order Lake Superior Basin tributaries. Freshwater Biology 48:912–927.

Gartner, W.C., L.L. Love, D. Erkkila, and D.C. Fulton. 2002. Economic impact and social benefits study of coldwater angling in Minnesota. Final Report for Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, St. Paul.

Grasse, J.E., and E.F. Putnam. 1955. Beaver management and ecology in Wyoming. Wyoming Game and Fish Commission, Bulletin Number 6, Cheyenne.

Gurnell, A.M. 1998. The hydrogeomorphological effects of Beaver dam-building activity. Progress in Physical Geography 22:167–189.

Hafs, A.W., L.R. Harrison, R.M. Utz, and T. Dunne. 2014. Quantifying the role of woody debris in providing bioenergetically favorable habitat for juvenile salmon. Ecological Modelling 285:30–38.

Hartman, K.J., and J.A. Sweka. 2001. Development of a bioenergetics model for Appalachian Brook Trout. Proceedings of the Annual Conference Southeastern Association of Fish and Wildlife Agencies 55:38–51.

Herb, W. and H. Stefan. 2010. Projecting the impact of climate change on coldwater stream temperatures in Minnesota using equilibrium temperature models. Project Report No. 546, St. Anthony Falls Laboratory, University of Minnesota.

Johnson, L.B., D.H. Breneman, and C. Richards. 2003. Macroinvertebrate community structure and function associated with large wood in low-gradient streams. River Research and Application 19:199–218.

Johnson-Bice, S.M., K.M. Renik, S.K. Windels, and A.W. Hafs. 2018. A review of Beaver-salmonid relationships and history of management actions in the Western Great Lakes (USA) region. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 38:1203–1225.

Johnston, K., J. Ver Hoef, K. Krivoruchko, and L. Neil, 2001. Using Arcgis Geostatistical Analyst. Redlands, CA: ESRI Press.

Johnstone, C.P., A. Lill, and R.D. Reina. 2014. Habitat loss, fragmentation and degradation effects on small mammals: analysis with conditional inference tree statistical modeling. Biological Conservation 176:80–98.

Lahti, L., B. Hansen, J. Nieber, and J. Magner. 2013. Lake Superior streams sediment assessment: Phase I. Department of Bioproducts and Biosystems Engineering. University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN. Final Report for Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, St. Paul.

Lamberti, G.A., P.R. Leavitt, and A.D. Steinman. 2006. Biomass and pigments of benthic algae. Pages 357-379 *in* F. R. Hauer and G.A. Lamberti, editors. Methods in stream ecology, 2nd edition. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Leidholt-Bruner, K., D.E. Hibbs, and W.C. McComb. 1992. Beaver dam locations and their effects on distribution and abundance of Coho Salmon fry in two coastal Oregon streams. Northwest Science 66:218–223.

Levine, R., and G.A. Meyer. 2014. Beaver dams and channel sediment dynamics on Odell Creek, Centennial Valley, Montana, USA. Geomorphology 205:51–64.

McCaffery, M. 2009. The influence of an ecosystem engineer on nutrient subsidies and fish invasions in southwestern Montana. Doctoral dissertation. University of Montana, Missoula.

McDowell, D.M., and R.J. Naiman. 1986. Structure and function of a benthic invertebrate stream community as influenced by Beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Oecologia 68:481–489.

McMahon, T.E. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: Coho Salmon. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service FWS/OBS-82/10.49.

McRae, G., and C.J. Edwards. 1994. Thermal characteristics of Wisconsin headwater streams occupied by Beaver: implications for Brook Trout habitat. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:641–656.

MnGeo Composite Image Service. 2017. Composite_Imagery (web map service). Minnesota Geospatial Commons. Available online: http://www.mngeo.state.mn.us/chouse/wms/composite_image.html# [accessed 15 September 2017].

MNDNR. 2016. Lake Superior Fisheries Management Plan Addendum #1: Beaver management on trout streams. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.

MNDNR. 2017. Trout angling Opportunities in NE Minnesota. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.

MPCA. 2014. Lake Superior-South watershed monitoring and assessment report. Minnesota Pollution Control Agency.

MPCA. 2017. Lake Superior-North watershed monitoring and assessment report. Minnesota Pollution Control Agency.

Naiman, R.J., C.A. Johnston, and J.C. Kelley. 1988. Alteration of North American streams by Beaver. BioScience 38:753–762.

Parker, M. 1986. Beaver, water quality and riparian systems. Wyoming Water Resources Center, Laramie.

Patterson, D. 1951. Beaver-trout relationships. Wisconsin Conservation Department. Investigative Report No. 822. Page 34.

Quinn, G.P., and M.J. Keough. 2002. Experimental Design and Data Analysis for Biologists. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

R Development Core Team. 2008. A Language and Environment for Statistical Computing. R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria. URL http://www.R-project.org/.

Raleigh, R.F. 1982. Habitat suitability index models: Brook Trout. U.S Fish and Wildlife Service FWS/OBS-82/10.24.

Rosell, F., and H. Parker. 1996. The Beaver's (Castor spp.) role in forest ecology: a key species returns. Fauna 49:192–211.

Schreiner, D.R., K.I. Cullis, M.C. Donofrio, G.J. Fischer, L. Hewitt, K.G. Mumford, D.M. Pratt, H.R. Quinlan, and S.J. Scott. 2008. Management perspectives on coaster Brook Trout rehabilitation in the Lake Superior Basin. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1350–1364.

Shetter, D.S., and M.J. Whalls. 1955. Effect of impoundment on water temperatures of Fuller Creek, Montmorency County, Michigan. Journal of Wildlife Management 19:47–54.

Smith, L.L, and J.B. Moyle. 1944. A biological survey and fishery management plan for the streams of the Lake Superior north shore watershed, volume 1.

Snodgrass, J.W., and G.K. Meffe. 1998. Influence of Beavers on stream fish assemblages: effects of pond age and watershed position. Ecology 79:928–942.

Songster-Alpin, M.S., and R.L. Klotz. 1995. A comparison of electron transport system activity in stream and Beaver pond sediments. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1318–1326.

Sprules, W.M. 1941. The effect of a Beaver dam on the insect fauna of a trout stream. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 70:236–248.

O'Sullivan, D., and D.J. Unwin. 2010. Geographic Information Analysis, 2nd edition. John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken, New Jersey.

Surber, T. 1923. A biological reconnaissance of streams tributary to Lake Superior. Baptism to Devils Track River. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, St. Paul.

Suttle, K.B., M.E. Power, J.M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Tarzwell, C.M. 1931. Trout stream improvement in Michigan. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 61:48–57.

U.S. Geological Survey. 2016. StreamStats v4.1.8. Available online: http://streamstats.usgs.gov [accessed 20 September 2017].

Virbickas, T., S. Stakenas, and A. Steponenas. 2015. Impact of Beaver dams on abundance and distribution of anadromous salmonids in two lowland streams in Lithuania. PLoS ONE [online serial] 10:e0123107.

Zuur, A.F., E.N. Ieno, and G.M. Smith. 2007. Analysing Ecological Data. Springer Verlag, New York.

FIGURES

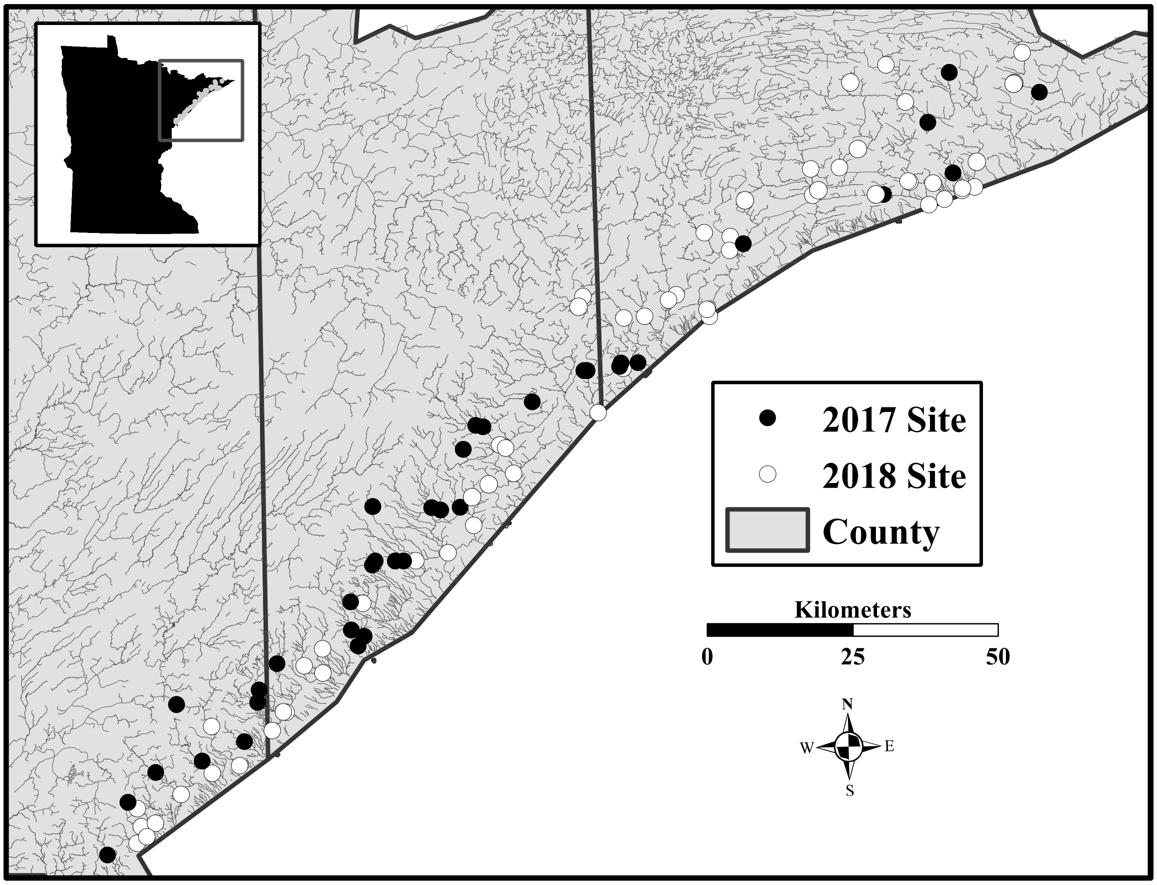


Figure 2.1. Summer 2017 and 2018 stream and Beaver pond sampling sites along the North Shore, Lake Superior in Minnesota.

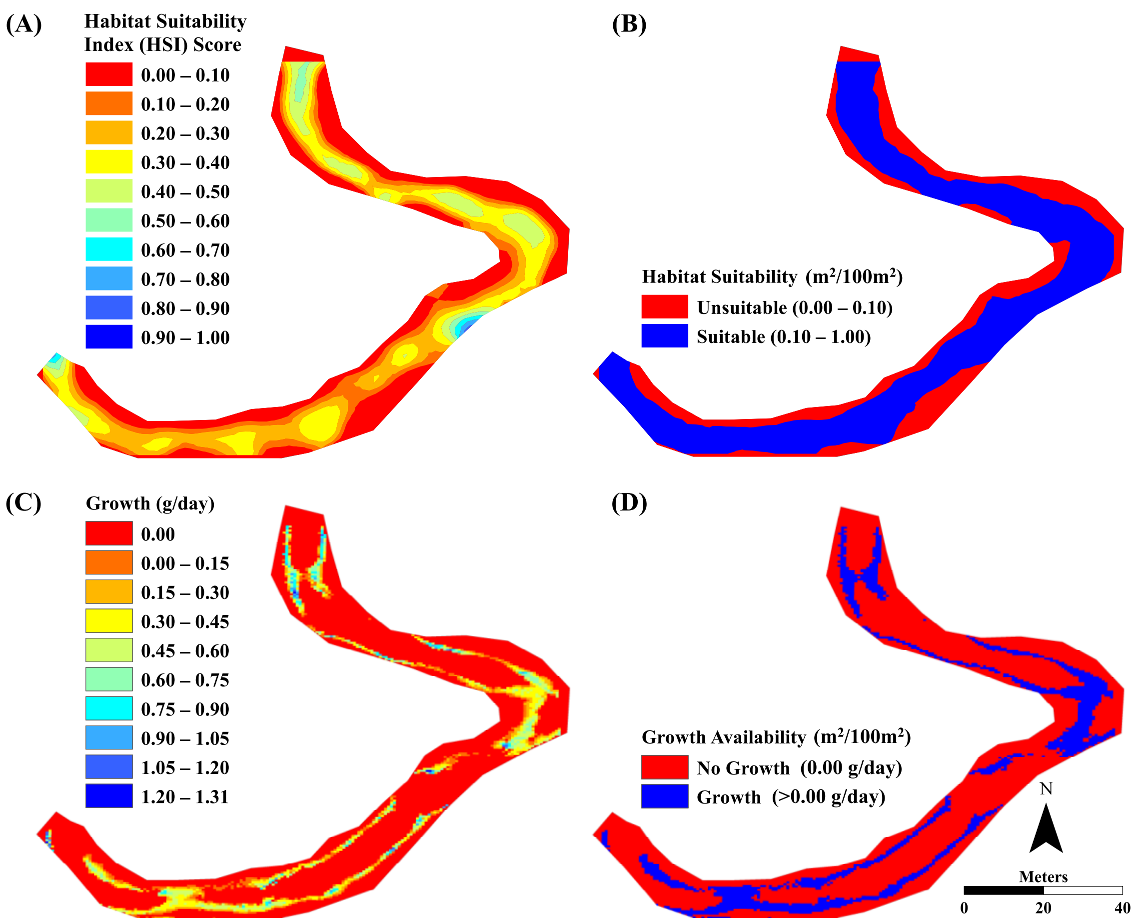
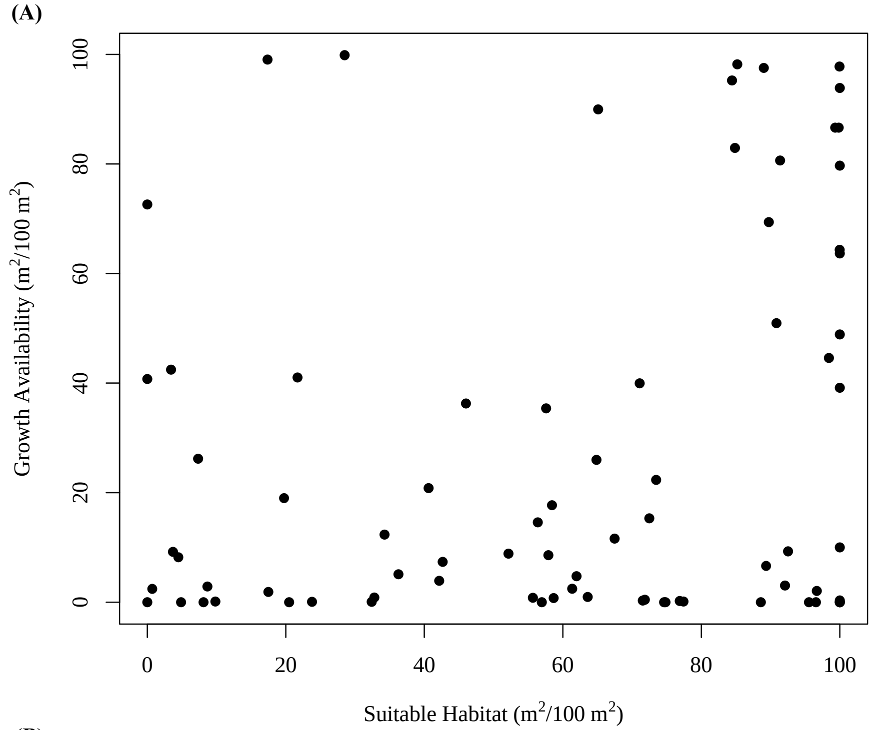


Figure 2.2. Maps represent the following calculated for Brook Trout in the Knife River: A) the average HSI (habitat suitability index), B) habitat suitability (m^2/100 m^2), C) growth rates (g/day), and D) growth availability (m^2/100 m^2).

(A)



(B)

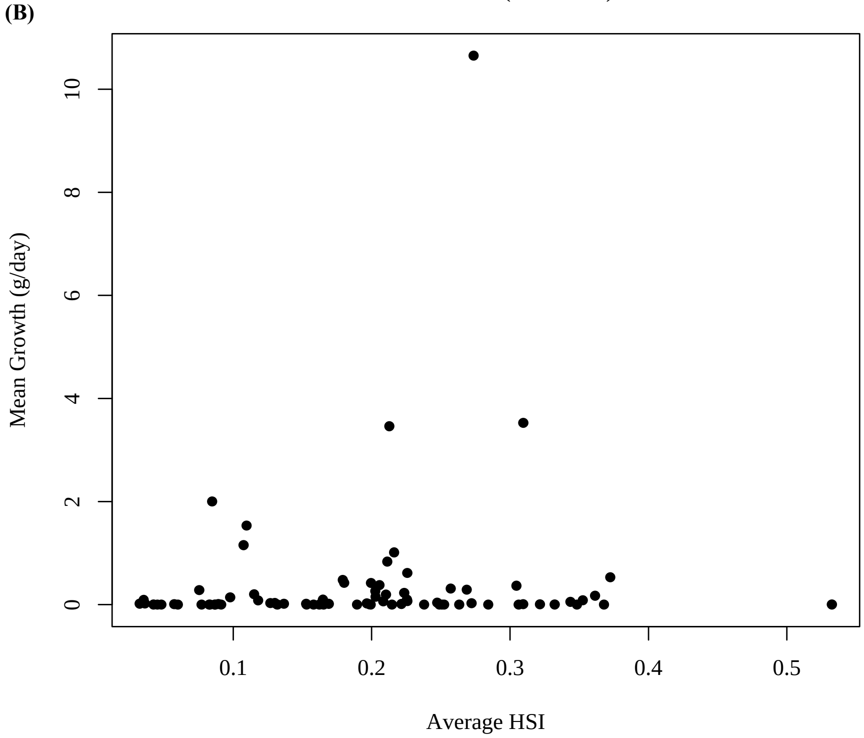
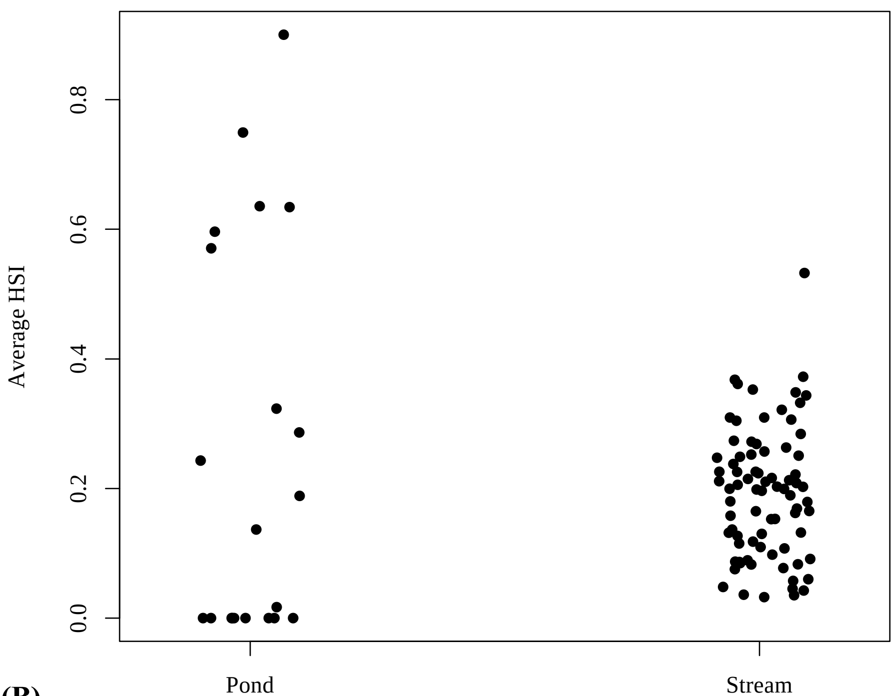


Figure 2.3. Comparison of models used for stream sites between A) suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) and Brook Trout growth availability (m^2/100 m^2) and (B) average HSI (habitat suitability index) and mean Brook Trout growth (g/day). There is no evidence to suggest a statistical difference in means between model comparisons (*rho*=0.15; *rho*=0.12, respectively).

(A)



(B)

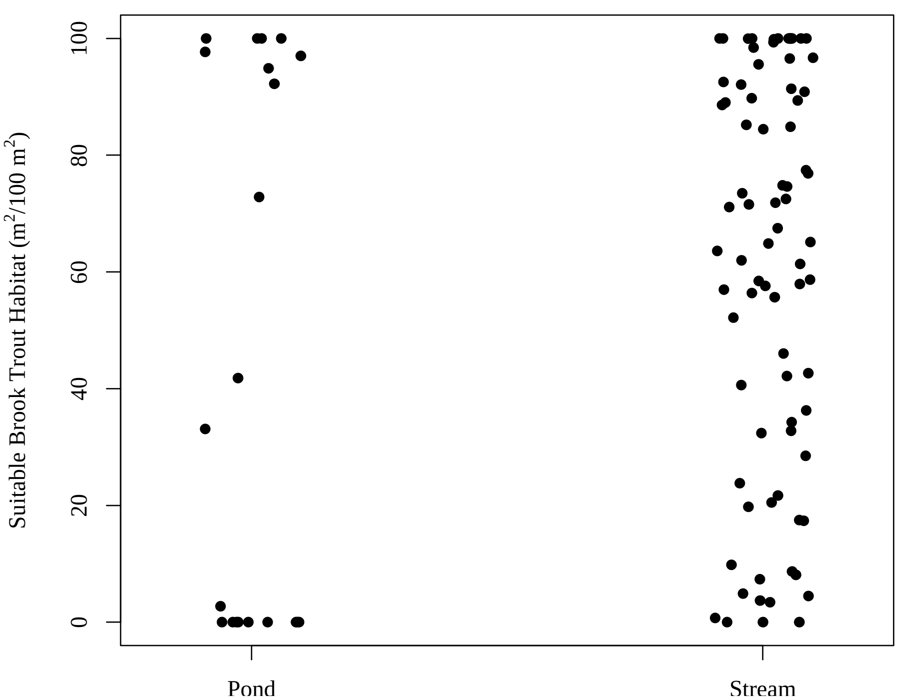


Figure 2.4. Comparison between pond and stream sampling sites of A) average HSI (habitat suitable index) scores and B) suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) calculated using the HSI model. There is no evidence to suggest a statistical difference in means between pond and stream sites (*P*=0.40; *P*=0.14, respectively).

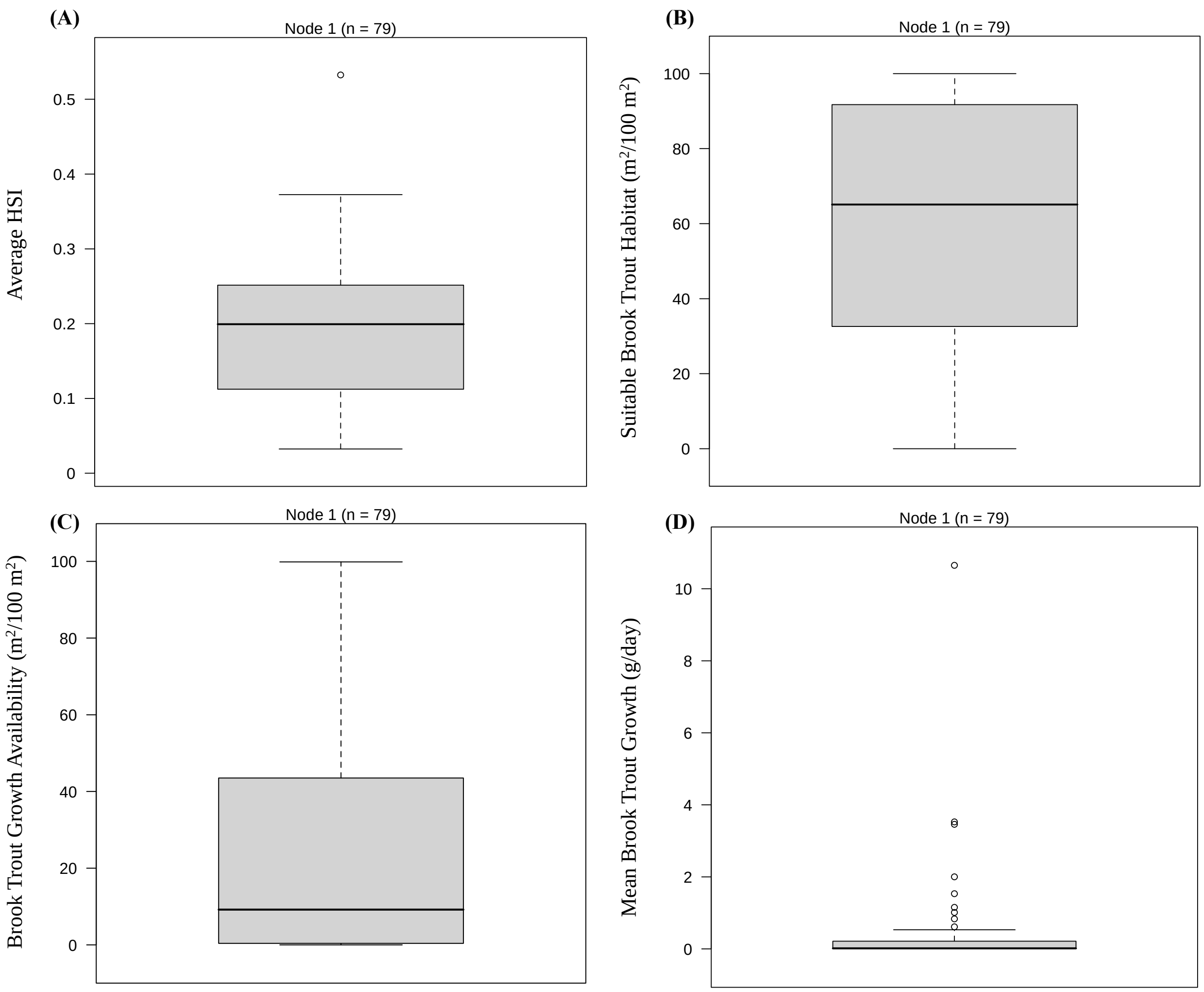


Figure 2.5. No significant variables were identified as influencing A) the quality or B) quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the habitat suitability index (HSI) model. The regression tree identified no significant variables influencing C) stream area available for Brook Trout growth or D) mean Brook Trout growth in each site calculated using a bioenergetics model.

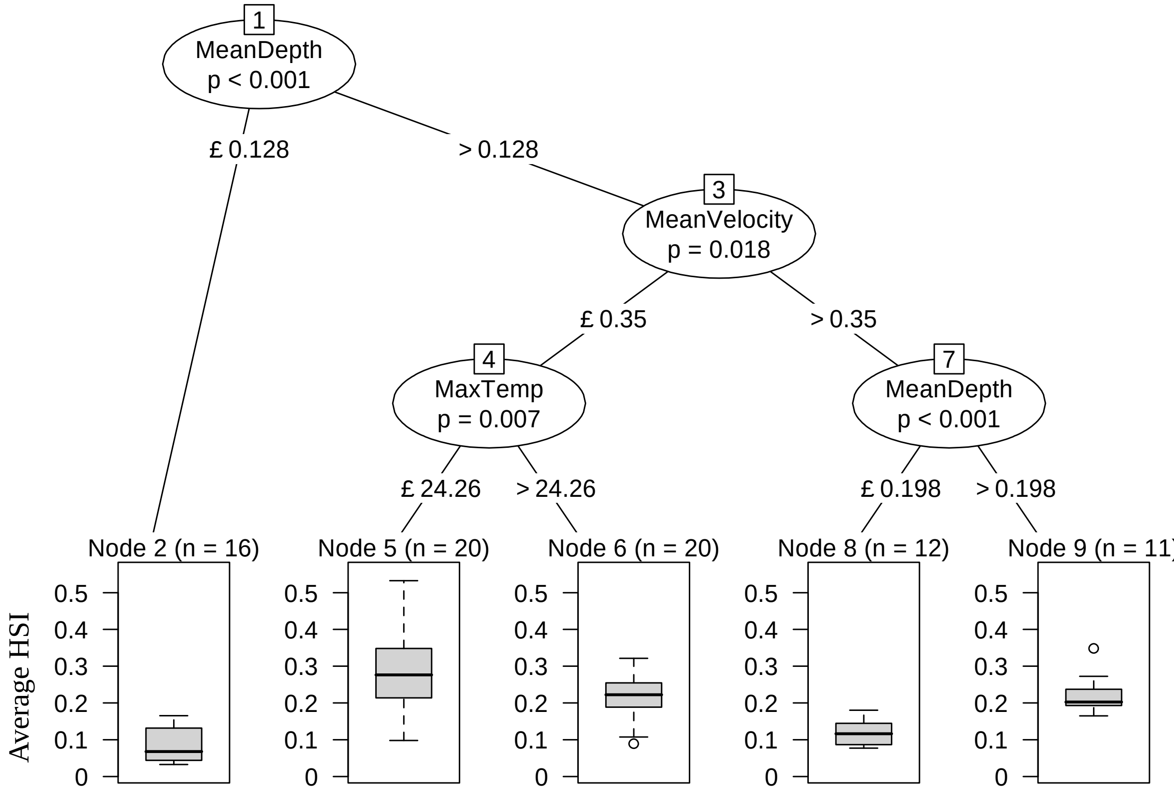


Figure 2.6. Significant variables affecting the quality of Brook Trout habitat, calculated from the habitat suitability index (HSI) model, included mean depth (m), mean velocity (m/sec), and maximum temperature (°C). Lower quality habitat occurred in streams with mean depth ≤ 0.128 m (*P*<0.001). Higher quality habitat occurred in streams with mean depth > 0.128 m, mean velocity ≤ 0.35 m/sec, and maximum temperature ≤ 24.26 °C (*P*<0.001; *P*=0.018; *P*=0.007, respectively). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers.

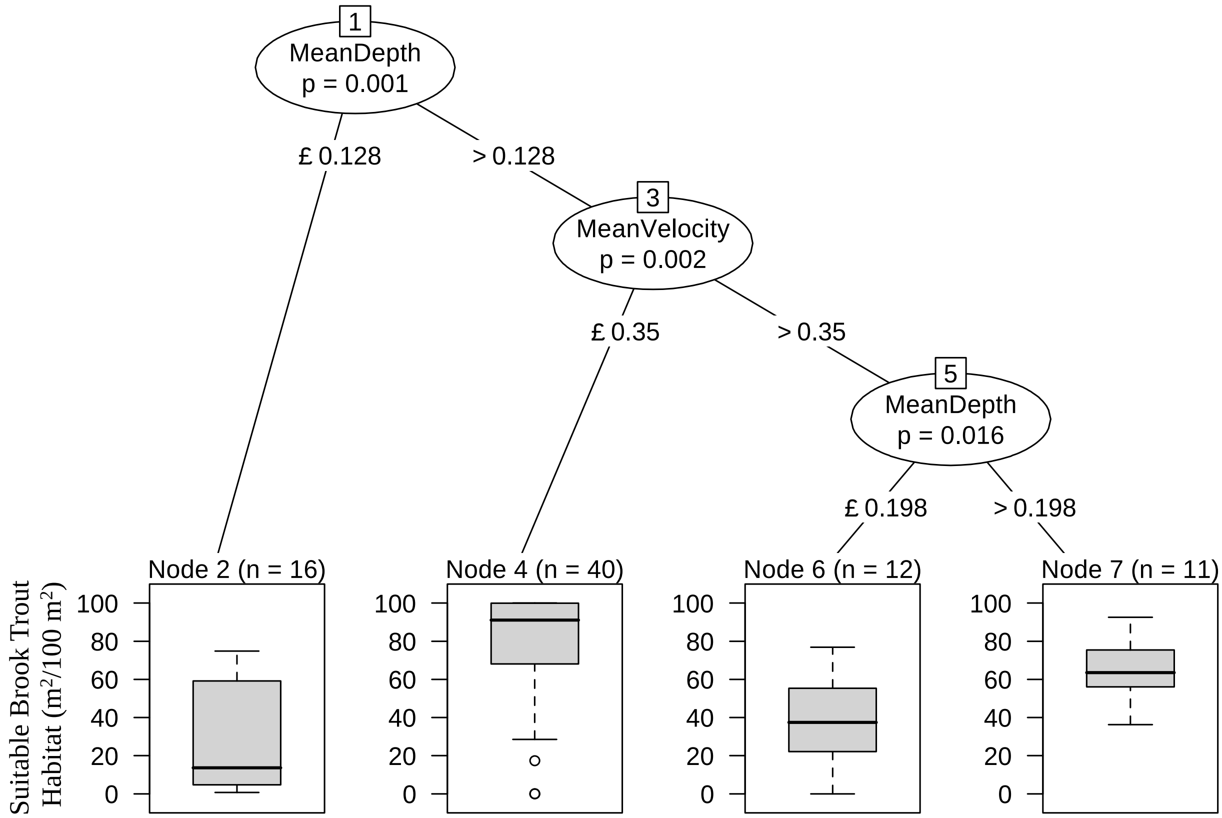


Figure 2.7. Regression tree analysis identified mean depth (m) and mean velocity (m/sec) as significant variables affecting Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the habitat suitability index (HSI) model. A lower quantity of habitat (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean depth ≤ 0.128 m (*P*=0.001). A greater quantity of habitat (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean depth > 0.128 m and mean velocity ≤ 0.35 m/sec (*P*=0.001; *P*=0.002, respectively). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers.

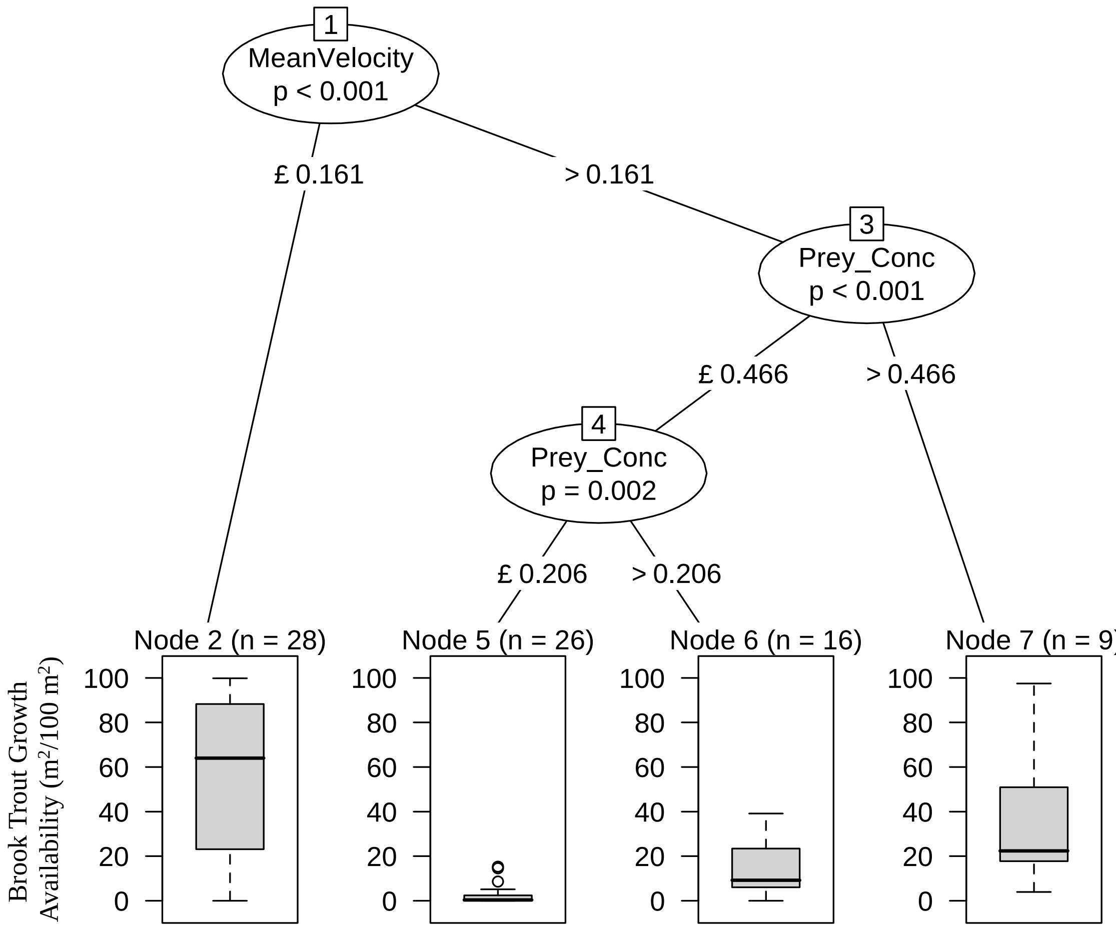


Figure 2.8. Regression tree analysis identified mean velocity (m/sec) and mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3) as a significant variables affecting Brook Trout growth availability (m^2/100 m^2) in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the bioenergetics model (Prey_Conc=Mean Prey Concentration). A greater quantity of growth (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean velocity ≤ 0.161 m (P<0.001) and the least amount of growth (m^2/100 m^2) occurred in streams with mean velocity > 0.161 m/sec and mean prey concentrations ≤ 0.206 mg dry mass/m^3 (P<0.001; P=0.002, respectively). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers.

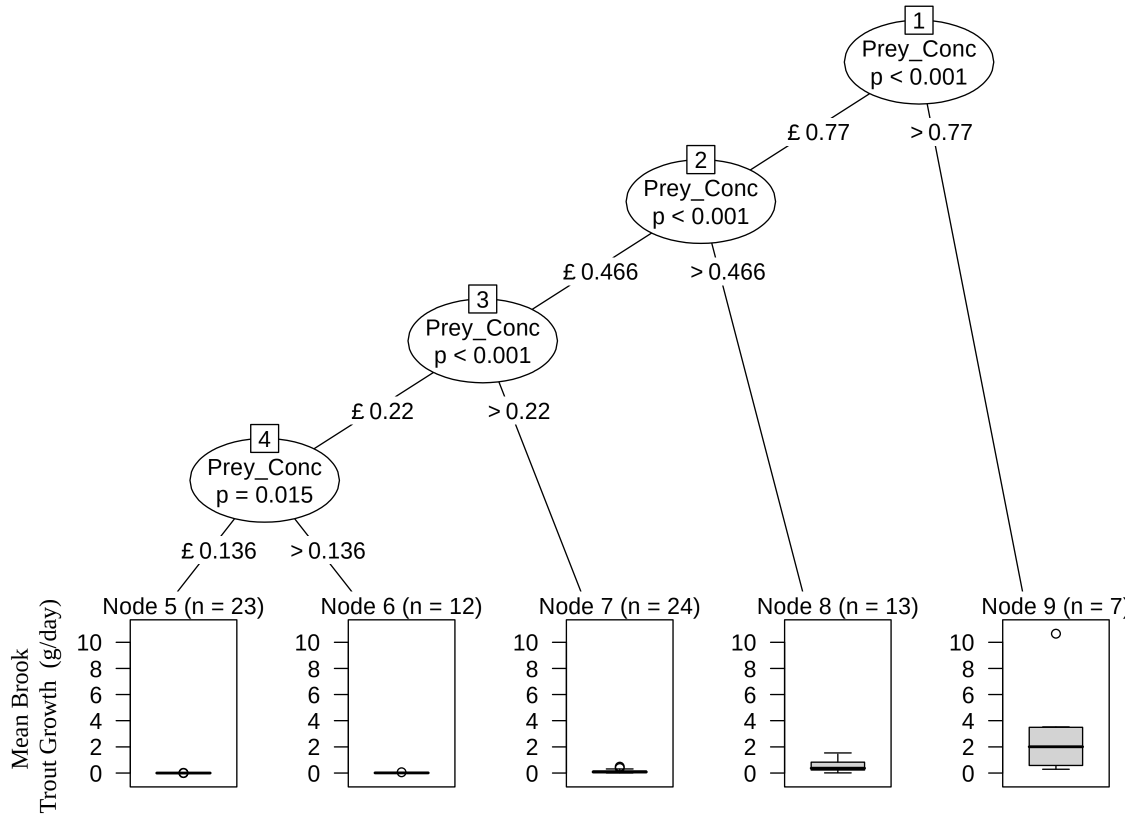


Figure 2.9. Regression tree analysis identified mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3) as a significant variables affecting mean Brook Trout growth (g/day) in North Shore, Lake Superior streams calculated using the bioenergetics model (Prey_Conc=Mean Prey Concentration). Growth rates (g/day) were higher in streams with mean prey concentration > 0.77 mg dry mass/m^3 (P<0.001) and lower in streams with mean prey concentration ≤ 0.136 mg dry mass/m^3 (P=0.015). Interquartile ranges are represented by boxes and range is represented by whiskers.

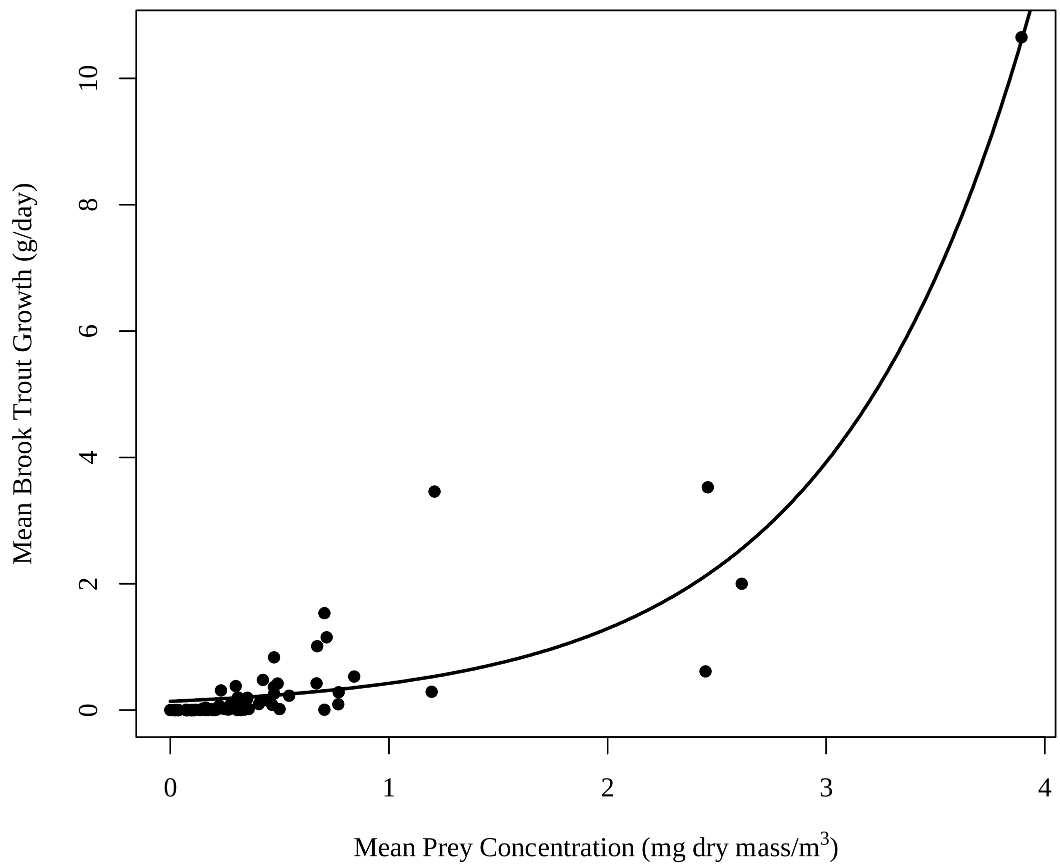


Figure 2.10. Mean Brook Trout growth (m^2/100 m^2) compared to mean prey concentration (mg dry mass/m^3) as calculated by the bioenergetics model in each stream site.

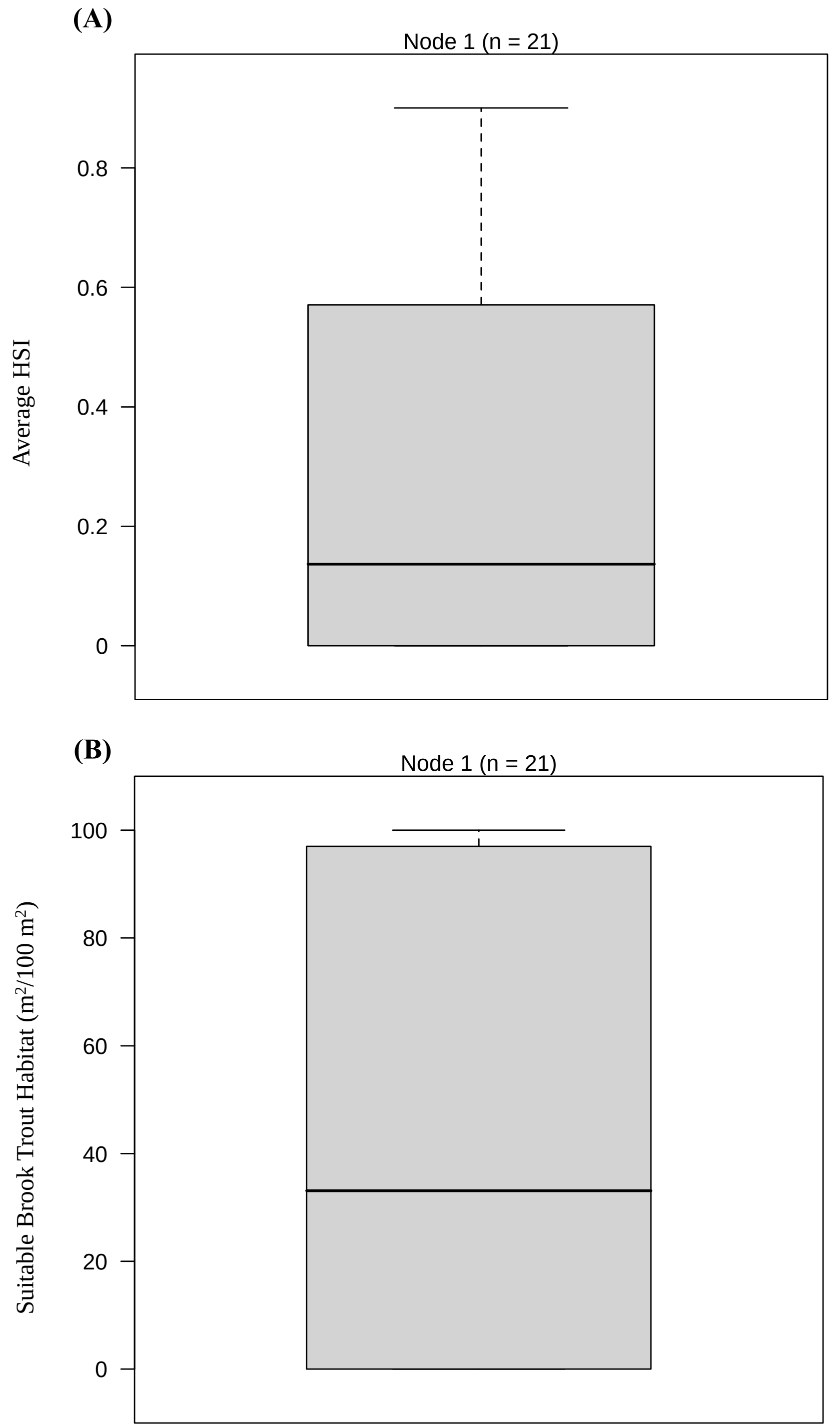


Figure 2.11. The regression tree identified no significant variables influencing A) the average HSI (habitat suitability index) score or B) the quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) of Beaver pond sites in North Shore tributaries calculated using the HSI model.

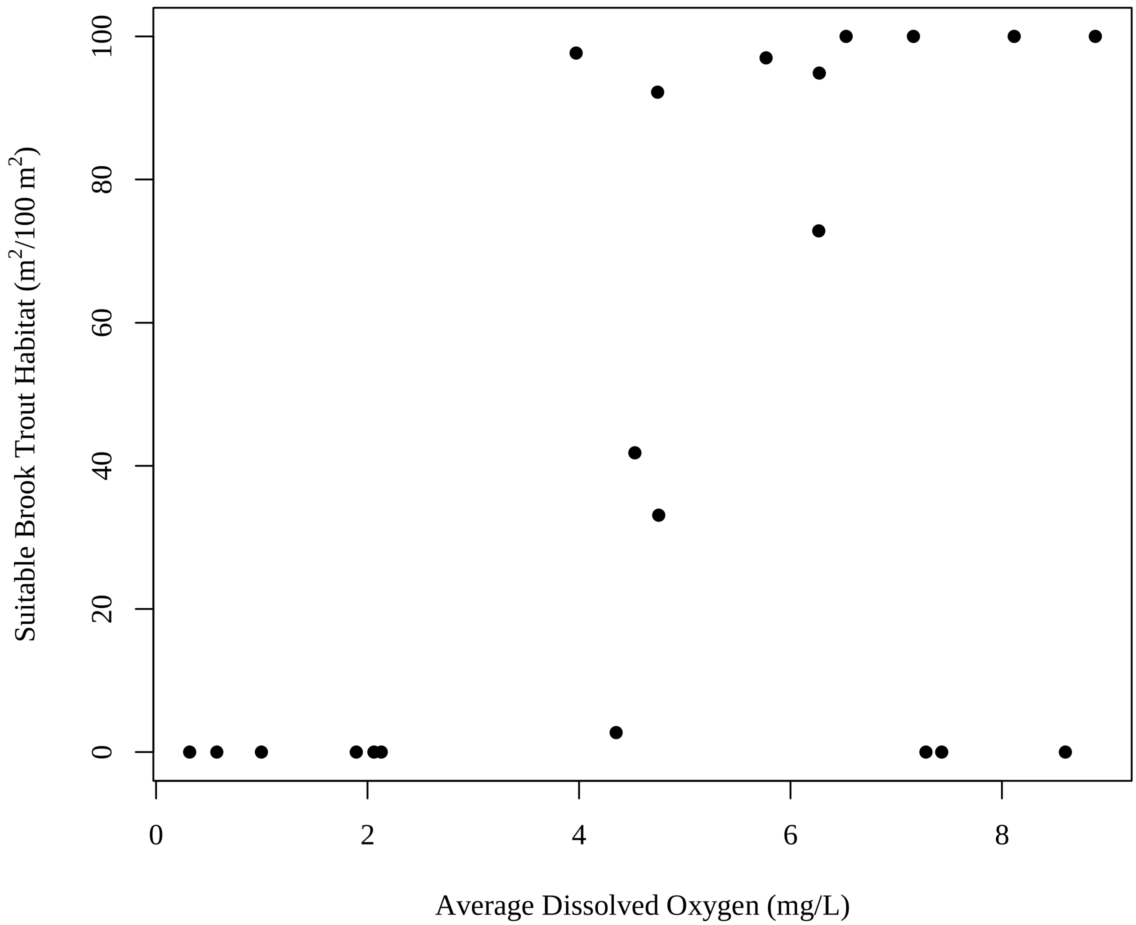


Figure 2.12. The quantity of suitable Brook Trout habitat (m^2/100 m^2) in Beaver ponds as calculated by the habitat suitability index (HSI) model compared to the average dissolved oxygen (mg/L) in each site.

APPENDIX A

Appendix A.1. Summer 2017 and 2018 sampling sites along the North Shore, Lake Superior.

Site Name	Site Type	Summer Sampled	GPS Coordinates: Easting	GPS Coordinates: Northing
Miller C 1	Stream	2017	564219.1	5182737
Amity C 1	Stream	2018	572440.1	5188220
Amity C 2	Stream	2018	569332.8	5190703
Amity C 3	Pond	2017	567722.9	5191786
Chester C 1	Stream	2018	569284.7	5184749
Tischer C 1	Stream	2018	570938.6	5185878
Tischer C 2	Stream	2018	569998.9	5187586
Lester R 1	Stream	2018	576849.6	5193170
Lester R 2	Stream	2017	572476.1	5196899
Ross C 1	Pond	2017	576040.9	5208528
French R 1	Stream	2018	580428.9	5198880
French R 2	Stream	2017	582162.2	5196795
Sucker R 1	Stream	2018	586907.1	5198085
Sucker R 2	Stream	2018	582033	5204787
Little Knife R 2	Stream	2017	587705.2	5202195
W Br Knife R 1	Stream	2018	594365.9	5207300
W Br Knife R 2	Stream	2017	589997.3	5208891
Little W Br Knife R 1	Stream	2017	590182.1	5211077
Knife R 1	Stream	2018	592497.1	5204092
Knife R 2	Stream	2018	594853.5	5207237
Knife R 4	Stream	2017	593333.1	5215556
Stewart R 1	Stream	2018	601173.5	5213938
Stewart R 2	Stream	2018	597915.7	5215210
Silver C 1	Stream	2018	601128	5218112
Gooseberry R 1	Stream	2018	608020.2	5225917
Gooseberry R 2	Stream	2017	605935.4	5226191
Encampment R 1	Stream	2017	607237.3	5218636
Encampment R 2	Stream	2017	606065.2	5221371
Crow C 1	Stream	2017	608217.1	5220255
Stony C 1	Stream	2017	609654.1	5232474
Skunk C 1	Stream	2017	610167	5233168
Budd C 1	Stream	2017	613606.7	5233168
Split Rock R 1	Stream	2017	615024.8	5233198
E Br Split Rock R 1	Stream	2018	617084.7	5233241
E Br Split Rock R 2	Pond	2017	609733	5242506
Big 39 C 1	Stream	2017	619828.6	5242317

Little 39 C 1	Stream	2017	621362.6	5241955
Beaver R 1	Stream	2018	622664	5234638
E. Br. Beaver R 1	Stream	2018	627050	5239337
E. Br. Beaver R 2	Stream	2017	624712.1	5242424
Heffelfinger C 1	Stream	2017	625255.4	5252339
Heffelfinger C 2	Pond	2017	625255.4	5252339
Mile 43 Post C 1	Pond	2018	626821.8	5244130
Crown C 1	Stream	2017	627373.6	5256455
W Br Baptism R 1	Stream	2017	628663.1	5256193
Nicado C 1	Pond	2018	629644.5	5246324
Hockamin C 1	Stream	2018	631517	5253106
Baptism R 1	Stream	2018	633894.1	5248256
E Br Baptism R 1	Stream	2018	632486.5	5252580
E Br Baptism R 2	Stream	2017	637097.2	5260484
Houghtailing C 1	Pond	2018	645097.8	5276787
Wanless C 1	Stream	2018	645795.5	5278563
Martin C 1	Stream	2017	645931.8	5265866
Caribou R 1	Stream	2018	648374.3	5258639
Caribou R 2	Stream	2017	646524.5	5265831
Caribou R 3	Pond	2017	646524.5	5265831
Caribou R 4	Pond	2017	646524.5	5265831
Two Island R 1	Stream	2017	652098.3	5266545
Two Island R 2	Stream	2017	652327.1	5267167
Dyers C 1	Stream	2018	652680.8	5266282
Cross R 1	Stream	2018	652827	5274902
Fredenberg C 1	Stream	2017	655260.4	5267203
Heartbreak C 1	Stream	2018	656384.4	5275204
Blind Temperance R 1	Stream	2018	660473.5	5278008
Sixmile C	Stream	2018	661787.7	5278855
Poplar R 1	Stream	2018	670934.8	5286509
Poplar R 2	Stream	2018	666619.8	5289534
Onion R 1	Stream	2018	667508.5	5275204
Onion R 2	Stream	2018	667059	5276372
Tait R 1	Stream	2018	671059.5	5288877
Mistletoe C 1	Stream	2017	673331.4	5287650
Mistletoe C 2	Pond	2018	673607.7	5295040
Cascade R 1	Stream	2018	685230	5295934
Cascade R 2	Stream	2018	684845.4	5300481
Nestor C 1	Pond	2017	686166	5296790
Nestor C 2	Pond	2018	686225.7	5296763
Junco C 1	Stream	2018	689815.9	5300690
Junco C 2	Pond	2018	693010.3	5303851
Fiddle C 1	Pond	2018	691712.4	5315265
Little Devil Track R 1	Pond	2018	696111.8	5296056

Monker C 1	Stream	2017	697388.3	5296097
N Brule R 1	Stream	2018	701145.4	5311942
N Brule R 2	Stream	2018	697793.7	5318338
Elbow C 1	Stream	2018	701618.4	5298406
Devil Track 1	Stream	2018	705186.1	5294378
Devil Track 2	Stream	2018	701875.3	5298196
Timber C 1	Pond	2017	704964	5308440
Durfee C 1	Stream	2018	707848.5	5295279
Durfee C 2	Stream	2018	705863.8	5298041
Little Stony C 1	Pond	2017	708681.8	5317038
Kimball C 1	Stream	2018	710889.5	5296801
Kimball C 2	Stream	2018	710907.8	5297123
Kimball C 3	Stream	2017	709304.7	5299763
Kadunce R 1	Stream	2018	713040.1	5297353
Kadunce R 2	Pond	2017	713424.9	5301636
Kadunce R 3	Pond	2018	713432.3	5301659
Irish C 1	Stream	2017	724167.8	5313637
Irish C 2	Pond	2018	719855.2	5315183
Irish C 3	Pond	2018	719743.5	5315029
Portage Brook 1	Stream	2018	721144.2	5320403

APPENDIX B

Appendix B.1. Bioenergetics Model Script

A drift feeding bioenergetics model was parameterized for Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* allowing for growth to be estimated at every 0.5 x 0.5 m cell throughout the stream reach sampled. Variables manually inputted into the model script included prey lengths (mm), wet weight (g), depth (cm), velocity (m/sec), temperature (°C), number of cells spanning width of section sampled, individual drift net data, and subsampling multiplier. The average Brook Trout wet weight (g) was calculated from regional MNDNR data and the average maximum daily temperature (°C) was determined for each site from deployed temperature loggers. Depth (cm) and velocity (m/sec) for each 0.5 x 0.5 m raster cell within a stream reach were calculated in GIS by using Ordinary Kriging to interpolate field values and provide values for each raster cell. The number of cells spanning a stream reach was also calculated in GIS. Drift net data collected in the field included drift net width (m), water depth (m) and velocity (m/sec) directly in front of drift net, and time (hours) that drift net was deployed. This project used a drift feeding bioenergetics model originally developed by Rosenfeld and Taylor (2009) and revised by Hafs et al. (2014). Model script in R (R Development Core Team 2008) was derived from Hafs et al. (2014) and modified to represent Brook Trout.

Stream dwelling Brook Trout feed primarily on drifting macroinvertebrates (Allen 1981), with diet composed of many different taxonomic and functional groups, often those that are the most abundant and/or accessible (Tiberti et al. 2016). Needham (1938) observed that Trichoptera, Diptera, and Ephemeroptera constituted over two-thirds of the diet of Brook Trout studied, which resembled our drift net sample compositions. In addition, the invertebrate families also used in the model and commonly found in Brook trout diet included Coleoptera, Collembola, Amphipoda, Plecoptera, Hemiptera (Needham 1938), as well as the subclass Acari (Allan 1981). The energy density for each drift net sample was a weighted average calculated from values for each invertebrate taxon as suggested by Cummins and Wuycheck (1979). Prey concentrations (mg dry mass /m^3) were calculated from the following equation:

$$\text{sum} \frac{(\text{Dry mass } a \cdot \text{Prey length} \wedge \text{Dry mass } b)}{(t \cdot W \cdot D \cdot V \cdot 3600) \cdot S)}$$

where dry mass *a* and dry mass *b* are coefficients found in Benke et al. (1999), prey length was a weighted average of invertebrate lengths (mm) determined for each family, t is time (hours), W is drift net width (m), D is water depth (m), V is velocity (m/sec), 3600 represents seconds, and S represents the drift net invertebrate subsample multiplier.

Brook Trout total length and fork length were calculated from the following equations:

$$TL = 5.1706 \cdot WW^{0.3089}$$

$$FL = 0.9609 \cdot TL - 0.06605$$

where WW is Brook Trout wet weight (g) obtained from MNDNR and parameters used for the total length equation determined from MNDNR data and fork length parameters from Hafs (2011).

The following parameters and equations were used in the bioenergetics model script:

Parameter	**Value**	**Description**	**Citation**
CK1	0.5	Consumption fraction at water temperature CQ	Hartman and Sweka (2001)
CK4	0.203	Consumption fraction at water temperature CTL	Hartman and Sweka (2001)
CT0	20.9	Temperature at which consumption is 98% of the maximum on the increasing portion of the temperature dependence curve	Hartman and Sweka (2001)
CQ	7.274	Temperature at which consumption is the lower fraction of the maximum (CK1)	Hartman and Sweka (2001)
CTL	24.05	Temperature at which consumption is the upper fraction of the maximum (CK4)	Hartman and Sweka (2001)
CTM	21	Temperature at which consumption is 98% of the maximum on the decreasing portion of the temperature dependence curve	Hartman and Sweka (2001)
FA	0.212	Intercept of the temperature/ration dependence function for egestion	Elliott (1976)
FB	-0.222	Exponent of the temperature dependence function for egestion	Elliott (1976)
FG	0.631	Coefficient for the feeding level dependence of egestion	Elliott (1976)
UA	0.0314	Intercept of the temperature/ration dependence function for excretion	Stewart et al. (1983)
UB	0.58	Exponent of the temperature dependence function for excretion	Elliott (1976)
UG	-0.299	Coefficient for the feeding level dependence of excretion	Elliott (1976)
SDA	-0.172	Specific dynamic action	Beamish (1974)

Parameter	**Equation**	**Unit**	**Description**	**Citation**
RD	$12 \cdot \textit{Prey length} \cdot (1-e^{(-0.2 \cdot FL)})$	cm	Reactive distance	Hughes and Dill (1990)
MCD	$(RD^2-(V \cdot RD/V_{max})^2)^{0.5}$	cm	Maximum capture distance	Hughes and Dill (1990)
V_{max}	$V_{max} = 10^{(0.9053+0.6294 \cdot \log10(TL))}$	cm/s	Critical swimming speed	Brett and Glass (1973)
CS	$(e^{(u)})/(1+e^{(u)})$		Capture success	Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)
u	$1.28-0.0588 \cdot VD+0.383 \cdot FL-0.0918 \cdot (D/RD)-0.21 \cdot V \cdot (D/RD)$			Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)

CA	minimum (*Depth poly*, *Radius visual*), where *Depth poly* = MCD·2·D *Radius visual* = $(MCD^2 \cdot \pi)/2$		Water column area	Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)
GEI	CA·VD·CS·Prey Concentration·ED·3600·13(10^{-9})	J/d	Gross energy intake	Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)
SC	$24 \cdot 10^{(C+M+V)} \cdot 19 \cdot WW \cdot 10^{-3} \cdot TS$	J/d	Swimming costs	Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)
CS	2.07-(0.37·log10(FL))			Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)
M	0.041-(0.0196·log10(FL))			Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)
TS	$0.90+10^{(0.06 \cdot V-0.98)}$			Rosenfield and Taylor (2009)
L1	$e^{(G1 \cdot (T-CQ))}$			Hewett and Johnson (1992)
L2	$e^{(G2 \cdot (CTL-T))}$			Hewett and Johnson (1992)
KA	(CK1·L1)/(1+CK1·(L1-1))			Hewett and Johnson (1992)
KB	(CK4·L2)/(1+CK4·(L2-1))			Hewett and Johnson (1992)
G1	(1/(CTO-CQ))· log((0.98·(1-CK1))/(0.02·CK1))			Hewett and Johnson (1992)
G2	(1/(CTL-CTM))· log((0.98·(1-CK4))/(0.02·CK4))			Hewett and Johnson (1992)
MDC	$0.303 \cdot WW^{-0.275} \cdot KA \cdot KB \cdot WW \cdot ED$	J/d	Maximum daily consumption	Hewett and Johnson (1992)
F	$FA \cdot T^{FB} \cdot e^{(FG \cdot p)}$		Egestion	Hewett and Johnson (1992)
U	$UA \cdot T^{UB} \cdot e^{(UG \cdot p)}$,		Excretion	Hewett and Johnson (1992)
p	GEI/MDC			Hewett and Johnson (1992)
NEI	(GEI·(1-F)·(1-U-SDA))-SC	J/d		Jobling (1994)
PDM	$12.852 \cdot FL^{0.199}$		Percent dry mass	Hafs (2011)
ED_{fish}	(286.43·PDM-1803.5)	J/g of WW	Brook Trout energy density	Hafs and Hartman (2017)
G_{mass}	NEI/ ED_{fish}	g/d	Brook Trout growth	Hafs and Hartman (2017)

References

Allan, J.D., 1981. Determinants of diet of Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) in a mountain stream. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38:184–192.

Beamish, F.W.H. 1974. Apparent specific dynamic action of Largemouth Bass, Micropterus salmoides. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 31:1763–1769.

Benke, A.C., A.D. Huryn, L. Smock, and J.B. Wallace. 1999. Length-mass relationships for freshwater macroinvertebrates in North America with particular reference to the southeastern United States. Journal of the North American Benthological Society 18:308–343.

Brett, J.R. and N.R. Glass. 1973. Metabolic rates and critical swimming speeds of Sockeye Salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) in relation to size and temperature. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 30:379–387.

Cummins, K.C. and J.C. Wuycheck. 1971. Caloric equivalents for investigations in ecological energetics. Internationale Vereinigung fur Theoretische und Angewandte Limnologie Mitteilung No. 18.

Elliott, J.M. 1976. Energy losses in the waste products of Brown Trout (*Salmo trutta* L.). Journal of Animal Ecology 45:561–580.

Hafs, A.W. 2011. Bioelectrical impedance analysis methods for prediction of Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* percent dry weight. Dissertation. West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV.

Hafs, A.W., and K.J. Hartman. 2017. Seasonal changes in condition of Appalachian Brook Trout. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 37:196–206.

Hartman, K., and J. Sweka. 2001. Development of a bioenergetics model for Appalachian Brook Trout. Proceedings of the Annual Conference Southeastern Association of Fish and Wildlife Agencies 55:38–51.

Hewett, S.W. and B.L. Johnson. 1992. Fish bioenergetics model 2, an upgrade of a generalized bioenergetics model of fish growth for microcomputers. University of Wisconsin Sea Grant Institute, Madison, Wisconsin, USA.

Hughes, N.F. and L.M. Dill. 1990. Position choice by drift-feeding salmonids: model and test for Arctic Grayling (*Thymallus arcticus*) in subarctic mountain streams, interior Alaska. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47:2039–2048.

Jobling, M. 1994. Fish Bioenergetics. Chapman & Hall, London, UK.

Needham, P.R. 1938. Trout streams: conditions that determine their productivity and suggestions for stream and lake management. Comstock Publishing, Ithaca, New York.

Rosenfeld, J.S. and J. Taylor. 2009. Prey abundance, channel structure and the allometry of growth rate potential for juvenile trout. Fisheries Management and Ecology 16:202–218.

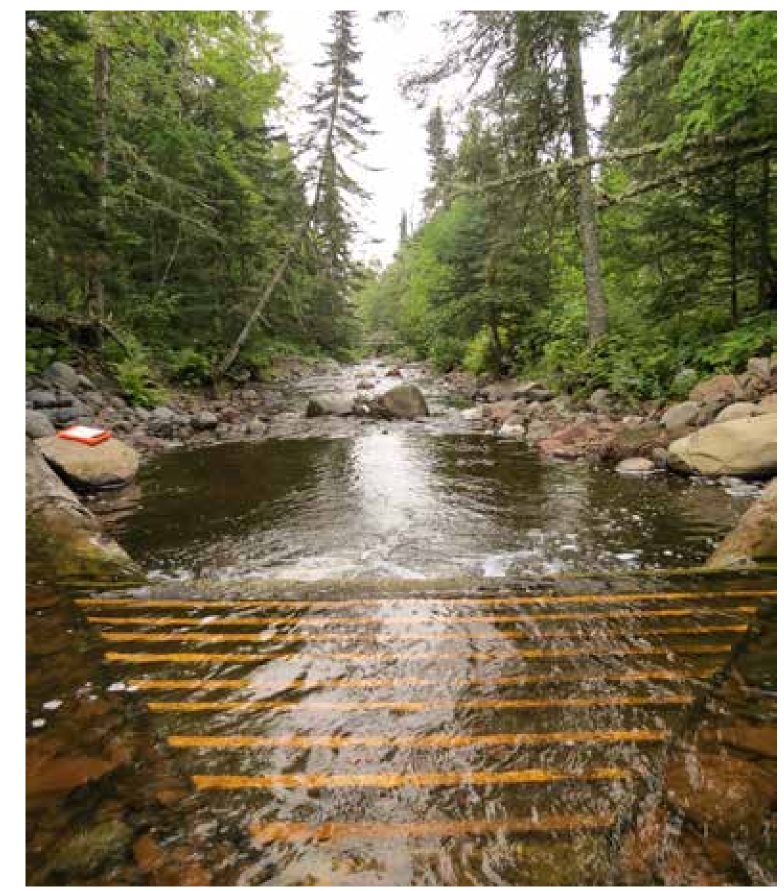
Stewart, D.J., D. Weininger, D.V. Rottiers, and T.A. Edsall. 1983. An energetics model for Lake Trout, Salvelinus namaycush: application to the Lake Michigan population. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 40:681–698.

Tiberti, R., S. Brighenti, C. Canedoli, R. Iacobuzio, and M. Rolla. 2016. The diet of introduced Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*; Mitchill, 1814) in an alpine area and a literature review on its feeding ecology. Journal of Limnology 75:488–507.

Casting Light

onto a century old controversy

The relationship between beaver and trout has been a topic of debate for as long as anyone can remember. By Kathryn Renik

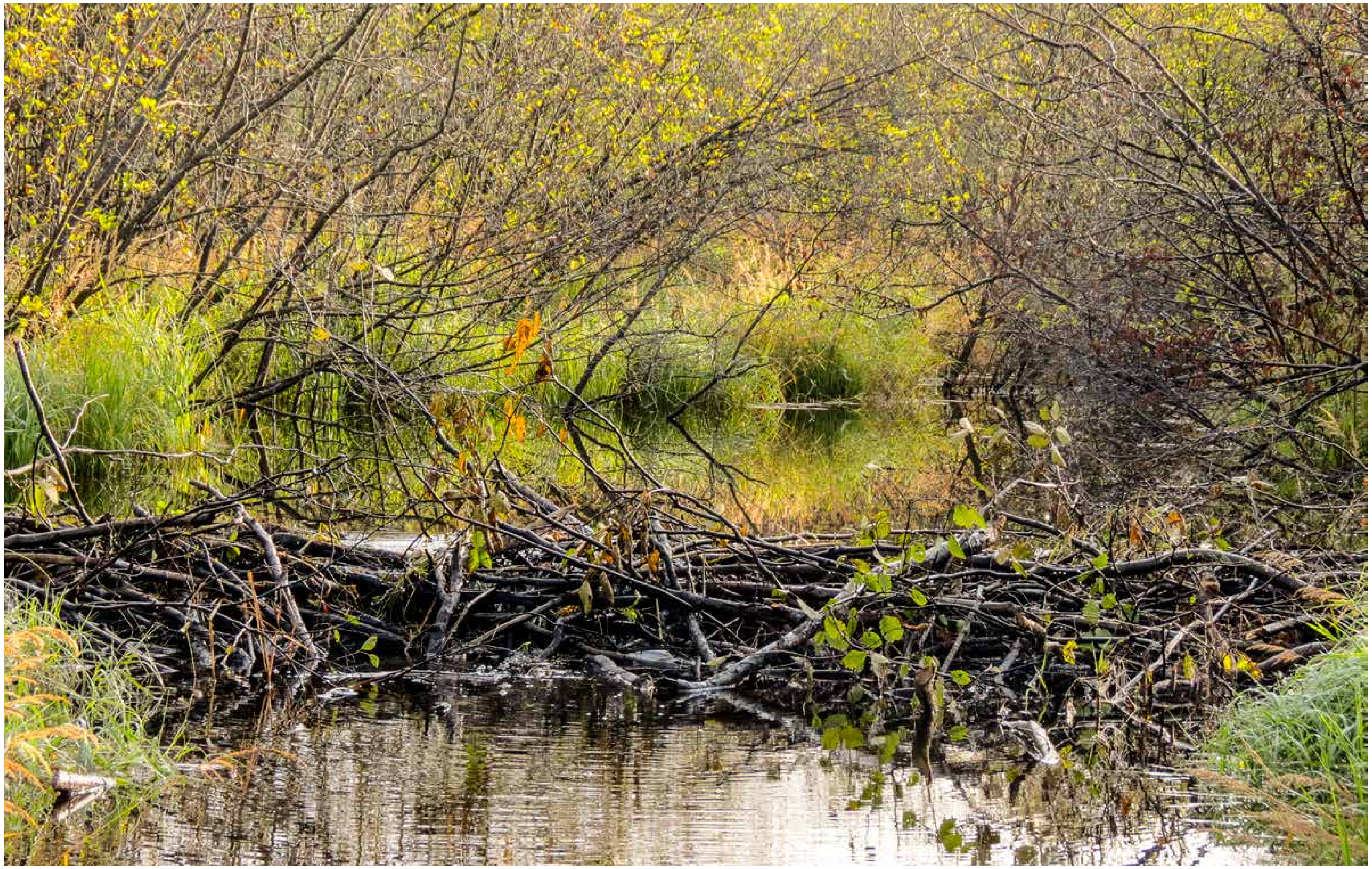


Since the early 1900s, people have quarreled over the beaver and trout relationship. Some fishermen are convinced that beaver are the ultimate villain, ruining pristine fishing spots, while others vow that beaver ponds accommodate some of the best fishing, yielding many prized catches. Brook trout inhabit small headwater streams characterized by cooler water temperatures and riffle-run areas with rocky substrate. Beavers dam up a stream to create a pond, a refuge, in which they can construct their lodge and be protected from predators. But what happens when their habitats collide? What happens when the ecological engineer, aka the beaver, begins construction of it's home and subconsciously changes a portion of the stream from lotic to lentic? Beaver tend to be harmful to trout in warmer, low altitude streams, with water sources consisting of lakes and precipitation that can result in lethally warmer temperatures. Streams in eastern regions of the United States tend to exhibit these characteristics. Beaver dams are beneficial to trout in cold, mountainous or semi-arid areas, such as streams in the west, where the warming of temperatures expands habitat once too cold and produces a buffer against drought. In the late 1940's in Idaho, managers actually parachuted beavers from planes in hopes of improving trout habitat through beaver colonization. If beaver tend to be harmful out east but beneficial in western streams, what is the impact of beaver on brook trout habitat specifically on the North Shore of Lake Superior? That's my cue to enter, and as a graduate student at Bemidji State University, I have been given this fascinating opportunity to investigate the effect of beaver activity on brook trout habitat in Northeastern Minnesota.

During the summers of 2017 and 2018, I traveled and camped along the North Shore of Lake Superior with my technicians, Kylie and Adrianna. Over 100 days I lived in the University's fish house, cooking over the campfire each night (becoming quite good at making a pizza in the dutch oven) and spending my evenings on the banks of the Baptism River. But my favorite days were those when my husband, Joe, and golden retriever, Leinie, would come to visit me. To begin casting light on the beaver and brook trout relationship in the region, data was collected in a 200-meter reach of brook trout streams during July and August, the hottest months with the lowest flow. Sampling occurred in 82 stream sites and 21 beaver ponds during 2017 and 2018. Brook trout habitat variables measured at data points along transects throughout each stream site included stream velocity, depth, temperature, and substrate. These measurements were later applied to a habitat suitability index (HSI) model that scored the data (0.0 unsuitable habitat, 1.0 good habitat) and allowed me to quantify the amount of suitable brook trout habitat in each site sampled. Drift nets were deployed to capture aquatic invertebrates that will

later be applied to a bioenergetics model, allowing for the determination of brook trout growth availability in each site. In addition to sampling brook trout streams, you could also find me paddling along transects in a float tube in beaver ponds. In beaver ponds, variables potentially affecting brook trout, such as dissolved oxygen, pH, and temperature, were measured. I found sampling beaver ponds particularly challenging, often trudging through hip high muck, extracting leeches off of my arms, and battling black flies. But as with the stream sites, I also found a serenity of sort and appreciation for this unique ecosystem. Propelling millions of tadpoles into waves with my float tube in a beaver pond, unexpectedly discovering an enchanting waterfall, and spooking a large brook trout hiding inconspicuously in a quaint stream's undercut bank are experiences that make me so incredibly grateful to have chosen fisheries as a career.

During the fall and winter, my months have been busy with data analysis, setting the hook on the beaver and brook trout controversy. Geographical information system (GIS) was used to create interpolated brook trout habitat maps for each stream and beaver pond site from the data collected. I have enjoyed each process of my research, but there's something satisfying about seeing all your hard work in the field come together by visually seeing calculated brook trout habitat represented in the streams and ponds. Using GIS and aerial photos, beaver variables were measured that might potentially affect brook trout habitat. These included the number of upstream dams from the sampled site, the distance to the nearest beaver dam, and the area of the upstream beaver pond. Most recently, I have been diligently processing my invertebrate samples collected from the drift nets. And even though the process of identifying and measuring each invertebrate has been daunting and seemingly everlasting, there is also an excitement and admiration for each one. You never know what you will find in your sample and each species is so uniquely different. My favorite is seeing all the different mayfly gills and caddisfly cases, truly amazing creatures!



This project is funded by the Minnesota Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund.

Preliminary results of my research indicated that the maximum tree line width of the nearest upstream beaver pond was a significant variable that could be potentially affecting the amount of suitable brook trout habitat. Specifically, a greater area of suitable brook trout habitat was achieved when the maximum tree line width of the nearest upstream beaver pond was <70 meters. Beaver actively cut trees for dam maintenance and food, and as they continue their harvest throughout time, they have to search farther and farther away from their pond to reach favorable trees. As the tree line width of a beaver pond increases, less riparian shade is provided for the stream reach, potentially increasing temperatures and providing less suitable brook trout habitat below. Preliminary results also indicated that there was suitable brook trout habitat (sometimes even better habitat than was calculated in any of the streams) in 13 of the 21 beaver ponds sampled. The amount of dissolved oxygen was the limiting factor in determining if beaver ponds provided brook trout with suitable habitat. I am still analyzing the invertebrate data for the bioenergetics model and therefore, do not have any preliminary results to share with you about beaver potentially affecting brook trout growth in the sampled streams. But what I do know (along with my choice of fly for fishing next summer), is that mayflies tend to be the dominant group, constituting ~75% of many drift net samples. In one stream reach, mayfly numbers reached over 450 in a sample of 550 invertebrates.

Brook trout are a native species that remain highly desired by anglers and results from this study will allow agencies to efficiently make management decisions when regarding brook trout and beaver in the North Shore, Lake Superior region. I enjoyed spending my summers in the streams among the brook trout and am excited to analyze my data, allowing for light to be casted on this century old controversy.

North American Journal of Fisheries Management 38:1203–1225, 2018

ISSN: 0275-5947 print / 1548-8675 online
DOI: 10.1002/nafm.10223

FEATURED PAPER

A Review of Beaver–Salmonid Relationships and History of Management Actions in the Western Great Lakes (USA) Region

Sean M. Johnson-Bice*
Natural Resources Research Institute, University of Minnesota Duluth, 5113 Miller Trunk Highway, Hermantown, Minnesota 55811, USA

Kathryn M. Renik
Aquatic Biology Program, Department of Biology, Bemidji State University, 1500 Birchmont Drive Northeast, Bemidji, Minnesota 56601, USA

Steve K. Windels
Natural Resources Research Institute, University of Minnesota Duluth, 5113 Miller Trunk Highway, Hermantown, Minnesota 55811, USA

Andrew W. Hafs
Aquatic Biology Program, Department of Biology, Bemidji State University, 1500 Birchmont Drive Northeast, Bemidji, Minnesota 56601, USA

Abstract
Within the western Great Lakes (WGL) region of the USA (Michigan, Minnesota, and Wisconsin), the ecological impact that the North American beaver *Castor canadensis* (hereafter, "beaver") has on coldwater streams is generally considered to negatively affect salmonid populations where the two taxa interact. Beavers are common and widespread within the WGL region, while coldwater streams that support salmonid populations are scarcer landscape features; as such, all three states currently prioritize the habitat needs of salmonids in portions of each state by conducting beaver control in coldwater tributaries. In this paper, we review the history of beaver–salmonid interactions within the WGL region, describe how this relationship and management actions have evolved over the past century, and review all published studies from the region that have evaluated beaver–salmonid interactions. Our review suggests that beavers' impact varies spatially and temporally depending on a variety of local ecological characteristics (e.g., stream gradient and prevalence of groundwater inputs). We found that beaver activity is often deleterious to salmonids in low-gradient stream basins but is generally beneficial in high-gradient basins and that ample groundwater inputs can offset the potential negative effects of beavers by stabilizing the hydrologic and thermal regimes within streams. However, there was an obvious lack of empirical data and/or experimental controls within the reviewed studies, which we suggest emphasizes the need for more data-driven beaver–salmonid research in the WGL region. Resource managers are routinely faced with an ecological dilemma between maintaining natural environmental processes within coldwater ecosystems and conducting beaver control for the benefit of salmonids; this dilemma is further complicated when the salmonids in question belong to nonnative species. We anticipate that future beaver–salmonid research will lead to a greater understanding of this ecologically complex relationship, allowing managers to be better informed of when and where beaver control is necessary to achieve the desired management objectives.

*Corresponding author: s.johnsonbice@gmail.com
Received March 30, 2018; accepted August 10, 2018

North American beaver *Castor canadensis* (hereafter, "beaver") activities affect many fish and wildlife species (Rosell et al. 2005; Windels 2017), but of particular interest to resource managers in the western Great Lakes (WGL) region is the effect that beaver activity has on salmonids in tributaries and inland streams within the region. As ecosystem engineers, beavers disproportionately alter their environment through their dam-building and selective foraging habits (Rosell et al. 2005). Beaver dams impact streams by impounding the flow of running water, thereby reducing stream discharge and velocity (Naiman et al. 1988). Conditions upstream of the dam change from lotic to lentic, causing sediment, organic material, and water to accumulate (Naiman et al. 1986; Gurnell 1998). Over time, this leads to further alterations in stream hydrology, channel geomorphology, and riparian biogeochemical pathways (Naiman et al. 1988, 1994). These stream modifications can have cascading effects on salmonids, depending on local ecosystem characteristics. Most salmonid species spawn in stream sections with a slope between 0.5% and 3.0% (Beechie et al. 2008), coinciding with slopes preferred by beavers (Allen 1983); as such, interactions between the two taxa have important implications for the long-term growth, sustainability, and size and age structure of local salmonid populations.

The Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* is the only native salmonid species that regularly uses WGL streams, though several nonnative Pacific salmonid species have been introduced since the late 19th century (Crawford 2001) and use WGL tributaries for spawning and rearing habitat (e.g., Rainbow Trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss*: Biette et al. 1981; Chinook Salmon *O. tshawytscha* and Coho Salmon *O. kisutch*: Carl 1982). Most salmonid introductions and subsequent stocking programs were in response to declining commercial fisheries and stream habitat degradation or were meant to enhance recreational angling opportunities within Great Lakes streams (Mills et al. 1993). In the early 20th century, beaver populations in the region began

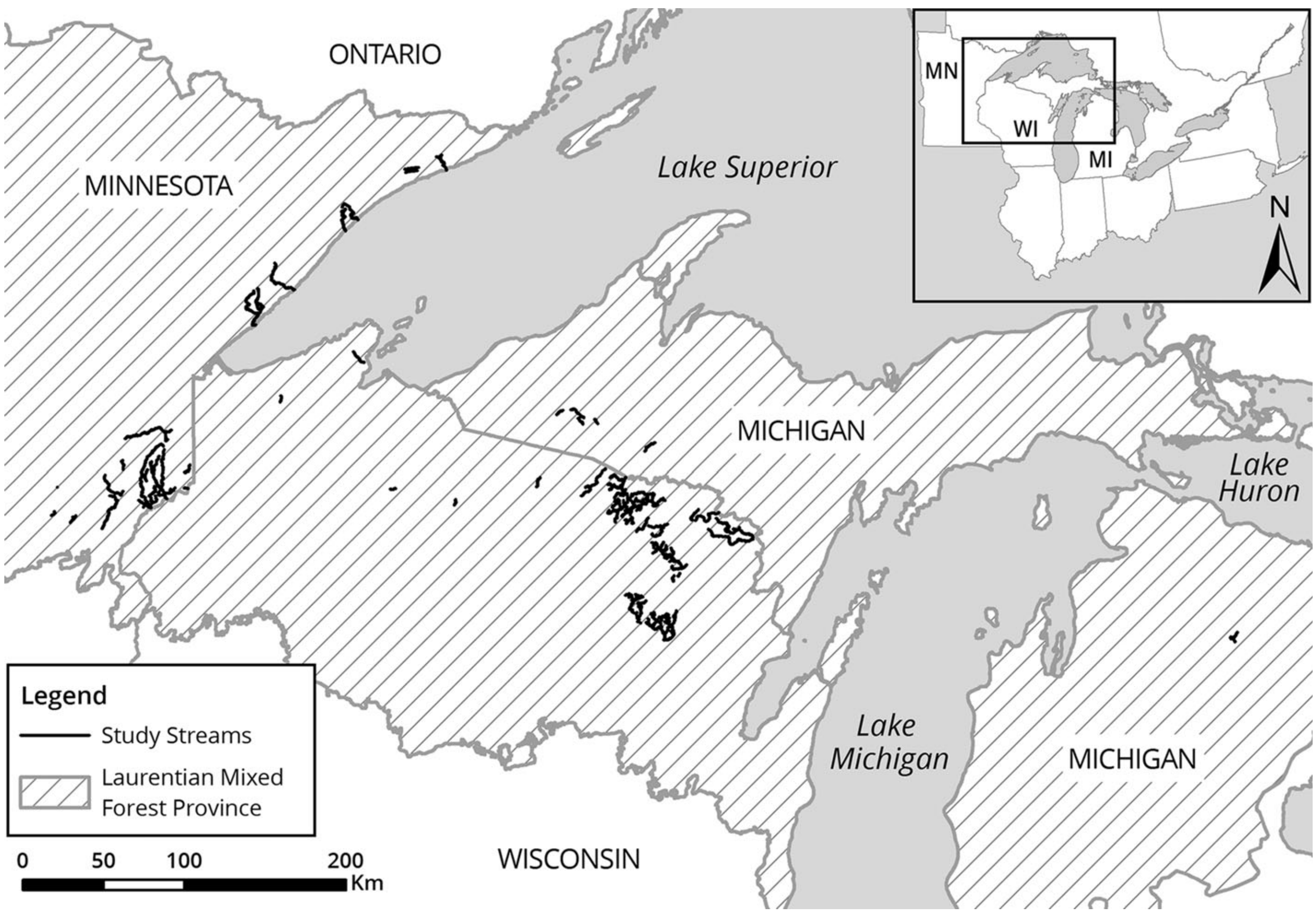


FIGURE 1. Map showing where beaver–salmonid studies have been conducted in the western Great Lakes region. Most of the studies are clustered regionally in northeast Wisconsin, east-central Minnesota, the north shore of Lake Superior, and the Upper Peninsula of Michigan. Several studies (Bradt 1935b; Salyer 1935; Twork 1936; Carbine 1944) did not include spatial information and are not pictured here.

to recover from two centuries of overharvest (Knudsen 1963; Longley and Moyle 1963) at the same time that resource managers were focused on increasing salmonid populations, leading sportsmen and resource managers to begin evaluating the impact of growing beaver populations on coldwater stream ecosystems (Knudsen 1962).

Each state within the WGL region currently uses some form of control measure (e.g., trapping, beaver removal, and dam removal) on coldwater salmonid streams where beaver populations exist. However, no synthesis on beaver–salmonid studies or previous management programs within the region has been conducted to date. For the purpose of this review, we consider the WGL region to be coincident with the Laurentian Mixed Forest Province (unit code 212; Cleland et al. 2007; geographic extent is similar to that of the Northern Lakes and Forest Ecoregion; Omernik and Gallant 1988), where all published studies to date have been conducted (Figure 1). We present an overview of beaver–salmonid relationships within the WGL region, with a focus on how management practices have evolved over the past century. Our intent was not to duplicate the content of two other comprehensive global reviews of beaver–fish interactions (Collen and Gibson 2001; Kemp et al. 2012) but rather to provide a refined review of beaver–salmonid interactions that will be useful for biologists, natural resource managers, and other interested parties, particularly in the WGL region.

The first section details the early history of beavers, native and nonnative salmonids, and the efforts by resource managers within the WGL region to increase population sizes of both taxa. We then review the main effects that beaver activities have on salmonid populations and habitat characteristics, summarize results from all published studies conducted within the WGL region, and identify information gaps where additional research can improve our understanding of the beaver–salmonid relationship. This section is most pertinent to beavers' effects on Brook Trout, Brown Trout *Salmo trutta*, and to a lesser degree Rainbow Trout, as these species interact with beavers more often than other salmonid species within WGL stream systems. Finally, we review the history of beaver management actions on coldwater streams in the WGL region, and we present recommendations to guide resource managers when designing management strategies that are aimed at addressing current and future beaver–salmonid conflicts.

HISTORY OF SALMONIDS AND BEAVERS IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION

Salmonid History

Agricultural and logging practices in the late 19th and early 20th centuries had a substantial impact on stream habitats in the WGL region. Vast tracts of old growth forest within the WGL region were clear-cut during this period, causing hydrologic and geomorphologic changes to streams (Fitzpatrick and Knox 2000; Whelan 2004) resulting from increased sediment loading and streamflow and discharge rates (Verry et al. 1983; Verry 1986). The kinetic energy from log transportation down streams coupled with large-scale desnagging and blasting operations also had an enormous impact on streams (Whelan 2004; Zorn et al. 2018), while land conversions during the homesteading era permanently altered the hydrologic and sediment dynamics of nearby stream systems (Fitzpatrick and Knox 2000; Anderson et al. 2006). Both short- and long-term modifications to the lands surrounding WGL streams likely had a negative impact on historic native salmonid populations and habitats (DuBois and Pratt 1994). Indeed, logging, habitat degradation, and overexploitation are believed to have caused the extirpation of the Arctic Grayling *Thymallus arcticus* from Michigan streams (Vincent 1962; Westerman 1974).

The first hatchery and stocking programs in the WGL region began in response to the declining native salmonid populations during the end of the 19th century. Atlantic Salmon *Salmo salar*, Chinook Salmon, Rainbow Trout, Brown Trout, and Cutthroat Trout *O. clarkii* were stocked in the WGL region by 1900 (Emery 1985; Whelan 2004). Most of these early introductions failed to produce self-sustaining populations (Emery 1985; Crawford 2001; Whelan 2004); however, successful introductions of Brook Trout, Brown Trout, and Rainbow Trout did occur in portions of the WGL region. The first steelhead (potamodromous Rainbow Trout) populations were established in areas separate from where they were originally planted (Westerman 1974), and in the late 19th century, Brook Trout were stocked along Minnesota's Lake Superior coastline, expanding their range into thousands of miles of suitable habitat (Smith and Moyle 1944; Waters 1999). Brown Trout have been stocked in Michigan since 1884 and have since become an important component of inland fisheries due to their ability to survive in warmer and more degraded streams than Brook Trout (Westerman 1974; Unfer and Pinter 2017).

The decline of Lake Trout *Salvelinus namaycush* fisheries in Lakes Michigan and Superior during the mid-20th century led to a second era of salmonid stocking throughout the WGL region. The unintentional introduction of the invasive Sea Lamprey *Petromyzon marinus* after construction of the Welland Canal (Smith and Tibbles 1980), coupled with the overexploitation of Lake Trout, led to the collapse of Lake Trout fisheries by the 1950s (Smith 1968; Lawrie and Rahrer 1973; Wells and McLain 1973). After the establishment of nonnative Alewives *Alosa pseudoharengus* and Rainbow Smelt *Osmerus mordax*, resource managers returned to stocking nonnative salmonids to restore and diversify commercial fisheries and to control the Alewives and Rainbow Smelt (Smith 1968; Crawford 2001; Whelan 2004). Chinook Salmon, Coho Salmon, and Rainbow Trout were introduced into the WGL region during this era, establishing successful and important sport and commercial fisheries (see Parsons 1973; Emery 1985; and Crawford 2001 for extensive summaries of salmonid introductions into the Great Lakes).

Today, many nonnative salmonids continue to be stocked in the WGL region. The Michigan Department of Natural Resources (MDNR) currently stocks Chinook Salmon, Coho Salmon, and Brown Trout into Lake Michigan; splake (male Brook Trout × female Lake Trout) into Lakes Huron and Superior; Rainbow Trout into Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior; and Brown Trout and Rainbow Trout into inland streams (MDNR 2018). The Minnesota Department of Natural Resources (MNDNR) currently stocks steelhead into Lake Superior and Brown Trout and Rainbow Trout into inland streams (Great Lakes Fishery Commission 2018). Finally, the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR) stocks Brown Trout, Rainbow Trout, and splake into Lakes Michigan and Superior; Chinook Salmon and Coho Salmon into Lake Michigan; and Brown Trout and Rainbow Trout into inland streams (J. Mosher, WDNR, personal communication). With the exception of the Lake Superior north shore steelhead population (MNDNR 2016), the effects of beaver activity on nonnative adfluvial salmonids remain largely unknown. Most of these species use WGL tributaries for spawning and rearing habitat and are likely affected by beavers in some capacity.

Managers within the WGL region are particularly concerned about interactions between beavers and native Brook Trout. There are two variants of Brook Trout (tributary and coaster) that are distinguished by different morphological and life history traits (Burnham-Curtis 2000; D'Amelio 2002; Wilson et al. 2008). Tributary or "resident" Brook Trout reside entirely within riverine ecosystems and are generally smaller in size, while coasters are an adfluvial form of Brook Trout that are larger and mature at a later age than residents (Ridgway 2008; Wilson et al. 2008). Historically abundant throughout Lake Superior and select Lake Huron tributaries, coaster Brook Trout were highly prized among anglers and provided a productive fishery until the population crashed by the early 1900s due to overexploitation and habitat degradation (Huckins et al. 2008; Schreiner et al. 2008). Today, coasters exist in isolated remnant populations along the Lake Superior coastline (Wilson et al. 2008). The Great Lakes Fishery Commission developed a coaster Brook Trout rehabilitation plan in 2003 designed to aid Brook Trout proliferation throughout the Lake Superior basin (Newman et al. 2003; Schreiner 2008). The main objective of the plan is to establish widespread populations of Brook Trout that can successfully coexist with naturalized, nonnative salmonids (Newman et al. 2003). In addition to stocking programs and managing human exploitation, the plan also identifies controlling beaver activity as a potential method for improving and maintaining spawning and rearing habitat (Newman et al. 2003). Since the release of the rehabilitation plan and a related conference synthesizing coaster Brook Trout research in 2003 (Coaster Brook Trout Initiative), research on Lake Superior Brook Trout populations has increased substantially (e.g., Huckins et al. 2008; Ridgway 2008; Wilson et al. 2008; Dumke et al. 2010).

Brown Trout and resident Brook Trout are the most common salmonids within WGL streams, and management of these inland salmonid species has largely focused on improving stream habitat and riparian land use practices following the logging era. Stream improvement methods include the use of riprap for erosion control, wood and rock deflectors, log dams, tree plantings, streambank debrushing, and waterfall modifications (Hunt 1988; Avery 2004; Goldsworthy et al. 2016). Inland management programs have generally been conducted at the local or watershed scale, although Michigan (Zorn et al. 2018) and Wisconsin are developing statewide plans to guide inland salmonid management over the coming years. Beaver management has often been a peripheral part of management plans aimed at improving stream habitats and increasing salmonid populations, but some resource managers in the WGL region believe that beaver management is the most cost-effective salmonid habitat improvement method (Avery 2004; Willging 2017).

Beaver History

Before the fur trade reached the WGL region (~1650), Native Americans harvested beavers as a secondary source of food and warmth (Schorger 1965). After European contact, beaver pelts quickly became the most important trade good for Native Americans in the region, particularly as beaver numbers declined in the eastern USA. The fur trade began in the WGL region toward the end of the 17th century and continued through the middle of the 19th century until beaver numbers diminished as a result of extensive exploitation (see Ross 1938; Longley and Moyle 1963; and Schorger 1965 for summaries of the fur trade within the WGL region).

Harvest by Native Americans during the presettlement era was likely far less than harvests during the fur trade era, when the Hudson Bay Company sold nearly 500,000 pelts annually in Europe (Obbard et al. 1987; Müller-Schwarze 2011). Many of these pelts came from Canada, but the WGL region quickly earned a reputation for producing some of the highest quality pelts available (Schorger 1965). Native Americans conducted most of the beaver trapping in the region, trading pelts with English and French colonists. Accurate estimates of presettlement beaver abundance are lacking (one estimate that included Ontario put the beaver population at 2 million; Alcoze 1981), but pelt records from the WGL region indicate that beaver populations were robust.

As the fur trade declined, settlers in the WGL region continued unregulated trapping of beavers, further reducing beaver abundance in the region (Knudsen 1963) and subsequently leading to periods of closed or partially closed trapping seasons. Wisconsin was the first state to enact partially closed trapping seasons from 1865 to 1879, which allowed beaver trapping only from November 1 to May 1. Several full-season closures followed over the next several decades: 1893–1898, 1903–1916, and 1924–1933 (Knudsen 1963). Early management of beavers in Minnesota followed a similar trajectory, and the first law restricting harvest was enacted in 1875 (Longley and Moyle 1963). However, unrestricted harvest limits during the open season led to further population declines until the state completely prohibited the take of beavers at any time of year in 1909 (Longley and Moyle 1963). Beavers were not harvested again until 1919, when trappers were issued a license to remove nuisance beavers (Longley and Moyle 1963). Michigan did not have its first closed beaver season until 1920, and it remained closed until the beaver population had increased dramatically by the 1930s (Bradt 1935b).

During this period of closed harvest seasons, wildlife managers across the WGL region also conducted a number of relocation and reintroduction efforts to assist beaver propagation. It was common for landowners to request the release of beavers on their property, which were often nuisance animals that needed to be removed from other locations (Bradt 1935b). One noteworthy reintroduction effort occurred in 1901, when three beavers from Canada were released into Itasca State Park, Minnesota (Longley and Moyle 1963). Over the next two decades, local managers monitored the beavers' progress; by 1921, it was estimated that nearly 1,000 beavers resided in the park (Longley and Moyle 1963). This event has reached folklore status in Minnesota, in part because it demonstrates the rapidity with which beavers can reproduce and colonize new areas. As a result of the restricted trapping seasons and conservation efforts from game managers, beaver populations began to irrupt throughout the WGL region.

The rapid colonization and growth of beavers in the WGL region were likely further influenced by ecological factors that promoted beaver expansion. The timber harvest practices that severely degraded streams in the WGL region also altered forest composition across the region, including general shifts in forest structure from communities dominated by conifers to those dominated by deciduous trees (White and Mladenoff 1994; Schulte et al. 2007). In Michigan and Wisconsin, selective logging of eastern white pine *Pinus strobus*, eastern hemlock *Tsuga canadensis*, and old growth hardwoods, followed by periods of intense slash fires, converted large tracts of forest to sugar maple *Acer saccharum*, big-tooth aspen *Populus grandidentata*, quaking aspen *Populus tremuloides*, and oaks *Quercus* spp. (Whitney 1987; White and Mladenoff 1994). As a result of logging and fire suppression management practices, Minnesota forests that had been adapted to periodic fire regimes underwent compositional changes that resulted in forests dominated by aspens, spruces *Picea* spp., and balsam fir *Abies balsamea* (Friedman and Reich 2005). Aspens in particular have repeatedly been shown to be a preferred food item for beavers (e.g., Aldous 1938; Stegeman 1954; Hall 1960), and the dramatic increase in the distribution and abundance of aspens is thought to have played a substantial role in the rapid recovery of beaver populations (Knudsen 1963; Longley and Moyle 1963; WDNR 2015).

The reduction of natural predators in the WGL region also may have contributed to beaver population recovery. In the early 20th century, state and federal bounties for wolves *Canis lupus* led to significant wolf population declines across the region (Boitani 2010). Given that beavers have been shown to be an important food source for wolves (Mech 1970; Gable et al. 2016, 2018), even accounting for up to 50% of seasonal wolf diets (Voigt et al. 1976; Gable et al. 2017), suppressed wolf populations could have allowed for beaver population expansion at an even faster rate (Hartman 1994); however, there is little evidence to suggest this is the case (Gable and Windels 2018; Gable et al. 2018). American black bears *Ursus americanus*, coyotes *Canis latrans*, bobcats *Lynx rufus*, Canada lynx *L. canadensis*, and mountain lions *Felis concolor* also occasionally prey upon beavers (Baker and Hill 2003), and reduced populations of these other predators through the 1970s may have contributed to the rapid beaver expansion.

REVIEW OF BEAVER INFLUENCE ON STREAMS AND SALMONIDS IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION

We reviewed the effects of beaver activity on salmonid population ecology, growth rates, and habitat quality in the WGL region. We performed literature searches using Google Scholar and Web of Science; keyword searches included "beaver and trout," "beaver and salmonids," "Michigan beaver and trout," "Minnesota beaver and trout," and "Wisconsin beaver and trout." Additional relevant articles were obtained from bibliographies of acquired articles with emphasis on study site location, fish species, and beaver activity. Our review was limited to studies that have been published in peer-reviewed journals,

TABLE 1. Summary of the main effects found from 21 beaver–salmonid studies conducted within the western Great Lakes region (Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Michigan). Average stream gradient was inferred from authors' comments or was obtained from stream assessments. Surficial geology was obtained from Soller et al. (2009). Textured grain size is further identified as coarse (C), fine (F), or medium (M); "patchy" indicates that bedrock is exposed. Analysis type was considered "empirical" if quantitative results were presented, "anecdotal" if no quantitative results were presented, or "mixed" if quantitative results were presented for only some of the study's variables. Results from each study were evaluated to determine whether beaver activity had a beneficial effect (↑), no effect (⇆), or a deleterious effect (↓) on salmonids. Studies with multiple arrow types in a cell indicate that multiple effects were found in different portions of the study area; unk. = unknown, ave. = average, and temp. = temperature.

Reference; state	Study scope	Ave. gradient	Surficial geology	Data type	Stream temp.	Siltation	Migration barrier	Spawning habitat	Streamflow	Water chemistry	Population size	Ave. catch rate	Ave. catch size
DuBois and Schram (1993); WI	1 tributary	Low	Glacial outwash (C)	Mixed	⇆[a]	↓[a]		↓			↑/↓[a]		
Haugstad (1970); MN	20 streams	Low	Glacial outwash (C)/ glacial till (C)	Anecdotal	↓	↓		↓	↓		↓		
Klein and Newman (1992); MN	3 streams	Low	Glacial outwash (C)/ glacial till (C)	Empirical	⇆/↓	⇆/↓		↓	↓	↓	↑/↓		
McRae and Edwards (1994); WI	4 streams	Low	Glacial outwash (C)/ glacial till (C)	Empirical	↑/⇆/↓								
Patterson (1951); WI	3 watersheds	Low	Glacial outwash (C)/ glacial till (C)	Mixed	↓[a]	↓[a]	↓	↓			↑/↓[b]		↑/↓
Adams (1949); MI	3 streams	High	Glacial till (C)	Empirical	⇆/↓					⇆/↓		↑	
Adams (1954); MI	4 streams	High	Glacial till (C)	Empirical	⇆/↓		⇆			⇆/↓		↑/⇆	
Avery (2002); WI	1 watershed	Low	Glacial till (M)	Empirical	↓			↓	↑/↓		↓	↓	↓
Christenson et al. (1961)[c]; WI	State	Mixed	Glacial till (M)	Mixed	⇆[a]	↓[a]	↓	↓	↓	↓	↑[b]		↑[b]
Shetter and Whalls (1955)[c]; MI	1 stream	High	Glacial till (M)	Empirical	⇆				⇆			⇆	
Dumke et al. (2010); WI	1 tributary	Low	Glacial till (F)	Empirical	⇆	↓		↓	↓				
Evans (1948); MN	8 streams	High	Glacial till (M), patchy	Mixed	⇆/↓[a]		⇆						
Hale (1950); MN	3 streams	High	Glacial till (M), patchy	Empirical								↑	↑
Hale (1966)[c]; MN	5 streams	High	Glacial till (M), patchy	Mixed	⇆		↓				↑[a]	↓[a]	↑[a]
Peterson (2012); MN	1 stream	Low	Glacial till (M), patchy	Empirical	↓								
Smith and Moyle (1944); MN	1 watershed	Low	Glacial till (M), patchy	Empirical	↓								
Bradt (1935b); MI	State	Mixed	Mixed	Anecdotal								↓	↓
Carbine (1944); MI	Upper Peninsula	High	Mixed	Anecdotal	↓		↓					↑	↑
Knudsen (1962); WI	State	Mixed	Mixed	Anecdotal	↓	↓	⇆		↑		↑[b]		↑[b]
Salyer (1935); MI	State	Mixed	Mixed	Mixed	⇆[a]	↓	↓[a]	↓		↓[a]	↑/↓[b]	↑/↓[b]	
Twork (1936)[c]; MI	Unk.	Unk.	Unk.	Mixed	⇆[a]	↑	↓		⇆		↑		

[a]Denotes quantitative variables from studies that used mixed analyses.
[b]Beneficial effects on salmonids were found only in the first 2–4 years after dam establishment.
[c]Christenson et al. (1961), Hale (1966), and Shetter and Whalls (1955) found increased water temperatures downstream of dams, and Twork (1936) reported a decrease in temperature after dam removal; however, stream temperatures did not exceed the thermal limits for Brook Trout (20–24°C).

theses, and dissertations as well as state agency reports that have been published or made publicly available. We acknowledge that state, federal, and tribal agencies from the WGL region likely have unpublished data pertaining to beaver–salmonid interactions. However, we have based this review only on data and reports that are readily available to the public.

We reviewed 21 studies evaluating beaver–salmonid interactions in Michigan, Minnesota, and Wisconsin (Table 1); the studies spanned the period from 1935 to 2012, the most recent year in which a beaver–salmonid study has been published. Some published reports from the WGL region contain duplicate data (e.g., Hale and Jarvenpa 1950; Hale 1966 and Avery 1992, 2002), so we selected only one report from each pair for representation in Table 1. Each study was evaluated to determine whether the conclusions were based on empirical data or were anecdotal in nature. From each article, statements pertaining to the effect of beavers on salmonids were evaluated as positive, negative, or no effect. Since relatively little research has been conducted in the WGL region, in each section we first present the main effects that beaver activity has on salmonid populations and habitat characteristics from studies across the ranges of these taxa. We then review the main results from studies conducted within the WGL region and identify information gaps that could be addressed by future research.

Stream Hydrology and Geomorphology

Beaver dams generally create lower but more consistent flows in stream systems (Cook 1940; Bruner 1989; Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999), increasing the water-holding capacity of a watershed, elevating the water table, and suppressing peak discharges (Finnegan and Marshall 1997; Bouwes et al. 2016). Beaver dams reduce stream energy and increase retention time by dissipating energy through the dam materials and riparian vegetation (Woo and Waddington 1990; Dunaway et al. 1994) and by creating more complex flow pathways (Majerova et al. 2015). Generally, stream velocity is greater and substratum is coarser below beaver dams compared to above the dams, potentially benefiting fish that depend on those habitat characteristics (Smith and Mather 2013). Salmonids living in areas with low streamflow or drought can also benefit from beaver dam presence (Cook 1940; Knudsen 1962; Bruner 1989; Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999), as streams with beaver impoundments can retain water longer during dry periods than streams without beaver dams (Parker 1986; Gurnell 1998). Beaver dams can augment low streamflows by recharging alluvial aquifers, and although the amount of water storage behind dams is relatively minor in comparison to the recharged aquifers (Dunne and Leopold 1978; Lowry 1993), beaver ponds can nonetheless provide refuge for salmonids during low-flow periods (if water temperatures remain within thermal limits).

Most research evaluating how beaver dams influence hydrologic pathways has been conducted in mountainous areas, so the effects of beaver dams on stream hydrology in the WGL region are likely different. In contrast to mountainous areas, where salmonid streams are often sourced by snowmelt, WGL salmonid streams are sourced by precipitation and groundwater inputs. Consequently, the distribution and abundance of salmonids in the WGL region are generally determined by reach and watershed characteristics that influence the hydrologic and thermal regimes of stream systems (Lyons 1996; Wehrly et al. 2003). In particular, reach geomorphology, catchment area, and bedrock and quaternary (surficial) geologies can reasonably predict the spatial assemblage of salmonid populations (Wiley et al. 1997; Wang et al. 2003) due to their influence on groundwater flow patterns. Salmonid presence is correlated with hydrologically stable stream systems (Zorn et al. 2002) that are generally comprised of surficial materials with greater hydraulic connectivity, such as glacial outwashes and coarse-textured glacial till landforms (Wiley et al. 1997). However, within the WGL region, there is substantial variation in bedrock and surficial geologies (Soller et al. 2009). Glacial erosion and deposition resulted in diverse landforms throughout the WGL region that differ in their ability to hold and transport water (Neff et al. 2005), and this heterogeneous composition makes it difficult to extrapolate the results of beaver–salmonid studies from one area to another. The manner in which beaver dams may influence lateral and longitudinal flow pathways will likely differ between surficial materials, although this topic remains largely unexplored within the region. No discernible patterns of surficial geology were found in the reviewed studies (Table 1), but patterns are likely to emerge if surficial geology is evaluated alongside local watershed, topographic, and thermal characteristics. Our sample size was not large enough to permit us to draw such conclusions; however, future research may be able to re-examine this issue.

Beaver ponds increase the spatial heterogeneity and longitudinal complexity between stream reaches by altering the geomorphology of stream systems (Naiman et al. 1988). Salmonid populations are dependent on habitat heterogeneity, with different life stages requiring unique habitat characteristics and a degree of connectivity to fulfill their distinctive life history (Bjornn and Reiser 1991; Schlosser 1991). As such, increased habitat complexity from beaver activity may positively influence salmonid populations by providing a greater selection of places to forage, rest, and avoid high-flow events (Bouwes et al. 2016; Wathen et al., in press). Since beaver ponds are ephemeral in nature, they may also benefit fish by offering a unique heterogeneous habitat component that functions on a spatiotemporal scale (Fausch et al. 2002).

Coldwater streams in the WGL region have been observed to become wider and shallower after repetitive beaver dam construction (Salyer 1935). After beaver trapping and dam removal on a stream in Pine County, Minnesota, the stream channels became deeper and narrower, and the pool–riffle ratio improved (Haugstad 1970). Other observations included the narrowing of stream channels and an increase in average streamflow velocity and coarse gravel substrate after woody debris and beaver dam removal on Lake Superior tributaries (DuBois and Schram 1993; Dumke et al. 2010). We note that in some systems, the narrowing of channels may cause streams to become incised and/or entrenched, and beavers are commonly used as a biological restoration tool to reduce channel incision, particularly in western U.S. stream systems (Burchsted et al. 2010; Pollock et al. 2014). In the Peshtigo River watershed, Wisconsin, an increase in beaver colonies reduced water flow rates in feeder streams (Patterson 1951), whereas in central Wisconsin, beaver activity may have positively influenced salmonid populations by retaining water within ponds while other stream sections dried up (Knudsen 1962).

Water Quality Characteristics

Water chemistry.— The effects of beaver activity on water chemistry vary regionally and are dependent upon original conditions (Collen and Gibson 2001), and the impact of beavers on dissolved oxygen (DO) levels is particularly important for salmonids. Beaver activities may decrease DO levels in a stream by increasing water temperatures and reducing streamflow, the latter of which also decreases stream aeration. However, Smith et al. (1991) suggested that the influence of beaver dams on DO levels is localized to within impoundments, as stream water quickly achieves complete reoxygenation just downstream of the dam. As beaver ponds age and expand, increases in microbial respiration within flooded soils and allochthonous inputs of organic matter also occur (Pollock et al. 1995; Songster-Alpin and Klotz 1995; Bertolo et al. 2008). Some of the organic matter is deposited as sediment layers within the impoundments (Johnston and Naiman 1987), further reducing DO levels (commonly referred to as sediment oxygen demand).

Observations from the WGL region have generally found that beaver activity negatively affects DO levels (Table 1). Prior to beaver dam removal, DO levels as low as 0.1 mg/L were recorded within beaver ponds in one Wisconsin watershed (Avery 2002). However, a reinvestigation of this study concluded that there was only a 2-mg/L improvement in DO after beaver dam removal, even with beaver ponds creating localized areas of oxygen depletion (Popelars 2008). In Pine County, Minnesota, Klein and Newman (1992) recorded the lowest DO levels in dammed stream sections but found that DO levels increased into suitable salmonid thresholds after dam removal. Salyer (1935) stated that the organic matter present in beaver ponds throughout Michigan streams reduced DO levels, but the reduction varied from minute to extreme depending on the system.

Beaver impoundments also affect other water chemistry characteristics, including pH and dissolved nutrient levels (Smith et al. 1991; Johnston 2017). Beaver activity alters the distribution and loading of nutrients within riparian ecosystems, where impoundments act as nutrient sinks with greater concentrations of dissolved organic material relative to other stream sections (Naiman et al. 1986, 1994; Johnston and Naiman 1987). In particular, beaver impoundments sequester large amounts of dissolved carbon, phosphorus, and nitrogen (Dillon et al. 1991; Naiman et al. 1994; Johnston 2012, 2014), which may benefit salmonids in nutrient-poor ecosystems. However, a recent meta-analysis suggested that phosphorus retention generally occurs only in older ponds (Ecke et al. 2017). An early study from Michigan's Upper Peninsula (UP) found beaver ponds to be more acidic than other stream reaches (Salyer 1935), yet recent research indicates that beaver wetlands actually increase the acid-neutralizing capacity of streams by retaining acidic inputs within sediment layers (Smith et al. 1991; Cirmo and Driscoll 1993; Margolis et al. 2001; Bł dzki et al. 2010). Acid neutralization associated with beaver activity may benefit salmonids in stream systems with high acid deposition, but this has not yet been examined.

Water temperature.— Stream temperature is often the most important limiting factor for suitable salmonid habitat in the WGL region, and beaver activity can influence stream temperatures in several different ways. Beaver activities can indirectly increase water temperatures by impounding streams and reducing canopy cover, leading to increased rates of solar radiation (Evans 1948; Patterson 1951; Christenson et al. 1961; Hale 1966). Beaver ponds can maintain water temperatures independent of air temperature changes (Weber et al. 2017), as impoundments can force water around and beneath beaver dams, cooling it as it seeps through the ground and back into the stream (White 1990; Westbrook et al. 2006; Müller-Schwarze 2011). Temperature stratification can also occur in deep ponds, potentially providing salmonid species with thermal refugia during warmer months (Gard 1961; Benson 2002; Bouwes et al. 2016). The effects of beaver dams on water temperature may differ with beaver pond age and size (Cook 1940; Call 1970; but see Windels 2017), as newer ponds generally have greater percolation through the dam relative to older ponds, reducing water retention time (Call 1970).

Observations on stream temperature were the most commonly cited effects from within the WGL region, with most studies reporting negative effects from beaver activity

(Table 1). Stream temperatures in the Peshtigo River watershed, Wisconsin, were elevated due to reduced streamside cover from beaver activity (Patterson 1951), and similar observations were made in the Knife River, Minnesota (Smith and Moyle 1944). In the same study, summer water temperatures were significantly cooler after beaver dam removal (Smith and Moyle 1944); more recently, water temperatures below beaver dam outlets in the Knife River watershed were within the stressful and/or lethal threshold limits of Brook Trout more than 50% of the time (Peterson 2012). Water temperatures in the Pemonee River watershed, Wisconsin, were cooler after beaver dam removal and remained cooler even 18 years after the initial dam removal efforts (Avery 2002). However, beaver activity had no significant influence on stream temperatures within several study systems in the WGL region (Adams 1949, 1954; Shetter and Whalls 1955; Hale 1966; Klein and Newman 1992; DuBois and Schram 1993; Dumke et al. 2010). Additionally, Hale (1966) believed that salmonids used beaver ponds as thermal refuge in a Minnesota tributary of Lake Superior, while McRae and Edwards (1994) found that beaver dams reduced the magnitude of thermal diel fluctuations within their study area. McRae and Edwards (1994) also examined the influence of beaver dam density and beaver pond size on stream temperatures, concluding that temperature was not influenced by either factor. We note that their study area (the Peshtigo River watershed) has ample groundwater inputs throughout the stream system, which may partially explain the observed stable thermal regimes.

The effects of beaver activity on water temperature have received more attention and research in the WGL region than other aspects of the beaver–salmonid relationship. However, we believe that some of the reported effects on water temperature may be misleading, as they were often recorded at locations where water temperatures are likely higher than the average stream temperature (e.g., surface water temperatures or at the immediate outlet of beaver dams). Recording temperatures at the bottom of beaver ponds and/or from a moderate distance (>50 m) downstream of dams could yield a more accurate representation of how beavers influence thermal regimes.

The spatial assemblage of salmonids within the WGL region is closely tied to the thermal regimes of stream systems (Lyons 1996; Wehrly et al. 2003). As coldwater species, salmonids' persistence within streams is reliant on just that—*cold water*. That beaver dam presence increases stream temperatures within the WGL region appears conclusive (Table 1), but whether this increase in temperature has a deleterious impact on salmonids depends upon whether (1) the resultant water temperature exceeds salmonid temperature limits or (2) thermal refugia are readily accessible. If the resultant water temperature remains within salmonid thermal tolerance limits, then beaver dam presence should not be considered to negatively affect salmonids through stream temperature alterations. There is a tendency to conclude that any increase in temperature is a negative attribute; however, this is only true when the increased temperature has a negative effect on salmonid fitness. Within the WGL region, many streams containing salmonids have natural temperature regimes that already approach salmonid thermal limits, and beaver presence in these stream systems is more likely to raise stream temperatures above the salmonids' thermal limits. Understanding the natural thermal regimes of streams is important for determining whether beaver dam presence will ultimately cause stress to salmonids and/or lead to salmonid mortality and whether these patterns will change under varying environmental conditions.

Influence on Spawning Attributes

Spawning habitat.— Salmonid reproductive success and population persistence are dependent on the ability of individuals to reach spawning grounds and dig redds in habitat that is suitable for egg survival (Beechie et al. 2008). Habitat variables that affect site selection by salmonids include gravel size, water velocity, depth, and temperature (Essington et al. 1998; Armstrong et al. 2003; Beechie et al. 2008). Salmonid eggs require free-flowing, cold water in order to provide enough oxygen to the developing embryos (Chapman 1988), and many salmonid species (e.g., Brook Trout and Chinook Salmon) exhibit a preference for spawning sites within the hyporheic zone, where groundwater upwellings and surface water flow pathways interact (Curry and Noakes 1995; Geist and Dauble 1998). Salmonids generally dig redds in reaches with coarse-textured gravel substrates, and the distribution of suitable habitat may limit salmonid populations within stream systems (Kondolf and Wolman 1993). Limited spawning habitat availability may lead to redd superimposition (Curry and Noakes 1995), although some salmonid species (e.g., Brown Trout) also display a behavioral preference for spawning on existing redd sites even at low redd densities (Essington et al. 1998). Redds that are dug too deep into substrates can reduce egg hatching success due to the effects on temperature and diminished access to free-flowing water (Crisp 1996; Sternecker et al. 2012). Additionally, the deposition of fine sediments may reduce egg survival and emergence (Chapman 1988), but this may be offset if streamflows are high enough to prevent sediment buildup (Payne and Lapointe 1997; Armstrong et al. 2003).

Beaver activities can affect salmonid spawning habitats by altering sediment dynamics within stream systems. Organic materials are deposited as layers of fine sediment within beaver impoundments (Johnston and Naiman 1987), which can ultimately affect salmonid populations when the fine sediments bury gravel substrates (Alexander and Hansen 1986; Waters 1995; Lisle 2010). Based on a sample of 353 active beaver ponds located throughout Wisconsin, layers of mineral and organic matter were present in 100% of bottom sediments, with all samples revealing silt layers ranging from approximately 1 to 5 cm in depth (Christenson et al. 1961; Knudsen 1962). Patterson (1951) suggested that Brook Trout were unable to spawn due to siltation and blocked migration caused by beaver dams in Wisconsin streams, and Salyer (1935) observed that silt was deposited over salmonid eggs in Michigan streams. Scarcity of age-0 Brook Trout upstream of dams and decreased viability of eggs located directly downstream were observed in a Minnesota stream (Hale 1966). Beaver dam removal was also observed to reduce sand bed loading and expose gravel substrates, improving access to salmonid spawning sites (Haugstad 1970; DuBois and Schram 1993; Dumke et al. 2010). Contrarily, the retention of siltation behind an impoundment may lead to a greater prevalence of gravel substrate downstream (Levine and Meyer 2014), potentially improving salmonid spawning habitat (Grasse 1951).

Movement barrier.— Beaver dams can limit salmonids' access to suitable spawning habitat by impeding fish movements within stream reaches. Limitation of these movements may lead to a decline or extirpation of salmonid populations in streams or stream segments (Bylak et al. 2014), and the degree to which beaver dams impede salmonid movement can often be influenced by streamflow conditions (Schlosser 1995a; Snodgrass and Meffe 1998). Salmonids that spawn during higher streamflows in spring (e.g., Rainbow Trout) may find dams passable, while other species that spawn during lower average streamflows (e.g., Brook Trout) may be unable to bypass dams and could be forced to spawn in less-suitable habitat (Grasse and Putnam 1955). Shallow plunge pools can hinder the Brook Trout's ability to jump (Kondratieff and Myrick 2006), which may further restrict their ability to pass beaver dams during low-flow conditions. In Utah, Brook Trout passed dams more frequently than Brown Trout during periods of high streamflow by taking advantage of side channels and increased streamflow over and through dams (Lokteff et al. 2013).

From published studies within the WGL region, beaver dams were frequently reported to impede salmonid migration (Table 1). However, only two of the studies used tagged fish to evaluate how beaver dams affected salmonid movements. Salyer (1935) found that salmonids could readily pass dams downstream but not upstream, where better spawning habitats were generally located. Avery (2002) noted an increase in the spatial distribution of Brook Trout after beaver dam removal, suggesting that the dams impeded movement into some reaches. Other studies from the WGL region speculated or used anecdotal evidence to conclude that beaver dams impede salmonid migration (Table 1). Because most of the published research on this topic from the WGL region is speculative, it is possible that salmonids are actually able to bypass some beaver dams. Logically, salmonid movements are hindered to a greater extent if beaver dams are present than if they are absent, but that does not necessarily mean the fish are *unable* to bypass the dams, thereby limiting upstream/downstream migration. Ultimately, more research is needed to determine which salmonid species are better able to navigate dams; the characteristics of dams (e.g., height and permeability) that are more likely to restrict salmonid movements; the streamflow conditions that often restrict salmonid movements; and, finally, whether restricted movements have an appreciable impact on salmonid populations. From a population perspective, if beaver dams restrict passage under certain scenarios, the detrimental effects may be exacerbated if the dams limit access to the often-limited spawning habitat during the spawning season(s). Using telemetry studies to monitor fine-scale salmonid movements could provide greater insight into salmonids' ability to bypass beaver dams (e.g., Lokteff et al. 2013).

Individual Growth Rates

Beaver dam presence tends to positively affect salmonid growth rates (Cook 1940; Patterson 1951; Shetter and Whalls 1955; Rosell and Parker 1996; McCaffery 2009). During low-flow summer months, juvenile Brook Trout adopt a habitat-use strategy that reduces energetic demands by seeking out deep, low-velocity pools (Sotiropoulos et al. 2006), which likely includes utilizing beaver impoundments. Beaver activity can also lead to increased invertebrate productivity. Aquatic invertebrates are a primary food source for several age-classes of stream-dwelling salmonids, and invertebrate populations readily respond to stream system changes induced by beaver activities (McDowell and Naiman 1986). As a section of stream changes from lotic to lentic, invertebrate composition generally shifts from filter-feeding insects to collector-gatherers (Sprules 1941; McDowell and Naiman 1986). Beaver ponds may have a lower diversity of invertebrate species but generally have a higher total biomass and density of aquatic organisms relative to other stream reaches (Rupp 1955; Gard 1961; McDowell and Naiman 1986). However, stream sedimentation can limit salmonid growth rates by decreasing the abundances of the insect orders Ephemeroptera, Plecoptera, and Trichoptera, which serve as important food sources for all salmonid life stages (Hale 1966; McMahon 1983; Waters 1995). Increased sedimentation may also cause an increase in burrowing invertebrates, thereby reducing the amount of vulnerable prey available to salmonids and impairing growth (Suttle et al. 2004). The interplay of sedimentation, invertebrate community shifts, and salmonid growth rates is complex and warrants additional research, as most of the information regarding how beavers influence these dynamics remains speculative.

Salmonids tend to be larger within beaver impoundments relative to other stream sections (Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999; Bylak et al. 2014), and results from published studies in the WGL region generally support this conclusion (Table 1). In a Minnesota tributary of Lake Superior, the largest Brook Trout were found within beaver ponds, with growth attributed to higher populations of minnows (Hale 1966). Higher water temperatures associated with beaver ponds may also contribute to increased salmonid growth (Rosell and Parker 1996); however, given that many salmonid streams within the WGL region are already near the upper thermal limits for salmonids during summer months (see Water Quality Characteristics section), this increase in temperature may be deleterious. Avery (2002) found the average size of age-1 Brook Trout to be larger after beaver dams were removed from a watershed in northeastern Wisconsin, attributing the increase in growth rate to decreased water temperatures, increased gravel exposure, and increased aquatic invertebrate biomass. The summer after a beaver dam collapsed in a Lake Superior tributary, Hale (1966) observed that invertebrate species composition more closely resembled communities found in streams rather than those found in beaver ponds. These results suggest that invertebrate composition can respond quickly to changes in stream habitat and corroborate Avery's (2002) findings.

The observation of larger fish within beaver ponds does not necessarily reflect a faster growth rate but is perhaps a function of how beaver dams influence the distribution of different salmonid age-classes. Indeed, beaver dams have been shown to influence the spatial distribution of fish (see Population Dynamics section), so creel data alone cannot definitively indicate beaver ponds positively influence salmonid growth rates. Future research from the WGL region could use a paired study design to compare salmonid growth rates in streams with and without beaver ponds to determine the influence that beaver ponds exert on growth rates.

Population Dynamics

In general, beaver ponds influence the spatial and temporal distribution of fish species and age-classes within stream systems by increasing the heterogeneity of habitat features (Schlosser 1995a, 1998; Snodgrass and Meffe 1998, 1999; Schlosser and Kallemeyn 2000; Mitchell and Cunjak 2007; Wathen et al., in press). Research from Minnesota demonstrated beaver ponds influenced the spatial assemblage of fish, as fish abundance was greater in upland ponds and species richness was greater in streams and collapsed ponds (i.e., ponds with degraded dams that were not actively retaining water; Schlosser and Kallemeyn 2000). Furthermore, species richness and species composition can vary within and among beaver ponds over time (Snodgrass and Meffe 1998), but to date, no study that has evaluated fish assemblages within beaver ponds has included a salmonid component. In addition to providing refuge for salmonids during summer months and periods of low flow, large pools above beaver dams may benefit salmonids by serving as overwintering habitat (Cunjak 1996; Virbickas et al. 2015). Many streams within the WGL region freeze during winter, so beaver ponds may provide valuable refuge for salmonids, but this has not been empirically tested to date. Conversely, extended ice cover on beaver ponds could also contribute to winter fish kills if conditions within the ponds become hypoxic (Fox and Keast 1990; Keast and Fox 1990).

Beaver ponds can also affect fish population dynamics by creating population source–sink relationships within stream systems (Schlosser 1995a, 1995b). Beaver ponds can offer greater rearing habitat availability within streams (Leidholt-Bruner et al. 1992), and the lateral habitats along the shallow littoral edges of beaver ponds may be critical for the survival of juvenile fish (Moore and Gregory 1988; Schlosser 1991, 1995b). Beaver ponds can thereby act as key source areas for fish species (Fausch et al. 2002), depending on the spatial variation of pond morphology and the permeability of pond boundaries within stream systems (Schlosser 1995a, 1998). For Brook Trout, beaver ponds serve as potential source areas due to the abundant benthic fauna that can be exploited (Gard 1961). Johnson et al. (1992) found beaver ponds with habitat factors promoting high Brook Trout densities actually led to localized populations of small, stunted Brook Trout, suggesting that Brook Trout growth rates are density dependent. Source–sink dynamics of fish populations are complex, and none of the studies that have found source–sink population dynamics within beaver ponds included salmonids in their evaluation. Given that beaver dams increase the complexity and heterogeneity of stream systems, it seems probable that source–sink dynamics of salmonid populations could develop within beaver pond complexes where fish may have access to a variety of habitats across suitable spatial and temporal scales.

Beaver activities can alter biotic interactions between salmonids and other species, potentially affecting predation risk. Beaver ponds provide habitat for a variety of avian and mammalian predators, including great blue herons *Ardea herodias*, ospreys *Pandion haliaetus*, mergansers *Mergus* spp., North American river otters *Lontra canadensis*, American mink *Neovison vison*, and northern raccoons *Procyon lotor* (Windels 2017). Because salmonids can become concentrated in beaver ponds, they may face increased predation pressure as a result (Salyer 1935; Needham 1938), although this has not been tested to date. In Wisconsin, reduced salmonid catch rates were noted after an increase in piscivorous fish populations, including Northern Pike *Esox lucius*, likely due to the shallow, grassy habitat and higher water temperatures within beaver ponds (Knudsen 1962). Conversely, the increased habitat heterogeneity from dam creation may provide refuge from predation for various life stages (Snodgrass and Meffe 1998).

Beaver activity has also been suggested to increase the prevalence of disease and parasites in salmonids (Knudsen 1962). Greater siltation and water temperatures can induce stress in salmonids, thereby increasing their susceptibility to disease (Grasse 1951; Wood and Armitage 1997; Gordon et al. 2004). Observations in Michigan streams showed an increased prevalence of trematodes associated with black spot disease (Miller 1940) and parasitic nematodes in salmonids inhabiting beaver ponds (Salyer 1935). The prevalence of gill lice *Salmincola edwardsii*, a parasite that is often found in beaver impoundments, has reportedly increased recently in several Wisconsin streams (WDNR 2015). More research is needed to understand whether beaver ponds are responsible for facilitating parasite proliferation within these stream systems.

Salmonid population densities in the WGL region have been shown to increase after beaver dam construction (Bradt 1935b; Salyer 1935; Hale and Jarvenpa 1950; Patterson 1951; Knudsen 1962). Similar to growth rates, angler catch rates within beaver ponds tend to be greater than those in other stream sections (Table 1), which could lead to misconceptions of larger salmonid population sizes than are actually present within the streams. In several Lake Superior tributaries within Minnesota, greater Brook Trout densities were actually found in streams with less beaver activity (Hale 1966). In several Pine County, Minnesota streams, the removal of beaver dams led to improvements in Brook Trout catch rates (Haugstad 1970). During a long-term Wisconsin study, the distribution and abundance of Brook Trout were substantially improved 4 and 18 years after beaver dam removal (Avery 2002); however, another Wisconsin study found that beaver dam removal had little impact on Brook Trout population density, while the density of younger Brown Trout and steelhead increased (DuBois and Schram 1993). Patterson (1951) found decreases in populations of Brook Trout and Brown Trout several years after beaver occupation of stream reaches, but the declines were likely influenced by intense angling pressure that occurred when fish were aggregating within the ponds.

Beaver dam removal projects can provide insight into salmonid population responses, but few studies have used a paired study design to objectively compare population responses. Moreover, because population responses may take several years to emerge (e.g., Avery 2002), accurate evaluations of how beavers influence salmonid populations likely require long-term monitoring plans that are often logistically challenging to implement. Future evaluations of how beaver dams influence salmonid population dynamics should include both a paired study design and a long-term monitoring plan in order to adequately evaluate population responses that may have a temporal delay.

Conclusions from Beaver–Salmonid Review

Our review found a dearth of empirical data evaluating beaver–salmonid interactions in the WGL region, limiting the conclusions we can draw from existing information on the subject. The majority of the studies occurred before 1970, and many studies relied heavily on anecdotal observations for their conclusions (Table 1). Few studies employed any statistical analysis, and only four studies were published in peer-reviewed journals. Species descriptions were often limited to "trout," which further obscures the generalizability of results. Nonetheless, the studies we reviewed are often used as justification for implementing beaver management programs (e.g., WDNR 2015) despite an absence of experimental controls or systematic sampling methodologies. Additionally, the majority of the WGL region studies we reviewed were conducted in clustered locations within the region (Figure 1). To date, no beaver–salmonid studies from Michigan, Minnesota, or Wisconsin have occurred outside of the Laurentian Mixed Forest Province, although we believe that most state agencies have a large amount of unpublished data pertaining to beaver–salmonid interactions. Considering the sparse information that is currently available to the public, we believe the dissemination of this data could provide valuable insight into how beavers affect salmonids within the region. However, as a result of funding and staff shortages, state agencies are often limited in their capacity to conduct and/or publish studies, likely contributing to the lack of publicly available data from the WGL region.

Despite the variability of results found within the WGL region, some patterns did emerge from the studies evaluated. Beaver activity tended to benefit salmonids during the first 2–4 years after dam construction. Salmonids likely take advantage of the pools and increased habitat heterogeneity that newly created impoundments offer them by using these features for refugia and food sources. Over time, however, the accumulation of sediment and alterations to water quality characteristics and discharge regimes often have a deleterious effect on local salmonid populations. Additionally, beaver activity was more often deleterious in low-gradient stream systems (i.e., slopes <2%; Rosgen 1994). The few studies evaluating the impact of beavers in relatively high-gradient systems (Salyer 1935; Evans 1948; Hale and Jarvenpa 1950; Hale 1966) reported positive effects more often than other studies. Beaver dams fail more frequently in high-gradient stream reaches (Gurnell 1998); thus, ponds upstream of dams in high-gradient reaches tend to be younger on average than those in low-gradient reaches. Ponds in high-gradient systems may fail before they are able to degrade and become unsuitable habitat for salmonids. Nonetheless, this general pattern has inconsistencies, as Hale (1966) reported that beaver dams within high-gradient streams in his study area often persisted beyond 4 years and resulted in ponds that were poor Brook Trout habitat.

REVIEW OF BEAVER MANAGEMENT ON SALMONID STREAMS IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION

Rise of Beaver–Salmonid Conflicts

Despite extensive poaching that occurred during closed trapping seasons in the 1920s, beavers had expanded their range to every major salmonid stream in Michigan by 1930 (Bradt 1935a; Salyer 1935). In response, the Michigan state legislature ordered the first beaver–salmonid study in 1933 (Bradt 1935a). The first report (Salyer 1935) was an extensive combination of field-based observations and experimental manipulations and relied heavily on input from local fish and game chapters that were noticeably divided about the "beaver problem." Results from experimental stream sections indicated beaver activity tended to be deleterious for salmonid populations (Table 1), but Salyer (1935) acknowledged that beavers could become an aid for salmonid streams if managed correctly, particularly in the high-gradient tributaries of Lake Superior. Salyer (1935) also suggested that a balance among the three desirable natural resources (beavers, salmonids, and forests) was needed (Figure 2); however, he did not elaborate on this point, and he concluded his report by noting that beavers should not occupy coldwater streams without active control.

In response to Salyer's (1935) report, the Civilian Conservation Corps removed more than 5,000 beaver dams from Michigan's coldwater streams over a 2-year period (Bradt 1947). This action was coupled with extensive trapping efforts and resulted in a precipitous decline in the Michigan beaver population. It should be noted that after the extensive beaver dam removal project, Michigan anglers noticed that fishing success actually declined in UP salmonid streams (Carbine 1944), suggesting that the project overshot its management goals. Indeed, although Carbine (1944) advocated for beaver control in the UP and believed that Salyer's (1935) assertion (i.e., beaver presence benefited salmonids in Lake Superior tributaries) was incorrect, he wrote "There is no denying that it was a sad day when that program was started" (Carbine 1944:29). Wildlife management was still in its infancy in the 1930s, and though Salyer's (1935) recommendations were aggressive and ultimately resulted in poorer fishing conditions, they were also emblematic of the growing emphasis placed on scientific research and experimental manipulation that characterized resource managers during his era. Salyer (1935) recognized that effectively managing for beaver, salmonid, and timber resources was a complex and polarizing issue requiring extensive research into understanding the intricacies of the beaver–salmonid relationship. His investigation laid the foundation for beaver–salmonid research in the WGL region, prompting managers in Minnesota and Wisconsin to begin similar investigations into beaver–salmonid interactions.

Controversy regarding beaver–salmonid management reached Wisconsin by the mid-1930s and was the catalyst for the first beaver dam removal efforts in that state (Hunt 1988), when 740 beaver dams were removed from northern Wisconsin streams (Christenson et al. 1961). Despite the harvest of nearly 50,000 beavers from 1934 to 1944, the beaver population continued to increase in the late 1940s (Christenson et al. 1961; Knudsen 1963). In 1949, the Wisconsin Conservation Department issued an official statement acknowledging the increasing problem that beavers posed to fish and timber management (Christenson et al. 1961), prompting a decade-long investigation to determine the best possible multiple-use management plan for beaver, salmonid, and forest resources (Knudsen 1962). Wisconsin Conservation Department trappers also live-trapped and relocated 2,200 nuisance beavers from 1951 to 1957 as part of the statewide beaver management plan (Knudsen and Hale 1965). Knudsen (1962) concluded that although beavers provide greater value to Wisconsin communities than previously assumed, salmonid and timber resources must be prioritized over beavers in some areas, particularly on slow-moving, low-gradient streams where beaver activity is detrimental to salmonid habitat. Management recommendations included adopting specialized harvest sites to reduce beaver impacts on salmonid streams and timber resources, but Knudsen (1962) proposed that beaver populations should otherwise be maximized due to the economic and aesthetic values associated with their presence. These management recommendations were emblematic of an increased focus on using adaptive management strategies that were more responsive to competing beaver, salmonid, and forest resources occupying the same area (Figure 2).

In Minnesota, three studies (Smith and Moyle 1944; Hale 1950, 1966) were conducted along the north shore of Lake Superior to evaluate the impacts of beaver impoundments on salmonid streams. Most of Minnesota had open trapping seasons starting in 1939, whereas the north shore of Lake Superior had closed or partially closed trapping seasons nearly every year into the 1960s (Hale 1966). Due to increased beaver activities in the region, higher stream temperatures were attributed to a lack of shade produced by beaver meadows (Smith and Moyle 1944). This led to a proposed management program for the Knife River in the 1940s, which included beaver and dam removal and stream habitat improvement projects (Smith and Moyle 1944). Most of the north shore streams are relatively high gradient, and results from Hale's (1950, 1966) studies indicated that beaver presence had some benefits for Brook Trout. Hale (1966) concluded that a low beaver population was preferable for the north shore watershed, but he did not recommend any particular management objectives.

Progression of Adaptive Management Strategies

As beaver management progressed throughout the WGL region, resource managers began to use adaptive management recommendations that emerged from early investigations. In the early years of beaver management, it was clear that some strategies had detrimental effects on beavers, salmonids, or both. Long-term studies like that conducted by Knudsen (1962) led to a new era of resource management that used an adaptive approach to evaluating beaver–salmonid–forest relationships (Figure 2).

Salmonid streams in east-central Minnesota tend to be low gradient; by the 1960s, the beaver population continued to grow (Figure 2; MNDNR, unpublished data), and anglers reported poor fishing conditions in beaver-occupied reaches. In response to a study that found beaver presence had a negative impact on salmonid populations (Haugstad 1970), a habitat improvement project began that centered on beaver dam removal and beaver eradication from the streams. Over a 2-year period, 617 beavers and 482 beaver dams were removed from east-central Minnesota streams, resulting in 120 km of "fair" to "good"-quality salmonid habitat and noticeably larger salmonid populations (Haugstad 1970). In addition to the regular open trapping season, professional and permit trappers assisted in the beaver eradication efforts. Despite some landowners' resistance to the eradication efforts, Haugstad (1970) concluded that a liberal beaver-trapping season should be used throughout counties with prime salmonid streams. Results from a later study within the same basin suggested that beaver activity negatively affected salmonids (Klein and Newman 1992), but the authors' management recommendations reflected a shift toward using a more nuanced approach to beaver–salmonid interactions. Klein and Newman (1992) recommended that managers should consider site-specific plans so as to balance the economic costs and ecological benefits incurred by conducting beaver management.

By the 1970s in Wisconsin, three main beaver control methods were utilized: (1) removal of beavers and structures by WDNR personnel; (2) removal of beavers and

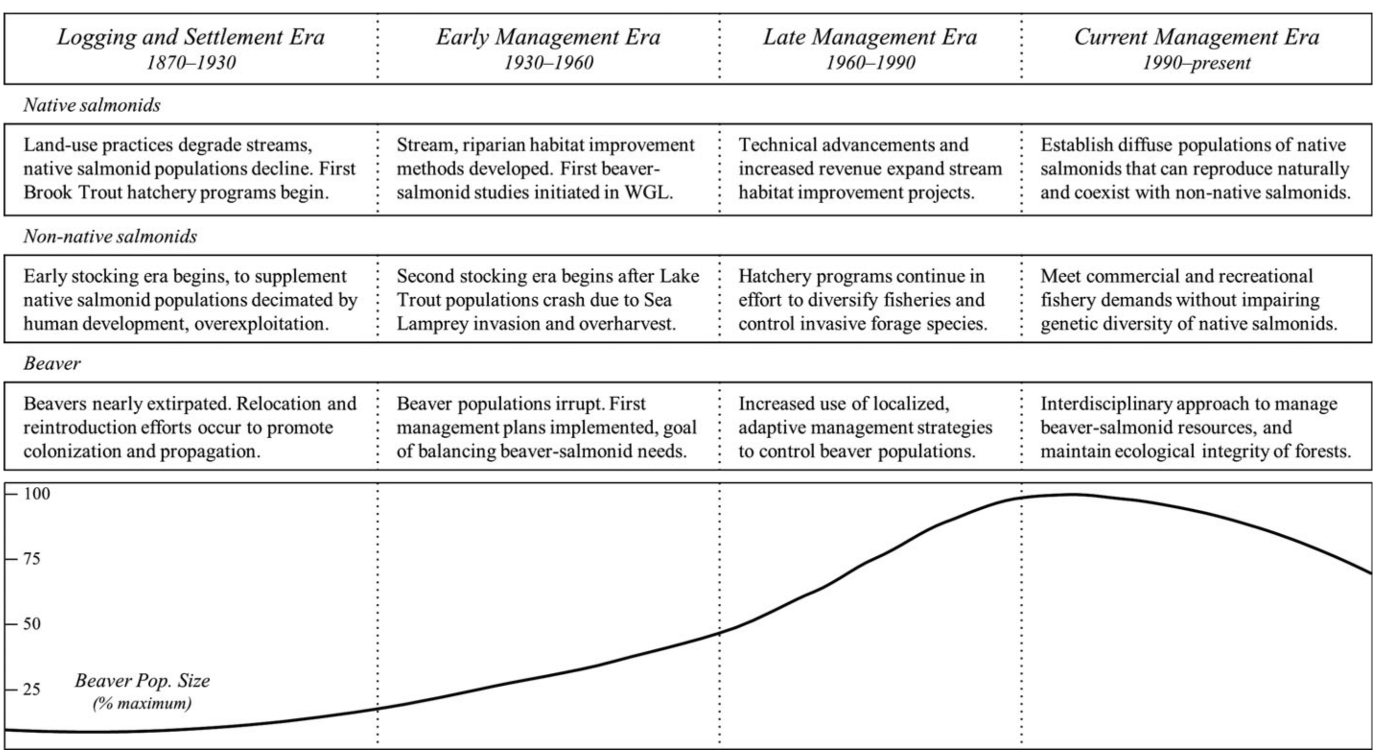


FIGURE 2. Timeline of major events from different management eras and a graph of the approximate beaver population trend from the western Great Lakes (WGL) region (1870–present). The beaver population trendline was estimated from a combination of historical pelt records (Obbard et al. 1987), unpublished beaver colony count data from the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, and population data from the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR 2015). Percent maximum refers to the percentage of the maximum beaver population size after European settlement. Presettlement beaver abundance is unknown but was likely 50–100% of the 1990 peak.

structures by permitted private citizens; and (3) extension of beaver seasons and regular bag limits on waters with recurring problems (Payne and Peterson 1986). Beaver and human populations continued to rise across the state at this time, along with the number of beaver complaints. An analysis of beaver complaint trends in two northern Wisconsin counties found that most complaints involved timber resources and roads, while fish habitat concerns comprised only 4–5% of all complaints (Payne and Peterson 1986). These results were similar to those reported across the state from 1950 to 1959, when fish-related complaints accounted for 5% of all beaver complaints (Knudsen 1962). It should be noted that beaver removal from salmonid streams was not limited to removals originating from complaints filed with the state, as extensive beaver dam removal projects by WDNR personnel were also occurring across Wisconsin.

Hunt (1988) suggested that beaver and dam removal was a widespread habitat management strategy used across Wisconsin from 1953 to 1985, although little data were available until the 1980s. An extensive dam removal effort occurred in Wisconsin's Pemonee River watershed, where 546 beaver dams were removed during 1982–1986 (Avery 1992). In the late 1980s, the WDNR began a partnership with the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) Animal Damage Control (ADC) program to conduct dam removal in salmonid streams (Dickerson 1989) in addition to supplemental trapping of beavers from individual streams (Ribic et al. 2017; Willging 2017). One such beaver management program has occurred since 1988 in the Chequamegon–Nicolet National Forest (CNNF; Willging 2017). The program targeted the most heavily impacted streams first, and in 1988 alone, 480 beavers and 668 beaver dams were removed from streams in the CNNF (Dickerson 1989). Since then, aerial and ground surveys have been conducted annually to identify beaver presence and inform beaver management priorities to maintain stream systems in free-flowing conditions (Willging 2017). Ribic et al. (2017) recently conducted an analysis on the long-term effects of the CNNF beaver program on beaver colony density through 2013; they found that the control program was successful in reducing beaver colony densities along targeted streams. The success of this management strategy is not entirely surprising, as history has repeatedly shown intense trapping efforts can successfully reduce or eradicate local beaver populations from an area. Nonetheless, the CNNF management program demonstrates the effectiveness of using a targeted approach to resolving a beaver–salmonid conflict and serves as an example of a program that has successfully used wildlife management to achieve its habitat restoration goals (Willging 2017).

The beaver and dam removal programs in Wisconsin began at a time when the beaver population was approaching its maximum level (Figure 2). Low fur prices likely discouraged recreational trapping efforts, causing the beaver population to spike and generating a resultant increase in the number of beaver complaints to over 2,000 annually (WDNR 1990). At this time, the WDNR also experimented with a trapper subsidy program to assist with population reduction efforts (WDNR 1990). A team was assembled in 1990 to overhaul beaver management strategies, which culminated in the development of the 1990 Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan (WDNR 1990). One of the key management objectives to emerge from the plan was the development of four distinct beaver management zones, each with slightly different regulations (WDNR 1990). The zones were primarily based on regional beaver densities, the frequency and category of beaver complaints, and the incorporation of regional waterfowl data, with the intent of designing a program that used a greater adaptive management approach. Regarding salmonid streams, the zones also differed in the quantity and quality of streams as determined by the 1980 statewide stream classification project (Kmiotek and Leveque 1980). Large, heavily impacted coldwater streams in the northern management zones were made a management priority, and a combination of USDA–APHIS–ADC personnel, WDNR trappers, and locally contracted trappers was used to conduct targeted beaver and dam removals similar to the CNNF program (WDNR 1990).

Current Beaver Management on Salmonid Streams

In 2001, the state of Michigan established its current beaver adaptive management program based on two primary principles: (1) beavers, salmonids, and their habitats are managed for human needs and wants; and (2) the less-common natural resource (i.e., coldwater streams) must be protected while still providing opportunities for beavers to exist (MDNR 2005). High-quality salmonid streams were identified by state fisheries divisions and were approved by designated ecoregion teams. Local managers are responsible for responding to complaints and determining nuisance beaver presence on salmonid streams. The management plan also states that a zone of intact vegetation is required around the streams in order to protect water quality, and this zone is managed by local forestry divisions to discourage beaver use. Nuisance control is carried out by a combination of MDNR Wildlife, Law Enforcement, Forest Management, and Parks and Recreation Management personnel, depending on the region and type of land (public or private) on which the nuisance beavers are located.

Since the 1970s, the MNDNR has used beaver management on salmonid streams to maintain connectivity and modify habitat conditions in selected Minnesota streams (D. Paron, MNDNR, personal communication). For example, the MNDNR has conducted beaver and beaver dam removal in the Knife River watershed since 1994. The watershed contains approximately half of all accessible adfluvial salmonid spawning and rearing habitat along the north shore of Lake Superior, making it a management priority in the region (MNDNR 2016). Relative to other north shore watersheds, the Knife River is comparatively low gradient and is one of the only areas where wild steelhead spawn. Beaver control is carried out by contract trappers and MNDNR personnel and is funded in part by revenue generated from fishing licenses and trout stamps (MNDNR 2016). In 2017, we began a research project to better understand the current and historical impacts that beaver activity has on north shore Brook Trout populations and to provide information on whether beaver management should be expanded into areas beyond the Knife River watershed.

In 2015, the WDNR created a "Beaver Task Force" to develop a new beaver management plan to be used through 2025 that is considerably more extensive than other management plans in the WGL region. The northern Wisconsin beaver population has been on a steady decline for the last two decades (Figure 2), prompting the WDNR to increase research efforts across the state (WDNR 2015). In particular, WDNR managers have adopted an interdisciplinary approach to better inform management practices by understanding the positive and negative effects that beavers have on their ecosystems. The WDNR received input from stakeholders across the state, including trappers, tribal communities, public and private land managers, biologists, and citizens, to create a plan that effectively addresses the multiple-use beaver–salmonid–forest management strategy that has existed in Wisconsin since the 1960s (WDNR 2015). The WDNR personnel plan to increase research throughout multiple ecoregions in the state, including the use of paired experimental design studies that incorporate reference streams for comparison with stream manipulations. At present, USDA–APHIS–ADC continues to conduct beaver control on 200 salmonid streams totaling approximately 2,400–2,700 km (WDNR 2015; Willging 2017).

MANAGEMENT IMPLICATIONS

Salmonid research and management have shifted toward using a landscape ecology perspective to understand how large-scale ecological processes influence the spatiotemporal dynamics of fish populations. The physical and hydrologic properties of landscapes can be applied with reasonable accuracy to describe the nature and quality of riverscapes (see earlier sections), and this perspective has led to significant advances in fish biology and management (Fausch et al. 2002). One of the difficulties with managing beaver–salmonid interactions is that beaver activity can affect salmonid habitat characteristics differently at the stream scale or even the reach scale, and resource managers are faced with reconciling these disparate perspectives of scale when managing beaver–salmonid conflicts. Early beaver management on salmonid streams was often conducted under the assumption that beavers' effects on salmonids in one area are transferrable to other areas in the region. However, managers have become increasingly cognizant of the spatial variability in the beaver–salmonid relationship, and there has been a greater focus on using small-scale, adaptive management strategies to resolve beaver–salmonid conflicts. Finely calibrated beaver and dam removal efforts may be just as effective as large-scale removal programs (McRae and Edwards 1994; Ribic et al. 2017), and this approach has the added benefit of minimizing the impact on local beaver populations.

There is also a temporal component of the beaver–salmonid relationship that could be considered when designing management plans. In our review, we commonly found that beaver dams may benefit salmonids in the first 2–4 years after dam creation before negative effects arise. We suggest that in some areas where beaver management occurs on an annual basis, an alternative management strategy could be to conduct beaver management more sporadically (e.g., every 3–5 years). This strategy may mitigate the long-term negative effects of beaver activity on salmonid populations while still preserving the short-term benefits and would also reduce the costs of labor and resources associated with conducting annual beaver management. Because dams generally persist on the landscape much longer in low-gradient streams than in high-gradient streams, this management strategy is probably more applicable to low-gradient stream systems. Intensive beaver control may nonetheless be needed in areas where other habitat restoration efforts occur simultaneously, as beaver presence for even a short period of time may nullify the resources invested in restoring stream habitats.

Numerous stakeholders are influenced by beaver–salmonid interactions, and striking a balance between the often-conflicting groups is no easy task (Willging 2017). Within the WGL region, nonprofit organizations such as Trout Unlimited and local steelhead groups are heavily involved with salmonid habitat management projects. Trout Unlimited has established successful partnerships with state and federal agencies to assist with salmonid management goals throughout the WGL region. Recently, the Lake Superior Steelhead Association was awarded multiple grants to conduct beaver dam removal and habitat rehabilitation within the Knife River watershed along Lake Superior (Minnesota Session Laws 2014, Chapter 256, Article 1, Section 2, Subdivision 5 [h]). Although nonprofit organizations advocating for beaver conservation are relatively uncommon throughout the region, many conservationists are opposed to beaver management programs on salmonid streams. Indeed, controversy over management strategies has existed in the WGL region since the first beaver–salmonid studies, and such controversy continues to this day (WDNR 2015). Considering that management decisions influence anglers, trappers, waterfowl hunters, foresters, and conservationists alike, resource managers must often make decisions that are unpopular with one or more of these groups. Where possible, the justification for making unpopular management decisions should be informed by empirically collected data that accurately characterize the nature of the beaver–salmonid relationship within the stream region(s) in question.

Many salmonid populations in the WGL region are nonnative species, which further complicates management priority decisions. The ecological impacts of nonnative salmonids on stream ecosystems have not been comprehensively evaluated across the WGL region, but their introduction likely has a significant effect on resource competition with native salmonids (Krueger and May 1991). Brown Trout were shown to exclude Brook Trout from resting positions in streams and to prey on juvenile Brook Trout in a Michigan stream (Fausch and White 1981); and Brown Trout replaced Brook Trout when habitat disturbances occurred in Valley Creek, Minnesota (Waters 1983). Nevertheless, many anglers prefer to fish for nonnative salmonids, thereby influencing management decisions in the WGL region. In streams along the north shore of Lake Superior, for example, anglers prefer to fish for nonnative steelhead and Kamloops Rainbow Trout *O. mykiss kamloops* over native Brook Trout (Gartner et al. 2002; Schroeder 2013). Per survey results, individual anglers along the north shore reported fishing for steelhead for more than 11 years on average (Gartner et al. 2002), indicating steelhead presence in coldwater streams has a long-term influence on anglers' decision to fish in these watersheds. Whether this preference will continue in the event that coaster Brook Trout populations recover remains to be seen. In its current state, angling culture in the WGL region often favors the preservation and even proliferation of nonnative salmonid populations despite the potential ecological consequences.

The effects from climate change may also have a substantial impact on salmonids. Many coldwater streams within the WGL region already approach the thermal tolerance for salmonids (Wehrly et al. 2003), and predicted increases in summer air temperatures could raise stream temperatures even further. Salmonids are expected to endure substantial habitat loss in the WGL region under projected climate change models (Sinokrot et al. 1995; Lyons et al. 2010; Herb et al. 2016), and beaver activity may exacerbate this problem in some areas. Contrarily, beaver ponds may offer valuable refugia for salmonids within streams during periods of drought by retaining water longer; for many wildlife species, beaver wetlands provide essential open-water habitat that actually mitigates the negative effects of drought (Hood and Bayley 2008). Beaver populations may also be negatively impacted by a changing climate, which further complicates this relationship. Little research has been conducted to evaluate the impact of climate on beavers, but preliminary research from Wisconsin indicates that both wetter years and years of moderate drought are associated with lower beaver colony densities (Ribic et al. 2017). Similarly, studies on the closely related Eurasian beaver *Castor fiber* suggest that increases in climatic variability and precipitation may negatively affect beaver reproduction and resource availability (Campbell et al. 2012, 2013, 2017). Understanding the complex beaver–salmonid relationship and implementing appropriate management plans may become even more challenging for researchers and managers in a changing climate, and future research should examine how this relationship could evolve.

Summary and Conclusions

Throughout the past century, there has been a dramatic shift in beaver management practices occurring throughout the WGL region. Following the near extirpation of beavers due to overharvest and habitat loss, early management was focused on promoting population growth through reintroductions and closed trapping seasons. Beaver populations rebounded within a few decades, and new management goals aimed at population control were established throughout the region. The first beaver control measures on salmonid streams—and in the region in general—tended to overshoot their targets and often led to significant declines in local beaver populations. By incorporating scientific-based research into game and fish management, over time resource managers increasingly used localized, adaptive management strategies to mediate beaver–salmonid interactions.

The Great Lakes region once supported abundant populations of native salmonids, attracting anglers from afar and providing an economic resource to local communities. Due to overexploitation, habitat degradation, and competition with nonnative species, native salmonid populations crashed, prompting rehabilitation efforts throughout the WGL region. Despite the varying success of historical salmonid stocking programs, their impact on modern-day fisheries and fishery management practices cannot be understated. Today, habitat degradation and climate change are considered among the most serious management issues concerning salmonid populations within the WGL region, and many agencies are involved in the continuous monitoring of stream systems and local salmonid populations. The degree to which beaver management is prioritized as a habitat restoration tool varies greatly within the WGL region, ranging from a peripheral component of many management plans to an integral component of others. Nonetheless, the beaver–salmonid relationship has received considerable interest from public and scientific communities alike, and this issue has remained contentious within the WGL region since it first arose nearly a century ago. Agencies are currently addressing beaver–salmonid interactions through an ongoing effort to co-manage each species at sustainable population levels while recognizing the recreational and ecological impacts generated by each species.

Most of the research conducted in the WGL region has demonstrated a deleterious effect of beaver activity on salmonid populations, but we found several examples in which beaver activity benefited salmonids (Table 1). We have highlighted numerous information gaps throughout this review that could enhance our understanding of the beaver–salmonid relationship, and we identified scenarios in which salmonids may benefit from beaver presence. All three states in the WGL region have prioritized the habitat requirements of salmonids over the presence of beavers in portions of the state, primarily because coldwater streams are a scarcer resource and angling is a popular source of recreation for citizens. As ecosystem engineers and a keystone species, beavers provide valuable ecological services to forest ecosystems in the WGL region (Johnston 2017), and the removal of beavers from stream reaches where their presence may actually benefit salmonids results in a lose–lose situation for forest ecosystems and natural resource management goals. We suggest that the decision to remove beavers from coldwater streams should involve consideration of the secondary ecosystem consequences associated with decreased beaver presence before such management plans are implemented.

Prior to European colonization, beavers and salmonids (native Brook Trout) were presumably able to coexist on the landscape without human intervention, and interactions between the two taxa were therefore the result of natural ecological processes within WGL stream ecosystems. What is different now from historical conditions? Why do many areas within the WGL region now require beaver control in order to maintain healthy, sustainable salmonid populations? Many resource managers believe that due to the increase in young forest, beaver populations are larger now than they were historically, although this hypothesis has yet to be rigorously tested. It is possible beaver activities have always had a predominantly negative impact on salmonids (Brook Trout) in the WGL region and that the natural ecological processes were very similar to what is found in the region today. Anglers may therefore expect larger salmonid populations in WGL streams than are supportable based on natural processes. Identifying the historical conditions that existed prior to European colonization may provide insight into how beaver–salmonid relationships have deviated from natural dynamics over the past three centuries (beyond the introduction of nonnative salmonids to WGL streams), and such information could be used to guide current and future resource management plans for coldwater streams. Even with historical context, resource managers will still often be confronted with the ecological and ethical dilemma that many currently face: should WGL coldwater streams be managed for the benefit of maintaining robust, well-dispersed salmonid populations, or should they be managed to replicate "natural" ecological processes, even to the potential detriment of salmonids? The answer to this question will undoubtedly vary throughout the WGL region, depending on local ecological conditions and cultural and resource management priorities. We hope that our synthesis serves as a catalyst for further beaver–salmonid research from the WGL region and encourages scientifically based management plans that identify when and where beaver control is necessary to achieve the desired resource management objectives.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Dean Paron, Brian Nerbonne, Don Schreiner, Nathaniel Stewart, Max Wolter, and Heidi Rantala for insightful comments on earlier versions of the manuscript. We are also grateful to Jeff Mosher for providing current stocking program information from Wisconsin. We appreciate the three anonymous reviewers for comments that improved the manuscript. Funding for this project was provided by the University of Minnesota Duluth, Bemidji State University, and the Minnesota Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund, as recommended by the Legislative-Citizen Commission on Minnesota Resources (Minnesota Session Laws 2016, Chapter 186, Section 2, Subdivision 3 [j]). There is no conflict of interest declared in this article.

ORCID

Sean M. Johnson-Bice http://orcid.org/0000-0001-7538-131X
Kathryn M. Renik http://orcid.org/0000-0001-8030-2989
Steve K. Windels http://orcid.org/0000-0002-2443-9363

REFERENCES

Adams, A. K. 1949. Beaver–trout investigations in Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fish Division, Fisheries Research Report Number 1213, Lansing.

Adams, A. K. 1954. Some physico-chemical effects of beaver dams upon Michigan trout streams in the Watersmeet area. Doctoral dissertation. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor.

Alcoze, T. M. 1981. Pre-settlement beaver population density in the upper Great Lakes region. Doctoral dissertation. Michigan State University, East Lansing.

Aldous, S. E. 1938. Beaver food utilization studies. Journal of Wildlife Management 2:215–222.

Alexander, G. R., and E. A. Hansen. 1986. Sand bed load in a Brook Trout stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6:9–23.

Allen, A. W. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: beaver. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service FWS/OBS-82/10.30.

Anderson, J., N. Baratono, A. Streitz, J. Magner, and E. S. Verry. 2006. Effect of historical logging on geomorphology, hydrology, and water quality in the Little Fork River watershed. Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, Environmental Outcomes and Regional Divisions, St. Paul.

Armstrong, J. D., P. S. Kemp, G. J. A. Kennedy, M. Ladle, and N. J. Milner. 2003. Habitat requirements of Atlantic Salmon and Brown Trout in rivers and streams. Fisheries Research 62:143–170.

Avery, E. L. 1992. Effects of removing beaver dams upon a northern Wisconsin Brook Trout stream. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Federal Aid in Fish Restoration, Project F-83R, Final Report, Madison.

Avery, E. L. 2002. Fish community and habitat responses in a northern Wisconsin Brook Trout stream 18 years after beaver dam removal. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Federal Aid in Sport Fish Restoration, Project F-95-P, Final Report, Madison.

Avery, E. L. 2004. A compendium of 58 trout stream habitat development evaluations in Wisconsin, 1985–2000. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Research Report Number 187, Madison.

Baker, B. W., and E. P. Hill. 2003. Beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Pages 288–310 *in* G. A. Feldhamer, B. C. Thompson, and J. A. Chapman, editors. Wild mammals of North America: biology, management, and conservation. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Maryland.

Beechie, T. J., H. Moir, and G. R. Pess. 2008. Hierarchical physical controls on salmonid spawning location and timing. Pages 83–101 *in* D. A. Sear and P. DeVries, editors. Salmonid spawning habitat in rivers: physical controls, biological responses, and approaches to remediation. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.

Benson, R. L. 2002. Estimation of Brook Trout movement in a beaver pond complex using multi-state capture–recapture models: examination of restricted movement. Master's thesis. University of Montana, Missoula.

Bertolo, A., P. Magnan, and M. Plante. 2008. Linking the occurrence of Brook Trout with isolation and extinction in small Boreal Shield lakes. Freshwater Biology 53:304–321.

Biette, R. M., D. P. Dodge, R. L. Hassinger, and T. M. Stauffer. 1981. Life history and timing of migrations and spawning behavior of Rainbow Trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) populations of the Great Lakes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38:1759–1771.

Bjornn, T. C., and D. Reiser. 1991. Habitat requirements of salmonids in streams. Pages 83–138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of forest and rangeland management on salmonid fishes and their habitats. American Fisheries Society, Special Publication 19, Bethesda, Maryland.

Bł dzki, L. A., J. L. Bubier, L. A. Moulton, and T. D. Kyker-Snowman. 2010. Downstream effects of beaver ponds on the water quality of New England first- and second-order streams. Ecohydrology 4:698–707.

Boitani, L. 2010. Wolf conservation and recovery. Pages 317–340 *in* L. D. Mech and L. Boitani, editors. Wolves. University of Chicago Press, Chicago.

Bouwes, N., N. Weber, C. E. Jordan, W. C. Saunders, I. A. Tattam, C. Volk, J. M. Wheaton, and M. M. Pollock. 2016. Ecosystem experiment reveals benefits of natural and simulated beaver dams to a threatened population of steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Scientific Reports 6:28581.

Bradt, G. W. 1935a. Beaver–trout management activities. Michigan Department of Conservation, Fisheries Research Report Number 316, Ann Arbor.

Bradt, G. W. 1935b. Michigan's beaver–trout management program. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 65:253–257.

Bradt, G. W. 1947. Michigan beaver management. Michigan Department of Conservation, Game Division, Lansing.

Bruner, K. L. 1989. Effects of beaver on streams, streamside habitat, and Coho Salmon fry populations in two coastal Oregon streams. Master's thesis. Oregon State University, Corvallis.

Burchsted, D., M. D. Daniels, R. Thorson, and J. Vokoun. 2010. The river discontinuum: applying beaver modifications to baseline conditions for restoration of forested headwaters. BioScience 60:908–922.

Burnham-Curtis, M. K. 2000. Genetic profiles of selected Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* populations from Lake Superior. Research completion report prepared for the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Ashland Fisheries Resource Office, Ashland, Wisconsin.

Bylak, A., K. Kukuła, and J. Mitka. 2014. Beaver impact on stream fish life histories: the role of landscape and local attributes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 71:1603–1615.

Call, M. W. 1970. Beaver pond ecology and beaver–trout relationships in southeastern Wyoming. Doctoral dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie.

Campbell, R. D., C. Newman, D. W. Macdonald, and F. Rosell. 2013. Proximate weather patterns and spring green-up phenology effect Eurasian beaver (*Castor fiber*) body mass and reproductive success: the implications of climate change and topography. Global Change Biology 19:1311–1324.

Campbell, R. D., P. Nouvellet, C. Newman, D. W. Macdonald, and F. Rosell. 2012. The influence of mean climate trends and climate variance on beaver survival and recruitment dynamics. Global Change Biology 18:2730–2742.

Campbell, R. D., F. Rosell, C. Newman, and D. W. Macdonald. 2017. Age-related changes in somatic condition and reproduction in the Eurasian beaver: resource history influences onset of reproductive senescence. PLoS ONE [online serial] 12(12):e0187484.

Carbine, W. F. 1944. Results of the beaver–trout investigation in the Upper Peninsula. Michigan Department of Conservation, Institute for Fisheries Research, Fisheries Research Report Number 953, Ann Arbor.

Carl, L. M. 1982. Natural reproduction of Coho Salmon and Chinook Salmon in some Michigan Streams. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 2:375–380.

Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical review of variables used to define effects of fines in redds of large salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:1–21.

Christenson, L. M., A. E. Ehly, J. B. Hale, R. H. Hovind, J. M. Keener, C. Kabat, G. J. Knudsen, and D. J. O'Donnell. 1961. Beaver–trout–forest relationships. Wisconsin Conservation Department, Madison.

Cirmo, C. P., and C. T. Driscoll. 1993. Beaver pond biogeochemistry: acid neutralizing capacity generation in a headwater wetland. Wetlands 13:277–292.

Cleland, D. T., J. A. Freeouf, J. E. Keys, G. J. Nowacki, C. A. Carpenter, and W. H. McNab. 2007. Ecological subregions: sections and subsections for the conterminous United States. U.S. Forest Service General Technical Report WO-76D.

Collen, P., and R. J. Gibson. 2001. The general ecology of beavers (*Castor* spp.), as related to their influence on stream ecosystems and riparian habitats, and the subsequent effects on fish—a review. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 10:439–461.

Cook, D. B. 1940. Beaver–trout relations. Journal of Mammalogy 21:397–401.

Crawford, S. S. 2001. Salmonine introductions to the Laurentian Great Lakes. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 132.

Crisp, D. T. 1996. Environmental requirements of common riverine European salmonid fish species in fresh water with particular reference to physical and chemical aspects. Hydrobiologia 323:201–221.

Cunjak, R. A. 1996. Winter habitat of selected stream fishes and potential impacts from land-use activity. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53(S1):267–282.

Curry, R. A., and D. L. G. Noakes. 1995. Groundwater and the selection of spawning sites by Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1733–1740.

D'Amelio, S. 2002. Conservation genetics and metapopulation structure of Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) in Nipigon Bay (Lake Superior, Ontario). Master's thesis. Trent University, Peterborough, Ontario.

Dickerson, L. 1989. Beaver and dam removal in Wisconsin trout streams. Presented at the Fourth Eastern Wildlife Damage Control Conference. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Rhinelander, Wisconsin.

Dillon, P. J., L. A. Molot, and W. A. Scheider. 1991. Phosphorus and nitrogen export from forested stream catchments in central Ontario. Journal of Environmental Quality 20:857–864.

DuBois, R. B., and D. M. Pratt. 1994. History of the fishes of the Bois Brule River system, Wisconsin, with emphasis on the salmonids and their management. Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters 82:33–71.

DuBois, R. B., and S. T. Schram. 1993. Salmonid population trends following stream-bank debrushing and beaver control on a Lake Superior tributary. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Research Report Number 157, Madison.

Dumke, J. D., T. R. Hrabik, V. J. Brady, K. B. Gran, R. R. Regal, and M. J. Seider. 2010. Channel morphology response to selective wood removals in a sand-laden Wisconsin trout stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 30:776–790.

Dunaway, D., S. R. Swanson, J. Wendel, and W. Clary. 1994. The effect of herbaceous plant communities and soil textures on particle erosion of alluvial streambanks. Geomorphology 9:47–56.

Dunne, T., and L. B. Leopold, editors. 1978. Water in environmental planning. Freeman, San Francisco.

Ecke, F., O. Levanoni, J. Audet, P. Carlson, K. Eklöf, G. Hartman, B. McKie, J. Ledesma, J. Segersten, A. Truchy, and M. Futter. 2017. Meta-analysis of environmental effects of beaver in relation to artificial dams. Environmental Research Letters 12(11):113002.

Emery, L. 1985. Review of fish species introduced into the Great Lakes, 1819–1974. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 45.

Essington, T. E., P. W. Sorensen, and D. G. Paron. 1998. High rate of redd superimposition by Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) and Brown Trout (*Salmo trutta*) in a Minnesota stream cannot be explained by habitat availability alone. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55:2310–2316.

Evans, T. R. 1948. Beaver–trout–waterfowl problems. Proceedings of the Midwest Wildlife Conference 10:1–15.

Fausch, K. D., C. E. Torgersen, C. V. Baxter, and H. W. Li. 2002. Landscapes to riverscapes: bridging the gap between research and conservation of stream fishes. BioScience 52:483–498.

Fausch, K. D., and R. J. White. 1981. Competition between Brook Trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) and Brown Trout (*Salmo trutta*) for positions in a Michigan stream. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38:1220–1227.

Finnegan, R. J., and D. E. Marshall. 1997. Managing beaver habitat for salmonids: working with beavers. Pages 15.1–15.11 *in* P. A. Slaney and D. Zaldokas, editors. Fish habitat rehabilitation procedures. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks, Watershed Restoration Program, Vancouver.

Fitzpatrick, F. A., and J. C. Knox. 2000. Spatial and temporal sensitivity of hydrogeomorphic response and recovery to deforestation, agriculture, and floods. Physical Geography 21(2):89–108.

Fox, M. G., and A. Keast. 1990. Effects of winterkill on population structure, body size, and prey consumption patterns of Pumpkinseed in isolated beaver ponds. Canadian Journal of Zoology 68:2489–2498.

Friedman, S. K., and P. B. Reich. 2005. Regional legacies of logging: departure from presettlement forest conditions in northern Minnesota. Ecological Applications 15:726–744.

Gable, T. D., and S. K. Windels. 2018. Kill rates and predation rates of wolves on beavers. Journal of Wildlife Management 82:466–472.

Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, and J. G. Bruggink. 2017. The problems with pooling poop: confronting sampling method biases in wolf (*Canis lupus*) diet studies. Canadian Journal of Zoology 95:843–851.

Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, J. G. Bruggink, and A. T. Homkes. 2016. Where and how wolves (*Canis lupus*) kill beavers (*Castor canadensis*). PLoS ONE [online serial] 11(12):e0165537.

Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, M. C. Romanski, and F. Rosell. 2018. The forgotten prey of an iconic predator: a review of interactions between grey wolves *Canis lupus* and beavers *Castor* spp. Mammal Review 48:123–138.

Gard, R. 1961. Effects of beaver on trout in Sagehen Creek. California. Journal of Wildlife Management 25:221–242.

Gartner, W. C., L. L. Love, D. Erkkila, and D. C. Fulton. 2002. Economic impact and social benefits study of coldwater angling in Minnesota. Prepared for the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources by the Tourism Center, University of Minnesota Extension Service, St. Paul.

Geist, D. R., and D. D. Dauble. 1998. Redd site selection and spawning habitat use by fall Chinook Salmon: the importance of geomorphic features in large rivers. Environmental Management 22:655–669.

Goldsworthy, C. A., K. A. Reeves, J. E. Blankenheim, and N. R. Peterson. 2016. Fisheries management plan for the Minnesota waters of Lake Superior, 3rd edition. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, Special Publication 181, Duluth.

Gordon, N. D., T. A. McMahon, B. L. Finlayson, C. J. Gippel, and R. J. Nathan. 2004. Stream hydrology: an introduction for ecologists, 2nd edition. Wiley, Chichester, West Sussex, UK.

Grasse, J. E. 1951. Beaver ecology and management in the Rockies. Journal of Forestry 49:3–6.

Grasse, J. E., and E. F. Putnam. 1955. Beaver management and ecology in Wyoming. Wyoming Game and Fish Commission, Bulletin Number 6, Cheyenne.

Great Lakes Fishery Commission. 2018. Great Lakes fish stocking database. Great Lakes Fishery Commission, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Gurnell, A. M. 1998. The hydrogeomorphological effects of beaver dam-building activity. Progress in Physical Geography 22:167–189.

Hägglund, Å., and G. Sjöberg. 1999. Effects of beaver dams on the fish fauna of forest streams. Forest Ecology and Management 115:259–266.

Hale, J. G. 1950. Trout populations and catches during 1950 in three northeastern Minnesota trout streams, including comparisons in catch from beaver ponds, improved, and unimproved sectors. Minnesota Department of Conservation, Investigational Report Number 105, St. Paul.

Hale, J. G. 1966. Influence of beaver on some trout streams along the Minnesota north shore of Lake Superior. Minnesota Department of Conservation, Investigational Report Number 244, St. Paul.

Hale, J. G., and O. Jarvenpa. 1950. Beaver–trout relations on the north shore of Lake Superior watershed. Minnesota Department of Conservation, Investigational Report Number 143, St. Paul.

Hall, J. G. 1960. Willow and aspen in the ecology of beaver on Sagehen Creek, California. Ecology 41:484–494.

Hartman, G. 1994. Long-term population development of a reintroduced beaver (*Castor fiber*) population in Sweden. Conservation Biology 8:713–717.

Haugstad, M. C. 1970. Trout habitat control in Minnesota. Minnesota Conservation Department, St. Paul.

Herb, W., K. Blann, L. Johnson, R. Garono, J. Jereczek, M. White, and H. Sorensen. 2016. Sustaining Minnesota's Lake Superior tributaries in a changing climate. Final Report to the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Office for Coastal Management, by the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, University of Minnesota–Duluth, and The Nature Conservancy, Duluth, Minnesota.

Hood, G. A., and S. E. Bayley. 2008. Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) mitigate the effects of climate on the area of open water in boreal wetlands in western Canada. Biological Conservation 141:556–567.

Huckins, C. J., E. A. Baker, K. D. Fausch, and J. B. K. Leonard. 2008. Ecology and life history of coaster Brook Trout and potential bottlenecks in their rehabilitation. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1321–1342.

Hunt, R. L. 1988. A compendium of 45 stream habitat development evaluations in Wisconsin during 1953–1985. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Technical Bulletin Number 162, Madison.

Johnson, S. L., F. J. Rahel, and W. A. Hubert. 1992. Factors influencing the size structure of Brook Trout populations in Wyoming beaver ponds. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 12:118–124.

Johnston, C. A. 2012. Beaver wetlands. Pages 161–171 *in* D. P. Batzer and A. Baldwin, editors. Wetland habitats of North America: ecology and conservation concerns. University of California Press, Berkeley.

Johnston, C. A. 2014. Beaver pond effects on carbon storage in soils. Geoderma 213:371–378.

Johnston, C. A. 2017. Beavers: boreal ecosystem engineers. Springer, Cham, Switzerland.

Johnston, C. A., and R. J. Naiman. 1987. Boundary dynamics at the aquatic–terrestrial interface: the influence of beaver and geomorphology. Landscape Ecology 1:47–57.

Keast, A., and M. G. Fox. 1990. Fish community structure, spatial distribution and feeding ecology in a beaver pond. Environmental Biology of Fishes 27:201–214.

Kemp, P. S., T. A. Worthington, T. E. L. Langford, A. R. J. Tree, and M. J. Gaywood. 2012. Qualitative and quantitative effects of reintroduced beavers on stream fish. Fish and Fisheries 13:158–181.

Klein, M. M., and R. M. Newman. 1992. The effects of beaver dams on trout and trout streams in Pine County, Minnesota. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, St. Paul.

Kmiotek, S., and D. Leveque. 1980. Wisconsin trout streams. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Publication 6-3600(80), Madison.

Knudsen, G. J. 1962. Relationship of beaver to forests, trout and wildlife in Wisconsin. Wisconsin Department of Conservation, Technical Bulletin Number 25, Madison.

Knudsen, G. J. 1963. History of beaver in Wisconsin. Wisconsin Department of Conservation, Miscellaneous Research Report Number 7, Madison.

Knudsen, G. J., and J. B. Hale. 1965. Movements of transplanted beavers in Wisconsin. Journal of Wildlife Management 29:685–688.

Kondolf, G. M., and M. G. Wolman. 1993. The sizes of salmonid spawning gravels. Water Resources Research 29:2275–2285.

Kondratieff, M. C., and C. A. Myrick. 2006. How high can Brook Trout jump? A laboratory evaluation of Brook Trout jumping performance. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135:361–370.

Krueger, C. C., and B. May. 1991. Ecological and genetic effects of salmonid introductions in North America. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48(S1):66–77.

Lawrie, A. H., and J. F. Rahrer. 1973. Lake Superior: a case history of the lake and its fisheries. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 19.

Leidholt-Bruner, K., D. E. Hibbs, and W. C. McComb. 1992. Beaver dam locations and their effects on distribution and abundance of Coho Salmon fry in two coastal Oregon streams. Northwest Science 66:218–223.

Levine, R., and G. A. Meyer. 2014. Beaver dams and channel sediment dynamics on Odell Creek, Centennial Valley, Montana, USA. Geomorphology 205(Supplement C):51–64.

Lisle, T. E. 2010. Effects of aggradation and degradation on riffle–pool morphology in natural gravel channels, northwestern California. Water Resources Research 18:1643–1651.

Lokteff, R. L., B. B. Roper, and J. M. Wheaton. 2013. Do beaver dams impede the movement of trout? Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 142:1114–1125.

Longley, W. H., and J. B. Moyle. 1963. The beaver in Minnesota. Minnesota Department of Conservation Technical Bulletin 6.

Lowry, M. M. 1993. Groundwater elevations and temperature adjacent to a beaver pond in central Oregon. Master's thesis. Oregon State University, Corvallis.

Lyons, J. 1996. Patterns in the species composition of fish assemblages among Wisconsin streams. Environmental Biology of Fishes 45:329–341.

Lyons, J., J. S. Stewart, and M. Mitro. 2010. Predicted effects of climate warming on the distribution of 50 stream fishes in Wisconsin, U.S.A. Journal of Fish Biology 77:1867–1898.

Majerova, M., B. T. Neilson, N. M. Schmadel, J. M. Wheaton, and C. J. Snow. 2015. Impacts of beaver dams on hydrologic and temperature regimes in a mountain stream. Hydrology and Earth System Sciences 19:3541–3556.

Margolis, B. E., M. S. Castro, and R. L. Raesly. 2001. The impact of beaver impoundments on the water chemistry of two Appalachian streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:2271–2283.

McCaffery, M. 2009. The influence of an ecosystem engineer on nutrient subsidies and fish invasions in southwestern Montana. Doctoral dissertation. University of Montana, Missoula.

McDowell, D. M., and R. J. Naiman. 1986. Structure and function of a benthic invertebrate stream community as influenced by beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Oecologia 68:481–489.

McMahon, T. E. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: Coho Salmon. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Division of Biological Services, Research and Development, Western Energy and Land Use Team, Washington, D.C.

McRae, G., and C. J. Edwards. 1994. Thermal characteristics of Wisconsin headwater streams occupied by beaver: implications for Brook Trout habitat. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:641–656.

MDNR (Michigan Department of Natural Resources). 2005. Beaver management. MDNR, Policies and Procedures 39.21-20, Lansing.

MDNR (Michigan Department of Natural Resources). 2018. Fish stocking database. MDNR, Lansing. Available: http://www.michigandnr.com/fishstock/. (October 2018).

Mech, L. D. 1970. The wolf: the ecology and behavior of an endangered species. University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.

Miller, M. J. 1940. Black spot in fishes. Canadian Journal of Comparative Medicine and Veterinary Science 4:303–305.

Mills, E. L., J. H. Leach, J. T. Carlton, and C. L. Secor. 1993. Exotic species in the Great Lakes: a history of biotic crises and anthropogenic introductions. Journal of Great Lakes Research 19:1–54.

Mitchell, S. C., and R. A. Cunjak. 2007. Stream flow, salmon and beaver dams: roles in the structuring of stream fish communities within an anadromous salmon dominated stream. Journal of Animal Ecology 76:1062–1074.

MNDNR (Minnesota Department of Natural Resources). 2016. Lake Superior Fisheries Management Plan addendum #1: beaver management on trout streams. MNDNR, Duluth.

Moore, K. M. S., and S. V. Gregory. 1988. Summer habitat utilization and ecology of Cutthroat Trout fry (*Salmo clarki*) in Cascade

Mountain streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 45:1921–1930.
Müller-Schwarze, D. 2011. The beaver: its life and impact, 2nd edition. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, New York.
Naiman, R. J., C. A. Johnston, and J. C. Kelley. 1988. Alteration of North American streams by beaver. BioScience 38:753–762.
Naiman, R. J., J. M. Melillo, and J. E. Hobbie. 1986. Ecosystem alteration of boreal forest streams by beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Ecology 67:1254–1269.
Naiman, R. J., G. Pinay, C. A. Johnston, and J Pastor. 1994. Beaver influences on the long-term biogeochemical characteristics of boreal forest drainage networks. Ecology 75:905–921.
Needham, P. R. 1938. Trout streams: conditions that determine their productivity and suggestions for stream and lake management. Comstock Publishing, Ithaca, New York.
Neff, B. P., A. R. Piggott, and R. A. Sheets. 2005. Estimation of shallow ground-water recharge in the Great Lakes basin. U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2005-5284.
Newman, L. E., R. B. DuBois, and T. N. Halpern, editors. 2003. A Brook Trout rehabilitation plan for Lake Superior. Great Lakes Fishery Commission, Miscellaneous Publication 2003-03, Ann Arbor, Michigan.
Obbard, M. E., J. E. Jones, R. Newman, A. Booth, A. J. Satterthwaite, and G. Linscombe. 1987. Furbearer harvests in North America. Pages 1007–1034 *in* M. Novak, J. A. Baker, M. E. Obbard, and B. Malloch, editors. Wild furbearer management and conservation in North America. Queen's Printer for Ontario, Toronto.
Omernik, J. M., and A. L. Gallant. 1988. Ecoregions of the upper Midwest states. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/600/3-88/037, Corvallis, Oregon.
Parker, M. 1986. Beaver, water quality and riparian systems. Wyoming Water Resources Center, Laramie.
Parsons, J. W. 1973. History of salmon in the Great Lakes, 1850–1970. U.S. Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife, Technical Paper Number 68, Washington, D.C.
Patterson, D. 1951. Beaver–trout relationships. Wisconsin Conservation Department, Investigative Report Number 822, Madison.
Payne, B. A., and M. F. Lapointe. 1997. Channel morphology and lateral stability: effects on distribution of spawning and rearing habitat for Atlantic Salmon in a wandering cobble-bed river. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:2627–2636.
Payne, N. F., and R. P. Peterson. 1986. Trends in complaints of beaver damage in Wisconsin. Wildlife Society Bulletin 14:303–307.
Peterson, N. R. 2012. Stream temperature report. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, Federal Aid in Sport Fish Restoration, Project F-29-R(P)30 (Year 2), Completion Report, St. Paul.
Pollock, M. M., T. J. Beechie, J. M. Wheaton, C. E. Jordan, N. Bouwes, N. Weber, and C. Volk. 2014. Using beaver dams to restore incised stream ecosystems. BioScience 64:279–290.
Pollock, M. M., R. J. Naiman, H. E. Erickson, C. A. Johnston, J. Pastor, and G. Pinay. 1995. Beaver as engineers: influences on biotic and abiotic characteristics of drainage basins. Pages 117–126 *in* C. G. Jones and J. H. Lawton, editors. Linking species and ecosystems. Springer, Boston.
Popelars, J. D. 2008. Using GIS to reevaluate beaver dam effects on local environments in northern Wisconsin Brook Trout streams during the 1980s. Saint Mary's University of Minnesota, Central Services Press, Papers in Resource Analysis, Winona.
Ribic, C. A., D. M. Donner, A. J. Beck, D. J. Rugg, S. Reinecke, and D. Eklund. 2017. Beaver colony density trends on the Chequamegon-Nicolet National Forest, 1987–2013. PLoS ONE [online serial] 12(1): e0170099.
Ridgway, M. S. 2008. A roadmap for coasters: landscapes, life histories, and the conservation of Brook Trout. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 137:1179–1191.
Rosell, F., P. Collen, H. Parker, and O. Bozser. 2005. Ecological impact of beavers *Castor fiber* and *Castor canadensis* and their ability to modify ecosystems. Mammal Review 35:248–276.
Rosell, F., and H. Parker. 1996. The beaver's (*Castor* spp.) role in forest ecology: a key species returns. Fauna 49:192–211.
Rosgen, D. L. 1994. A classification of natural rivers. Catena 22:169–199.
Ross, F. E. 1938. The fur trade of the western Great Lakes region. Minnesota History 19:271–307.
Rupp, R. S. 1955. Beaver–trout relationship in the headwaters of Sunkhaze Stream, Maine. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 84:75–85.
Salyer, J. C. II. 1935. Preliminary report on the beaver–trout investigation. American Game 24(6):13–15.
Schlosser, I. J. 1991. Stream fish ecology: a landscape perspective. BioScience 41:704–712.
Schlosser, I. J. 1995a. Dispersal, boundary processes, and trophic-level interactions in streams adjacent to beaver ponds. Ecology 76:908–925.
Schlosser, I. J. 1995b. Critical landscape attributes that influence fish population dynamics in headwater streams. Hydrobiologia 303(1–3):71–81.
Schlosser, I. J. 1998. Fish recruitment, dispersal, and trophic interactions in a heterogeneous lotic environment. Oecologia 113:260–268.
Schlosser, I. J., and L. W. Kallemeyn. 2000. Spatial variation in fish assemblages across a beaver-influenced successional landscape. Ecology 81:1371–1382.
Schorger, A. W. 1965. The beaver in early Wisconsin. Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters 54:147–179.
Schreiner, D. R. 2008. Coaster Brook Trout rehabilitation in Lake Superior: introduction. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1305–1306.
Schreiner, D. R., K. I. Cullis, M. C. Donofrio, G. J. Fischer, L. Hewitt, K. G. Mumford, D. M. Pratt, H. R. Quinlan, and S. J. Scott. 2008. Management perspectives on coaster Brook Trout rehabilitation in the Lake Superior basin. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1350–1364.
Schroeder, S. 2013. Trout angling in Minnesota. Minnesota Cooperative Fish and Wildlife Research Unit, Department of Fisheries, Wildlife, and Conservation Biology, University of Minnesota, St. Paul.
Schulte, L. A., D. J. Mladenoff, T. R. Crow, L. C. Merrick, and D. T. Cleland. 2007. Homogenization of northern U.S. Great Lakes forests due to land use. Landscape Ecology 22:1089–1103.
Shetter, D. S., and M. J. Whalls. 1955. Effect of impoundment on water temperatures of Fuller Creek, Montmorency County, Michigan. Journal of Wildlife Management 19:47–54.
Sinokrot, B. A., H. G. Stefan, J. H. McCormick, and J. G. Eaton. 1995. Modeling of climate change effects on stream temperatures and fish habitats below dams and near groundwater inputs. Climatic Change 30:181–200.
Smith, B. R., and J. J. Tibbles. 1980. Sea Lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*) in Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior: history of invasion and control, 1936–78. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 37:1780–1801.
Smith, J. M., and M. E. Mather. 2013. Beaver dams maintain fish biodiversity by increasing habitat heterogeneity throughout a low-gradient stream network. Freshwater Biology 58:1523–1538.
Smith, L. L., and J. B. Moyle. 1944. A biological survey and fishery management plan for the streams of the Lake Superior north shore watershed. Minnesota Department of Conservation, Technical Bulletin Number 1, St. Paul.
Smith, M. E., C. T. Driscoll, B. J. Wyskowski, C. M. Brooks, and C. C. Cosentini. 1991. Modification of stream ecosystem structure and function by beaver (*Castor canadensis*) in the Adirondack Mountains, New York. Canadian Journal of Zoology 69:55–61.

Smith, S. H. 1968. Species succession and fishery exploitation in the Great Lakes. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 25:667–693.

Snodgrass, J. W., and G. K. Meffe. 1998. Influence of beavers on stream fish assemblages: effects of pond age and watershed position. Ecology 79:928–942.

Snodgrass, J. W., and G. K. Meffe. 1999. Habitat use and temporal dynamics of blackwater stream fishes in and adjacent to beaver ponds. Copeia 1999:628–639.

Soller, D. R., M. C. Reheis, C. P. Garrity, and D. R. Van Sistine. 2009. Map database for surficial materials in the conterminous United States. U.S. Geological Survey, Data Series 425, Reston, Virginia.

Songster-Alpin, M. S., and R. L. Klotz. 1995. A comparison of electron transport system activity in stream and beaver pond sediments. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1318–1326.

Sotiropoulos, J. C., K. H. Nislow, and M. R. Ross. 2006. Brook Trout, *Salvelinus fontinalis*, microhabitat selection and diet under low summer stream flows. Fisheries Management and Ecology 13:149–155.

Sprules, W. M. 1941. The effect of a beaver dam on the insect fauna of a trout stream. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 70:236–248.

Stegeman, L. 1954. The production of aspen and its utilization by beaver on the Huntington Forest. Journal of Wildlife Management 18:348–358.

Sternecker, K., D. E. Cowley, and J. Geist. 2012. Factors influencing the success of salmonid egg development in river substratum. Ecology of Freshwater Fish 22:322–333.

Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.

Twork, E. C. 1936. The removal of beaver dams from Michigan trout streams, and some other conditions effecting the trout environment. Doctoral dissertation. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor.

Unfer, G., and K. Pinter. 2017. Fisheries management of stream-resident Brown Trout populations—possibilities and restrictions. Pages 649–665 *in* J. Lobón-Cerviá and N. Sanz, editors. Brown Trout: biology, ecology, and management. Wiley, Hoboken, New Jersey.

Verry, E. S. 1986. Forest harvesting and water: the lake states experience. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 22:1039–1047.

Verry, E. S., J. R. Lewis, and K. N. Brooks. 1983. Aspen clearcutting increases snowmelt and storm flow peaks in north central Minnesota. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 19:59–67.

Vincent, R. E. 1962. Biogeographical and ecological factors contributing to the decline of Arctic Grayling, *Thymallus arcticus* (Pallas), in Michigan and Montana. Doctoral dissertation. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor.

Virbickas, T., S. Stak.enas, and A. Stepon.enas. 2015. Impact of beaver dams on abundance and distribution of anadromous salmonids in two lowland streams in Lithuania. PLoS ONE [online serial] 10(4):e0123107.

Voigt, D. R., G. B. Kolenosky, and D. H. Pimlott. 1976. Changes in summer foods of wolves in central Ontario. Journal of Wildlife Management 40:663–668.

Wang, L., J. Lyons, P. Rasmussen, P. Seelbach, T. Simon, M. Wiley, P. Kanehl, E. Baker, S. Niemela, and P. M. Stewart. 2003. Watershed, reach, and riparian influences on stream fish assemblages in the Northern Lakes and Forest Ecoregion, U.S.A. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 60:491–505.

Waters, T. F. 1983. Replacement of Brook Trout by Brown Trout over 15 years in a Minnesota stream: production and abundance. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 112(2A):137–146.

Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams: sources, biological effects, and control. American Fisheries Society, Monograph 7, Bethesda, Maryland.

Waters, T. F. 1999. The Superior north shore: a natural history of Lake Superior's northern lands and waters. University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.

Wathen, G., J. E. Allgeier, N. Bouwes, M. M. Pollock, D. E. Schindler, and C. E. Jordan. In press. Beaver activity increases habitat complexity and spatial partitioning by steelhead trout. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences. DOI: 10.1139/cjfas-2018-0171.

WDNR (Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources). 1990. Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan 1990–2015. WDNR, Madison.

WDNR (Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources). 2015. Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan 2015–2025. WDNR, Madison.

Weber, N., N. Bouwes, M. M. Pollock, C. Volk, J. M. Wheaton, G. Wathen, J. Wirtz, and C. E. Jordan. 2017. Alteration of stream temperature by natural and artificial beaver dams. PLoS ONE [online serial] 12(5):e0176313.

Wehrly, K. E., M. J. Wiley, and P. W. Seelbach. 2003. Classifying regional variation in thermal regime based on stream fish community patterns. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 132:18–38.

Wells, L., and A. L. McLain. 1973. Lake Michigan: man's effects on native fish stocks and other biota. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 20.

Westbrook, C. J., D. J. Cooper, and B. W. Baker. 2006. Beaver dams and overbank floods influence groundwater–surface water interactions of a Rocky Mountain riparian area. Water Resources Research 42(6): W06404.

Westerman, F. A. 1974. On the history of trout planting and fish management in Michigan. Pages 15–37 *in* Michigan fisheries centennial report 1873–1973. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Management Report Number 6, Lansing.

Whelan, G. E. 2004. A historical perspective on the philosophy behind the use of propagated fish in fisheries management: Michigan's 130-year experience. Pages 307–315 *in* M. J. Nickum, P. M. Mazik, J. G. Nickum, and D. D. MacKinlay, editors. Propagated fish in resource management. American Fisheries Society, Symposium 44, Bethesda, Maryland.

White, D. S. 1990. Biological relationships to convective flow patterns within stream beds. Hydrobiologia 196:149–158.

White, M. A., and D. J. Mladenoff. 1994. Old-growth forest landscape transitions from pre-European settlement to present. Landscape Ecology 9:191–205.

Whitney, G. G. 1987. An ecological history of the Great Lakes forest of Michigan. Journal of Ecology 75:667–684.

Wiley, M., S. Kohler, and P. Seelbach. 1997. Reconciling landscape and local views of aquatic communities: lessons from Michigan trout streams. Freshwater Biology 37:133–148.

Willging, R. C. 2017. Beaver and trout in the 21st century. The Wildlife Professional (November/December):26–30.

Wilson, C. C., W. Stott, L. Miller, S. D'Amelio, M. J. Jennings, and A. M. Cooper. 2008. Conservation genetics of Lake Superior Brook Trout: issues, questions, and directions. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1307–1320.

Windels, S. K. 2017. Beavers as engineers of wildlife habitat. Pages 239–268 *in* C. A. Johnston, editor. Beavers: boreal ecosystem engineers. Springer, Cham, Switzerland.

Woo, M., and J. M. Waddington. 1990. Effects of beaver dams on subarctic wetland hydrology. Arctic 43:223–230.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological effects of fine sediment in the lotic environment. Environmental Management 21:203–217.

Zorn, T. G., T. A. Cwalinski, N. A. Godby Jr., B. J. Gunderman, and M. A. Tonello. 2018. Management plan for inland trout in Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Report 30, Lansing.

Zorn, T. G., P. W. Seelbach, and M. J. Wiley. 2002. Distributions of stream fishes and their relationship to stream size and hydrology in Michigan's Lower Peninsula. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 131:70–85.

Factors Influencing Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) Population Fluctuations, and Their Ecological Relationship with Salmonids

A THESIS
SUBMITTED TO THE FACULTY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA
BY

Sean M. Johnson-Bice

IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS
FOR THE DEGREE OF
MASTER OF SCIENCE

Steve K. Windels, Adviser

August 2019

Acknowledgments

I wish to first thank my advisor and mentor Steve Windels for his continual guidance and patience, and the freedom he granted me to pursue my research interests. I would like to thank my committee members, George Host and Ron Moen, for their commitment and input in the progress of my thesis. Katti Renik and Andy Hafs both contributed significantly to the success of the first chapter, and Katti in particular assisted in writing initial portions of it. My second chapter simply would not have happened without the hard work and knowledge from Jake Ferguson, who conducted the statistical analysis, created two of the figures, and taught me all about Bayesian time series analysis in the process. I would also like to thank and acknowledge the contributions from Tom Gable and John Erb in my second chapter, who both provided tremendous insight and wisdom that greatly contributed to its development. My graduate school experience was a lot more enjoyable with the company of great friends, especially Ryan Steiner, Austin Homkes, Tom Gable, and Bradley Dawson. I also appreciate and acknowledge the financial support provided by the Minnesota Environment and Natural Resources Trust Fund, as recommended by the Legislative-Citizen Commission on Minnesota Resources (project M.L. 2016, Chp. 186, Sec. 2, Subd.03j); the University of Minnesota Duluth Integrated Biosciences Department Graduate Program summer fellowships awarded to me; and a one-semester teaching assistantship from the University of Minnesota Duluth Department of Biology. Part of my funding was also provided by the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972, as amended, administered by the Office for Coastal Management, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration under Award NA18NOS190081 provided to the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources for

Minnesota's Lake Superior Coastal Program. Lastly, I want to thank several family members for their emotional support, including my brothers Alex and Brad Johnson-Bice; my aunt BJ Johnson and uncle Machan Shichi; my grandmother Sally Schofield; and of course my parents, David Bice and Kathleen Johnson, who have provided me with unwavering inspiration and encouragement.

Dedication

I dedicate this thesis to my biggest fans, my parents David Bice and Kathleen Johnson, who have always stood by side while I pursued my personal, professional, and above all, scientific endeavors.

Table of Contents

List of tables viii

List of figures ix

Chapter 1: A Review of Beaver–Salmonid Relationships and History of Management Actions in the Western Great Lakes (USA) Region 1

Summary 2

Introduction 3

History of Salmonids and Beavers in the Western Great Lakes Region 5

Review of Beaver Influence on Streams and Salmonids in the Western Great Lakes Region 13

Review of Beaver Management on Salmonid Streams in the Western Great Lakes Region 34

Management Implications 43

Conclusions 47

Tables 51

Figures 53

Chapter 2: Factors Influencing Annual Rates of Change in the Number of Beaver Colonies 55

Summary 56

Introduction 58

Methods....62

Results....72

Discussion....74

Management Implications....78

Tables....80

Figures....83

Bibliography....87

List of Tables

Table 1.1. Summary of the main effects found from 21 beaver-salmonid studies conducted within the WGL region......53

Table 2.1. Summary of the 15 survey routes from northern Minnesota......80

Table 2.2. Comparison of three global models evaluating the influence of density-dependent and density-independent factors on growth rates of beaver colonies...81

Table 2.3. Parameter estimates from the DD_{cov} model......82

List of Figures

Figure 1.1. Map showing where beaver–salmonid studies have been conducted in the western Great Lakes region 54

Figure 1.2. Timeline of major events from different management eras and a graph of the approximate beaver population trend from the western Great Lakes (WGL) region (1870–present) 55

Figure 2.1. Map of the beaver survey study area and location of each route 83

Figure 2.2. Graphic depicting how survey routes were digitized by delineating the aircraft's trajectory based on hand-drawn reference maps 84

Figure 2.3. Composite image of raw (observed) data and model fits for each route 85

Figure 2.4. Plot of the beta coefficients for the estimates from the full dataset compared to the estimates from the dataset with 1/3 of observations held out 86

CHAPTER ONE

A Review of Beaver–Salmonid Relationships and History of Management Actions in the Western Great Lakes (USA) Region

SUMMARY

Within the western Great Lakes (WGL) U.S. region (Michigan, Minnesota, Wisconsin), the ecological impacts that North American beavers (*Castor canadensis*) have on cold-water streams are generally considered to negatively affect salmonid populations where the two taxa interact. Here, we review the history of beaver-salmonid interactions within the WGL region, describe how this relationship and management actions have evolved over the past century, and review all published studies from the region that have evaluated beaver-salmonid interactions.

Our review suggests the impact beavers have varies spatially and temporally, depending on a variety of local ecological characteristics. We found beaver activity is often deleterious to salmonids in low-gradient stream basins, but generally beneficial in high-gradient basins; and ample groundwater inputs can offset the potential negative effects of beavers by stabilizing the hydrologic and thermal regimes within streams. However, there was an obvious lack of empirical data and/or experimental controls within the reviewed studies, which we suggest emphasizes the need for more data-driven beaver-salmonid research in the WGL region. Resource managers are routinely faced with an ecological dilemma between maintaining natural environmental processes within cold-water ecosystems and conducting beaver control for the benefit of salmonids, and this dilemma is further complicated when the salmonids in question are a non-native species. We anticipate future beaver-salmonid research will lead to a greater understanding of this ecologically-complex relationship that may better inform managers when and where beaver control is necessary to achieve the desired management objectives.

INTRODUCTION

North American beaver (*Castor canadensis*) activities affect many fish and wildlife species (Rosell et al. 2005, Windels 2017), but of particular interest to resource managers in the western Great Lakes (WGL) region is the effect that beaver activity has on salmonids (family Salmonidae) in tributaries and inland streams within the region. As ecosystem engineers, beavers disproportionately alter their environment through their dam-building and selective foraging habits (Rosell et al. 2005). Beaver dams impact streams by impounding the flow of running water, thereby reducing stream discharge and velocity (Naiman et al. 1988). Conditions upstream of the dam change from lotic to lentic, causing sediment, organic material, and water to accumulate (Naiman et al. 1986, Gurnell 1998). Over time, this leads to further alterations to stream hydrology, channel geomorphology, and riparian biogeochemical pathways (Naiman et al. 1988, 1994). These stream modifications can have cascading effects on salmonids, depending on local ecosystem characteristics. Most salmonid species spawn in stream sections with a slope between 0.5% and 3% (Beechie et al. 2008), coinciding with slopes preferred by beaver (Allen 1983); as such, interactions between the two taxa have important implications for the long-term growth, sustainability, and size and age structure of local salmonid populations.

Brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) is the only native salmonid species that regularly uses WGL streams, though several non-native Pacific salmonid species have been introduced since the late 19th century (Crawford 2001) and use WGL tributaries for spawning and rearing habitat (e.g., rainbow trout [*Oncorhynchus mykiss*]; Biette et al. 1981), Chinook salmon [*O. tshawytscha*], and Coho salmon [*O. kisutch*]; Carl 1982). Most salmonid introductions and subsequent stocking programs were in response to declining commercial fisheries, stream habitat degradation, and to enhance recreational angling opportunities within Great Lakes streams (Mills et al. 1993). In the early 20th century, beaver populations in the region began to recover from two centuries of overharvest (Knudsen 1963, Longley and Moyle 1963) at the same time that resource managers were focused on increasing salmonid populations, leading sportsmen and resource managers to begin evaluating the impact that growing beaver populations had on cold-water stream ecosystems (Knudsen 1962).

Each management agency within the WGL region currently uses some form of control measures (e.g., trapping, beaver removal, and dam removal) on cold-water salmonid streams where beaver populations exist, though no synthesis on beaver-salmonid studies or previous management programs within the region has been conducted to date. For the purpose of this review, we consider the WGL region to be coincident with the Laurentian Mixed Forest Province (unit code 212; Cleland et al. 2007) (geographic extent is similar to the Northern Lakes and Forest Ecoregion; Omernik and Gallant 1988), where all published studies to date have been conducted (Figure 1.1). We present an overview of beaver-salmonid relationships within the WGL region, with a focus on how management practices have evolved over the past century. Our intent was not to duplicate the content of two other comprehensive global reviews of beaver-fish interactions (Collen and Gibson 2001, Kemp et al. 2012), but to provide a refined review of beaver-salmonid interactions that will be useful for biologists, natural resource managers, and other interested parties, particularly in the WGL region.

The first section details the early history of beavers, native and non-native salmonids, and the efforts by resource managers within the WGL region to increase population sizes of both taxa. We then review the main effects that beaver activities have on salmonid populations and habitat characteristics, summarize results from all published studies conducted within the WGL region, and identify information gaps where additional research can improve our understanding of the beaver-salmonid relationship. This last section is most pertinent to beaver's effects on brook, brown (*Salmo trutta*), and to a lesser degree rainbow trouts, as these species interact with beavers more often than other salmonid species within WGL stream systems. Finally, we review the history of beaver management actions on cold-water streams in the WGL region, and present recommendations for resource managers to use when designing management strategies aimed at addressing current and future beaver-salmonid conflicts.

HISTORY OF SALMONIDS AND BEAVER IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION

Salmonid history

Agricultural and logging practices in the late 19th and early 20th centuries had a substantial impact on stream habitats in the WGL region. Vast tracts of old growth forest within the WGL region were clear-cut during this period, causing hydrologic and geomorphologic changes to streams (Fitzpatrick and Knox 2000, Whelan 2004) resulting from increased sediment loading, and stream flow and discharge rates (Verry et al. 1983, Verry 1986). The kinetic energy from log transportation down streams, coupled with large scale de-snagging and blasting operations, also had an enormous impact on streams (Whelan 2004, Zorn et al. 2018), while land conversions during the homesteading era permanently altered the hydrologic and sediment dynamics of nearby stream systems (Fitzpatrick and Knox 2000, Anderson et al. 2006b). Both short- and long-term modifications to the lands surrounding WGL streams likely had a negative impact on historic native salmonid populations and habitats (DuBois and Pratt 1994). Indeed, logging, habitat degradation, and overexploitation are believed to have caused the extirpation of the Arctic grayling (*Thymallus arcticus*) from Michigan streams (Vincent 1962, Westerman 1974).

The first hatchery and stocking programs in the WGL region began in response to the declining native salmonid populations during the end of the 19th century. Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*), Chinook salmon, rainbow trout, brown trout, and cutthroat trout (*O. clarki*) were stocked in the WGL region by 1900 (Emery 1985, Whelan 2004). Most of these early introductions failed to produce self-sustaining populations (Emery 1985, Crawford 2001, Whelan 2004); however, successful introductions of brook, brown, and rainbow trouts did occur in portions of the WGL region. The first steelhead (potamodromous rainbow trout) populations were established in areas separate from where they were originally introduced (Westerman 1974), and in the late 19th century brook trout were stocked along Minnesota's Lake Superior coastline, expanding their range into thousands of miles of suitable habitat (Smith and Moyle 1944, Waters 1999). Brown trout have been stocked in Michigan since 1884, where they have since become an important component of inland fisheries due to their ability to survive in warmer and more degraded streams than brook trout (Westerman 1974, Unfer and Pinter 2017).

The decline of lake trout (*Salvelinus namaycush*) fisheries in lakes Michigan and Superior during the mid-20th century led to a second era of salmonid stocking throughout the WGL region. The unintentional introduction of the invasive Sea Lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*) after construction of the Welland Canal (Smith and Tibbles 1980), coupled with overexploitation of lake trout, led to the collapse of lake trout fisheries by the 1950s (Smith 1968, Lawrie and Rahrer 1973, Wells and McLain 1973). Following the establishment of alewives (*Alosa pseudoharengus*) and rainbow smelt (*Osmerus mordax*), resource managers returned to stocking non-native salmonids to restore and diversify commercial fisheries, and control the non-native Alewives and rainbow smelt (Smith 1968, Crawford 2001, Whelan 2004). Chinook salmon, Coho salmon, and rainbow trout were introduced into the WGL region during this era, establishing successful and important sport and commercial fisheries (see: Parsons 1973, Emery 1985, Crawford 2001 for extensive summaries of salmonid introductions into the Great Lakes).
Today, many non-native salmonids continue to be stocked in the WGL region. The Michigan Department of Natural Resources (MDNR) currently stocks Chinook salmon, Coho salmon, and brown trout into Lake Michigan; splake (male brook trout × female lake trout) into lakes Huron and Superior; rainbow trout into lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior; and brown and rainbow trouts into inland streams (MDNR 2018). Minnesota

currently stocks steelhead into Lake Superior, and brown and rainbow trouts into inland streams (Great Lakes Fishery Commission 2018). Finally, the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR) stocks brown trout, rainbow trout, and splake into lakes Michigan and Superior; Chinook and Coho salmons into Lake Michigan; and brown and rainbow trouts into inland streams (J. Mosher 2017, WDNR, personal communication). With the exception of the Lake Superior North shore steelhead population (MNDNR 2016), the effects of beaver activity on non-native adfluvial salmonids remains largely unknown. Most of these species use WGL tributaries for spawning and rearing habitat, and are likely affected by beavers in some capacity.

Managers within the WGL region are particularly concerned about interactions between beavers and native brook trout. There are 2 variations of brook trout (tributary and coaster) that are distinguished by different morphological and life history traits (Burnham-Curtis 2000, D'Amelio 2002, Wilson et al. 2008). Tributary, or ‘resident’, brook trout reside entirely within riverine ecosystems and are generally smaller in size, while coasters are an adfluvial form of brook trout that are larger and mature at a later age than residents (Ridgway 2008, Wilson et al. 2008). Historically abundant throughout Lake Superior and select Lake Huron tributaries, coasters were highly prized among anglers and provided a productive fishery until the population crashed by the early 1900s due to overexploitation and habitat degradation (Huckins et al. 2008, Schreiner et al. 2008). Today, coasters exist in isolated remnant populations along the Lake Superior coastline (Wilson et al. 2008). The Great Lakes Fishery Commission developed a coaster brook trout rehabilitation plan in 2003 designed to aid brook trout proliferation throughout the Lake Superior basin (Newman et al. 2003, Schreiner 2008). The main objective of the plan is to establish wide-spread populations of brook trout that can successfully co-exist with naturalized, non-native salmonids (Newman et al. 2003). In addition to stocking programs and managing human exploitation, the plan also identifies controlling beaver activity as a potential method for improving and maintaining spawning and rearing habitat (Newman et al. 2003). Following release of the rehabilitation plan and a related conference synthesizing coaster brook trout research in 2003 (Coaster Brook Trout Initiative), research on Lake Superior brook trout populations has increased substantially (e.g., Ridgway 2008, Huckins et al. 2008, Wilson et al. 2008, Dumke et al. 2010).

Brown and resident brook trouts are the most common salmonids within WGL streams, and inland management of these salmonid species has largely focused on improving stream habitat and riparian land-use practices following the logging era. Stream improvement methods included using riprap for erosion control, wood and rock deflectors, log dams, tree plantings, stream bank debrushing, and waterfall modifications (Hunt 1988, Avery 2004, Goldsworthy et al. 2016). Inland management programs have generally been conducted at the local or watershed scale, though Michigan (Zorn et al. 2018) and Wisconsin are currently developing state-wide inland salmonid management plans to guide salmonid management over the coming years. Though beaver management has often been a peripheral part of management plans aimed at improving stream habitats and increasing salmonid populations, some resource managers in the WGL region beaver management is believed to be the most cost-effective salmonid habitat improvement method (Avery 2004, Willging 2017).

Beaver history

Before the fur trade reached the WGL region (approx. 1650), Native Americans harvested beavers as a secondary source of food and clothing (Schorger 1965). Following European contact, beaver pelts quickly became the most important trade good for Native Americans in the region, particularly as beaver numbers declined in the eastern U.S. The fur trade began in the WGL region towards the end of the 17th century and continued through the middle of the 19th century until beaver numbers diminished as a result of extensive exploitation (see: Ross 1938, Longley and Moyle 1963, Schorger 1965 for summaries of the fur trade within the WGL region).

Harvest by Native Americans during the pre-settlement era was likely far less than harvests during the fur trade era, when the Hudson Bay Company sold nearly 500,000 pelts annually in Europe (Obbard et al. 1987, Müller-Schwarze 2011). Many of these pelts came from Canada, but the WGL region quickly earned a reputation for producing some of the highest quality pelts available (Schorger 1965). Native Americans conducted most of the beaver trapping in the region, trading pelts with English and French colonists. Accurate estimates of pre-settlement beaver abundance are lacking (one estimate that includes Ontario puts the population at 2 million beaver; Alcoze 1981), but pelt records from the WGL region indicate that beaver populations were robust.

As the fur trade declined, settlers in the WGL region continued unregulated trapping of beavers, further reducing beaver abundance in the region (Knudsen 1963) and subsequently leading to periods of closed or partially closed trapping seasons. Wisconsin was the first state to enact partially closed trapping seasons from 1865–1879, beaver trapping was allowed only from November 1–May 1. Several full-season closures followed over the next several decades: 1893–1898, 1903–1916, and 1924–1933 (Knudsen 1963). Beaver management in Minnesota followed a similar trajectory, with the first law restricting harvest occurring in 1875 (Longley and Moyle 1963). However, unrestricted harvest limits during the open season led to further population declines, until the state completely prohibited the take of beavers at any time of year in 1909 (Longley and Moyle 1963). Beavers were not harvested again until 1919 when trappers were issued a license to remove nuisance beavers (Longley and Moyle 1963). Michigan did not have its first closed beaver season until 1920, and it remained closed until the beaver population had increased dramatically during the 1920s (Bradt 1935b).

During this period of closed harvest seasons, wildlife managers across the WGL region also conducted a number of relocation and reintroduction efforts to assist beaver propagation. It was common for landowners to request the release of beavers on their property, which were often nuisance animals that needed to be removed from other locations (Bradt 1935b). One noteworthy reintroduction effort occurred in Itasca State Park, MN in 1901 when 3 beavers arrived in Minnesota from Canada and were subsequently released into the park (Longley and Moyle 1963). Over the next two decades local managers monitored the beavers' progress, and by 1921 it was estimated that nearly 1000 beavers resided in the park (Longley and Moyle 1963). This event has reached folklore status in Minnesota, in part, because it demonstrates the rapidity at which beavers can reproduce and colonize new areas. As a result of the restricted trapping seasons and conservation efforts from game managers, beaver populations began to irrupt throughout the WGL region.

The rapid colonization and growth of beavers in the WGL region was likely further influenced by ecological factors that promoted beaver expansion. The timber harvest practices that severely degraded streams in the WGL region also altered forest composition across the region, including general shifts in forest structure from communities dominated by conifers to communities dominated by deciduous trees (White and Mladenoff 1994, Schulte et al. 2007). In Michigan and Wisconsin, selective logging of white pine (*Pinus strobus*), hemlock (*Tsuga canadensis*), and old growth hardwoods, followed by periods of intense slash fires, converted large tracts of forest to sugar maple (*Acer saccharum*), aspen (*Populus grandidentata* and *P. tremuloides*), and oak (*Quercas* spp.) (Whitney 1987, White and Mladenoff 1994). As a result of logging and fire suppression management practices, Minnesota forests that had been adapted to periodic fire regimes underwent composition changes that resulted in forests dominated by aspen, spruce (*Picea* spp.), and balsam fir (*Abies balsamea*) (Friedman and Reich 2005). Aspen in particular has repeatedly been shown to be a preferred food item for beavers (e.g., Aldous 1938, Stegeman 1954, Hall 1960), and the dramatic increase in the distribution and abundance of aspen is thought to have played a substantial role in the rapid beaver population recovery (Knudsen 1963, Longley and Moyle 1963, WDNR 2015).

The reduction of natural predators in the WGL region also likely contributed to beaver population recovery. In the early 20th century, state and federal bounties for wolves (*Canis lupus*) led to significant wolf population declines across the region (Boitani 2003). Considering beavers have been shown to be an important food source for wolves (Mech 1970, Gable et al. 2016, 2018), even accounting for up to 50% of seasonal wolf diets (Voigt et al. 1976, Gable et al. 2017), suppressed wolf populations could have allowed for beaver population expansion at an even faster rate (Hartman 1994). Black bears (*Ursus americanus*), coyotes (*Canis latrans*), bobcats (*Lynx rufus*), Canada lynx (*L. canadensis*), and mountain lions (*Felis concolor*) also occasionally prey on beavers (Baker and Hill 2003), and reduced populations of these other predators through the 1970s may also have contributed to the rapid beaver expansion.

REVIEW OF BEAVER INFLUENCE ON STREAMS AND SALMONIDS IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION

Methods

We reviewed the effects of beaver activity on salmonid population ecology, growth rates, and habitat quality in the WGL region. We performed literature searches using ‘Google Scholar’ and ‘Web of Science’; keyword searches included ‘beaver and trout’, ‘beaver and salmonids’, ‘Michigan beaver and trout’, ‘Minnesota beaver and trout’, ‘Wisconsin beaver and trout'. Additional relevant articles were obtained from bibliographies of acquired articles with emphasis on study site location, fish species, and beaver activity. Our review was limited to studies that have been published in peer-reviewed journals, theses and dissertations, and reports from state agencies that have been published or made publicly available. We acknowledge that state, federal, and tribal agencies from the WGL region likely have unpublished data pertaining to beaver-salmonid interactions. However, we have based this review only on data and reports that are readily available to the public.

We reviewed 21 studies evaluating beaver-salmonid interactions in Michigan, Minnesota, and Wisconsin (Table 1.1), which spanned 1935–2012, the most recent year that a beaver-salmonid study has been published. Some published reports from the WGL region contain duplicate data (e.g., Avery 1992 and Avery 2002; and Hale and Jarvenpa 1950 and Hale 1966), so we selected only one of these reports for representation in Table 1.1. Each study was evaluated to determine if the conclusions were based on empirical data or were anecdotal in nature. From each article, statements pertaining to the effect of beaver on salmonids were evaluated as positive, negative, or no effect. Since relatively little research has been conducted in the WGL region, in each section we first present the main effects that beaver activity has on salmonid populations and habitat characteristics from studies across the taxa's ranges. We then review the main results from studies conducted within the WGL region, and identify information gaps where future research could be conducted.

Stream hydrology and geomorphology

Beaver dams generally create lower but more consistent flows in stream systems (Cook 1940, Bruner 1989, Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999), increasing the water-holding capacity of a watershed, elevating the water table, and suppressing peak discharges (Finnegan and Marshall 1997, Bouwes et al. 2016). Beaver dams reduce stream energy and increase retention time by dissipating energy through the dam materials and riparian vegetation (Woo and Waddington 1990, Dunaway et al. 1994), and creating more complex flow pathways (Majerova et al. 2015). Generally, stream velocity is greater and substratum is coarser below beaver dams compared to above dams, potentially benefitting fish that depend on those habitat characteristics (Smith and Mather 2013). Salmonids living in areas with low stream flow or drought can also benefit from beaver dam presence (Cook 1940, Knudsen 1962, Bruner 1989, Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999), as streams with beaver impoundments can retain water longer during dry periods than streams without beaver dams (Parker 1986, Gurnell 1998). Beaver dams can augment low stream flows by recharging alluvial aquifers, and while the amount of water storage behind dams is relatively minor in comparison to the recharged aquifers (Dunne 1978, Lowry 1993), beaver ponds can nonetheless provide refuge for salmonids during low flow periods (provided water temperatures remain within thermal limits).

Most research evaluating how beaver dams influence hydrologic pathways has been conducted in mountainous areas, so the effects of beaver dams on stream hydrology in the WGL region are likely different. In contrast to mountainous areas where salmonid streams are often sourced by snowmelt, WGL salmonid streams are sourced by precipitation and groundwater inputs. Consequently, the distribution and abundance of salmonids in the WGL region are generally determined by reach and watershed characteristics that influence the hydrologic and thermal regimes of stream systems (Lyons 1996, Wehrly et al. 2003). In particular, reach geomorphology, catchment area, and bedrock and quaternary (surficial) geologies can reasonably predict the spatial assemblage of salmonid populations (Wiley et al. 1997, Wang et al. 2003), due to their influence on groundwater flow patterns. Salmonid presence is correlated with hydrologically stable stream systems (Zorn et al. 2002) that are generally comprised of surficial materials with greater hydraulic connectivity, such as glacial outwashes and coarse-textured glacial till landforms (Wiley et al. 1997). However, within the WGL region there is substantial variation in bedrock and surficial geologies (Soller et al. 2009). Glacial erosion and deposition resulted in diverse landforms throughout the WGL region that differ in their ability to hold and transport water (Neff et al. 2005), and this heterogenous composition makes extrapolating results of beaver-salmonid studies from one area to another difficult. How beaver dams may influence lateral and longitudinal flow pathways will likely differ between surficial materials, though this topic remains largely unexplored within the region. Though no discernible patterns of surficial geology were found in the reviewed studies (Table 1.1), it's likely that patterns may emerge if surficial geology is evaluated alongside local watershed, topographic, and thermal characteristics. Our sample size is not large enough to draw such conclusions, but future research may be able to reexamine this issue.

Beaver ponds increase the spatial heterogeneity and longitudinal complexity between stream reaches by altering the geomorphology of stream systems (Naiman et al. 1988). Salmonid populations are dependent on habitat heterogeneity, with different life stages requiring unique habitat characteristics and a degree of connectivity to fulfill their distinctive life history (Bjornn and Reiser 1991, Schlosser 1991). As such, increased habitat complexity from beaver activity may positively influence salmonid populations by providing a greater selection of places to forage, rest, and avoid high flow events (Bouwes et al. 2016). Since beaver ponds are ephemeral in nature, they may also benefit fish by offering a unique heterogenous habitat component that functions on a spatiotemporal scale (Fausch et al. 2002).

Cold-water streams in the WGL region have been observed to become wider and shallower following repetitive dam construction (Salyer 1935). Following beaver trapping and dam removal in a Pine County, Minnesota stream, the stream channels became deeper and narrower, and the pool-riffle ratio improved (Haugstad 1970). Other observations included the narrowing of stream channels, and an increase in average stream flow velocity and coarse gravel substrate following woody debris and beaver dam removal on Lake Superior tributaries (DuBois and Schram 1993, Dumke et al. 2010). We note that in some systems the narrowing of channels may cause streams to become incised and/or entrenched, and particularly in Western U.S. stream systems beavers are commonly used as a biological restoration tool to reduce channel incision (Burchsted et al. 2010, Pollock et al. 2014). In the Peshtigo River watershed, Wisconsin, an increase in beaver colonies reduced water flow rates in feeder streams (Patterson 1951), while in central Wisconsin, beaver activity may have positively influenced salmonid populations by retaining water within ponds while other stream sections dried up (Knudsen 1962).

Water quality characteristics

Water chemistry —. The effects of beaver activity on water chemistry vary regionally and are dependent upon original conditions (Collen and Gibson 2001), and the impact of beavers on dissolved oxygen (DO) levels is particularly important to salmonids. Beaver activities may decrease DO levels in a stream by increasing water temperatures and reducing stream flow, the latter of which also decreases stream aeration. Although Smith et al. (1991) suggested the influence of beaver dams on DO levels is localized to within impoundments as stream water quickly achieves complete reoxygenation just downstream of the dam. As beaver ponds age and expand, increases in microbial respiration within flooded soils and allochthonous inputs of organic matter also occur (Pollock et al. 1995, Songster-Alpin and Klotz 1995, Bertolo et al. 2008). Some of the organic matter gets deposited as sedimental layers within the impoundments (Johnston and Naiman 1987), further reducing DO levels (commonly referred to as sediment oxygen demand).

Observations from the WGL region have generally found beaver activity negatively affects DO levels (Table 1.1). Prior to beaver dam removal, DO levels were recorded as low as 0.1 mg/L within beaver ponds in one Wisconsin watershed (Avery 2002). However, a reinvestigation of this study concluded there was only a 2 mg/L improvement in DO after beaver dam removal, even with beaver ponds creating localized areas of oxygen depletion (Popelars 2008). In Pine County, Minnesota, Klein and Newman (1992) recorded the lowest DO levels in dammed stream sections, but found DO levels increased into suitable salmonid thresholds after dam removal. Salyer (1935) stated that the organic matter present in beaver ponds throughout Michigan streams reduced DO levels, but that reduction varied from minute to extreme depending on the system.

Beaver impoundments also affect other water chemistry characteristics including pH and dissolved nutrient levels (Smith et al. 1991). Beaver activity alters the distribution and loading of nutrients within riparian ecosystems, where impoundments act as nutrient sinks with greater concentrations of dissolved organic material relative to other stream sections (Naiman et al. 1986, Johnston and Naiman 1987, Naiman et al. 1994). In particular, beaver impoundments sequester large amounts of dissolved carbon, phosphorous, and nitrogen (Dillon et al. 1991, Naiman et al. 1994, Johnston 2012, 2014), which may benefit salmonids in nutrient-poor ecosystems. However, a recent meta-analysis suggests that phosphorous retention generally occurs only in older ponds (Ecke et al. 2017). An early study from the Michigan Upper Peninsula (UP) found beaver ponds to be more acidic than other stream reaches (Salyer 1935), yet recent research indicates that beaver wetlands actually increase the acid-neutralizing capacity of streams by retaining acidic inputs within sediment layers (Smith et al. 1991, Cirmo and Driscoll 1993, Margolis et al. 2001, Błędzki et al. 2010). This may benefit salmonids in stream systems with high acid deposition, but this has not yet been examined.

Water temperature —. Stream temperature is often the most important limiting factor for suitable salmonid habitat in the WGL region, and beaver activity can influence stream temperatures in several different ways. Beaver activities can indirectly increase water temperatures by impounding streams and reducing canopy cover, leading to increased rates of solar radiation (Evans 1948, Patterson 1951, Christenson et al. 1961, Hale 1966). Beaver ponds can maintain water temperatures independent of air temperature changes (Weber et al. 2017), as impoundments can force water around and beneath beaver dams, cooling it as it seeps through the ground and back into the stream (White 1990, Westbrook et al. 2006, Müller-Schwarze 2011). Temperature stratification can also occur in deep ponds, potentially providing salmonid species with thermal refugia during warmer months (Gard 1961, Benson 2002, Bouwes et al. 2016). The effects of beaver dams on water temperature may differ with beaver pond age and size (Cook 1940, Call 1970), as newer ponds generally have greater percolation through the dam relative to older ponds, reducing water retention time (Call 1970).

Observations on stream temperature were the most commonly cited effects from within the WGL region, with most studies reporting negative effects from beaver activity (Table 1.1). Stream temperatures in the Peshtigo River watershed in Wisconsin were elevated due to reduced streamside cover from beaver activity (Patterson 1951), and similar observations were made in the Knife River, Minnesota (Smith and Moyle 1944). In the same study, summer water temperatures were significantly cooler following beaver dam removal (Smith and Moyle 1944), and more recently, water temperatures below beaver dam outlets in the Knife River watershed were within the stressful and/or lethal threshold limits of brook trout more than 50% of the time (Peterson 2012). Water temperatures in the Pemonee River watershed, Wisconsin were cooler following beaver dam removal, and remained cooler even 18 years after the initial dam removal efforts (Avery 2002). However, beaver activity had no significant influence on stream temperatures within several study systems in the WGL region (Adams 1949, 1954, Shetter and Whalls 1955, Hale 1966, Klein and Newman 1992, DuBois and Schram 1993, Dumke et al. 2010). Additionally, Hale (1966) believed salmonids used beaver ponds as thermal refuge in a Lake Superior tributary in Minnesota, while McRae and Edwards (1994) found beaver dams reduced the magnitude of thermal diel fluctuations within their study area. McRae and Edwards (1994) also examined the influence of beaver dam density and beaver pond size on stream temperatures, concluding that temperature was not influenced by either factor. We note their study area (Peshtigo River watershed) has ample groundwater inputs throughout the stream system, which may partially explain the observed stable thermal regimes.

The effects of beaver activity on water temperature have received more attention and research in the WGL region than other aspects of the beaver-salmonid relationship. However, we believe some of the recorded effects on water temperature may be misleading as they were often recorded at locations where water temperatures are likely higher than the average stream temperature (e.g., surface water temperatures, or at the immediate outlet of beaver dams). Recording temperatures at the bottom of beaver ponds and/or from a moderate distance (>50 m) downstream of dams could obtain a more accurate representation of how beavers influence thermal regimes.

The spatial assemblage of salmonids within the WGL region are closely tied to the thermal regimes of stream systems (Lyons 1996, Wehrly et al. 2003). As cold-water species, salmonids' persistence within streams is reliant on just that—*cold water*. That beaver dam presence increases stream temperatures within the WGL region appears conclusive (Table 1.1); yet, whether this increase in temperature has a deleterious impact on salmonids is dependent on whether the resultant water temperature exceeds salmonid temperature limits, or if thermal refugia are not readily accessible. If the resultant water temperature remains within salmonid thermal tolerance limits, then beaver dam presence should not be considered to negatively affect stream temperatures. There is a tendency to conclude that any increase in temperature is a negative attribute; however, this is only true when the increased temperature has a negative effect on salmonid fitness. Many streams within the WGL region that contain salmonids have natural temperature regimes that approach salmonid thermal limits, and beaver presence within these stream systems is more likely to raise stream temperatures above salmonid thermal limits. Understanding the natural thermal regimes of streams is important to recognize whether beaver dam presence will ultimately stress and/or lead to salmonid mortality, and whether these patterns will change under varying environmental conditions.

Influence on spawning attributes

Spawning habitat—. Salmonid reproductive success and population persistence is dependent on the ability of individuals to reach spawning grounds and dig redds in habitat suitable for egg survival (Beechie et al. 2008). Habitat variables that affect site selection by salmonids include gravel size, water velocity, depth, and temperature (Essington et al. 1998, Armstrong et al. 2003, Beechie et al. 2008). Salmonid eggs require free-flowing cold water in order to provide enough oxygen to the developing embryos (Chapman 1988), and many salmonid species (e.g., brook trout and Chinook salmon) exhibit a preference for spawning sites within the hyporheic zone where groundwater upwellings and surface water flow pathways interact (Curry and Noakes 1995, Geist and Dauble 1998). Salmonids generally dig redds in reaches with coarse-textured gravel substrates, and the distribution of suitable habitat may limit salmonid populations within stream systems (Kondolf and Wolman 1993). Limited spawning habitat availability may lead to redd superimposition (Curry and Noakes 1995), although some salmonid species (e.g., brown trout) also display a behavioral preference to spawn on existing redd sites even in low redd densities (Essington et al. 1998). Redds that are dug too deep into substrates can reduce egg hatching success due to the effects on temperature and diminished access to free-flowing water (Crisp 1996, Sternecker et al. 2012). Additionally, the deposition of fine sediments may reduce egg survival and emergence (Chapman 1988), but this may be offset if stream flows are high enough to prevent sediment buildup (Payne and Lapointe 1997, Armstrong et al. 2003).

Beaver activities can affect salmonid spawning habitats by altering sediment dynamics within stream systems. Organic materials are deposited as layers of fine sediment within beaver impoundments (Johnston and Naiman 1987), which can ultimately affect salmonid populations when the fine sediments bury gravel substrates (Alexander and

Hansen 1986, Waters 1995, Lisle 2010). Based on a sample of 353 active beaver ponds located throughout Wisconsin, layers of mineral and organic matter were present in 100% of bottom sediments, with all samples revealing silt layers ranging from approximately 1 to 5 cm in depth (Christenson et al. 1961, Knudsen 1962). Patterson (1951) suggested that brook trout were unable to spawn due to siltation and blocked migration caused by beaver dams in Wisconsin streams, and Salyer (1935) observed that silt was deposited over salmonid eggs in Michigan streams. Scarcity of age-0 brook trout upstream of dams and decreased viability of eggs located directly downstream were observed in a Minnesota stream (Hale 1966). Beaver dam removal was also observed to reduce sand bed loading and expose gravel substrates, improving access to salmonid spawning sites (Haugstad 1970, DuBois and Schram 1993, Dumke et al. 2010). Contrarily, the retention of siltation behind an impoundment may lead to a greater prevalence of gravel substrate downstream (Levine and Meyer 2014), potentially improving salmonid spawning habitat (Grasse 1951).

Movement barrier—. Beaver dams can limit salmonids' access to suitable spawning habitat by impeding movements within stream reaches. Limitation of these movements may lead to a decline or extirpation of salmonid populations in streams or stream segments (Bylak et al. 2014), and the degree to which beaver dams impede salmonid movement can often be influenced by stream flow conditions (Schlosser 1995a, Snodgrass and Meffe 1998). Salmonids that spawn during higher stream flows in spring (e.g., rainbow trout) may find dams passable, while other species that spawn during lower average stream flows (e.g., brook trout) may be unable to bypass dams and potentially force them to spawn in less suitable habitat (Grasse and Putnam 1955). Shallow plunge pools can hinder brook trout's ability to jump (Kondratieff and Myrick 2006), which may further restrict the fish's ability to pass beaver dams during low flow conditions. Brook trout passed dams more frequently than brown trout in Utah during periods of high stream flow by taking advantage of side channels and increased stream flow over and through dams (Lokteff et al. 2013).

Beaver dams were frequently reported to impede salmonid migration in published studies within the WGL region (Table 1.1). However, only two of the studies used tagged fish to evaluate how beaver dams affected salmonid movements. Salyer (1935) found salmonids could readily pass dams downstream, but not upstream, where better spawning habitats were generally located; and Avery (2002) noted an increase in the spatial distribution of brook trout following beaver dam removal, suggesting that the dams impeded movement into some reaches. Other studies from the WGL region speculated or used anecdotal evidence to conclude beaver dams impede salmonid migration (Table 1.1). Because most of the published research from the WGL region on this topic is speculative, it is possible salmonids are actually able to bypass some beaver dams. Logically the presence of dams hinders salmonid movements greater than if the dams were not present; but that does not necessarily mean fish are *unable* to bypass the dams and thereby limit up/downstream migration. Ultimately, more research is needed to determine which salmonid species are better able to navigate dams; the characteristics of dams (e.g., height, permeability) that are more likely to restrict salmonid movements; the stream flow conditions that often restrict salmonid movements; and finally, whether restricted movements will have an appreciable impact on salmonid populations. From a population perspective, if beaver dams restrict passage under certain scenarios the detrimental effects may be exacerbated if the dams limit access to the often-limited spawning habitat sites during the spawning season(s). Using telemetry studies to monitor fine-scale salmonid movements could provide a greater understanding into the ability salmonids have to bypass beaver dams (e.g., Lokteff et al. 2013).

Individual growth rates

Beaver dam presence tends to positively affect salmonid growth rates (Cook 1940, Patterson 1951, Shetter and Whalls 1955, Rosell and Parker 1996, McCaffery 2009). During low-flow summer months, juvenile brook trout adopt a habitat-use strategy that reduces energetic demands by seeking out deep, low-velocity pools (Sotiropoulos et al. 2006), which likely includes utilizing beaver impoundments. Beaver activity can also lead to increased invertebrate productivity. Aquatic invertebrates are a primary food source for several age classes of stream-dwelling salmonids, and invertebrate populations readily respond to changes in stream systems induced by beaver activities (McDowell and Naiman 1986). As a section of stream changes from lotic to lentic, invertebrate composition generally shifts from filter-feeding insects to collector-gatherers (Sprules 1941, McDowell and Naiman 1986). Beaver ponds may have a lower species diversity of invertebrates, but generally have a higher total biomass and density of aquatic organisms relative to other stream reaches (Rupp 1955, Gard 1961, McDowell and Naiman 1986). However, stream sedimentation can decrease the abundance of invertebrate orders

Ephemeroptera, Plecoptera, and Trichoptera which are important food sources for all salmonid life stages, potentially limiting growth rates (Hale 1966, McMahon 1983, Waters 1995). Increased sedimentation may also cause an increase in burrowing invertebrates, thereby reducing the amount of vulnerable prey available to salmonids and impairing growth (Suttle et al. 2004). The interplay of sedimentation, invertebrate community shifts, and salmonid growth rates is complex and warrants additional research, as most of the information regarding how beavers influence these dynamics remains speculative.

Salmonids tend to be larger within beaver impoundments relative to other stream sections (Hägglund and Sjöberg 1999, Bylak et al. 2014), and results from published studies in the WGL region generally support this conclusion (Table 1.1). In a Lake Superior tributary in Minnesota, the largest brook trout were found within beaver ponds, with growth attributed to higher populations of minnows (Hale 1966). Higher water temperatures associated with beaver ponds may also contribute to increased salmonid growth (Rosell and Parker 1996), though considering many salmonid streams within the WGL region are already near the upper thermal limits of salmonids during summer months (see *Water quality* section), this increase in temperature may be deleterious. Avery (2002) found the average size of age-1 brook trout to be larger after removing beaver dams from a watershed in northeastern Wisconsin, attributing the increase in growth rate to decreased water temperatures, increased gravel exposure, and increased aquatic invertebrate biomass. The summer after a beaver dam collapsed in a Lake Superior tributary in Minnesota, Hale (1966) observed invertebrate species composition more closely resembled communities found in streams rather than beaver ponds. These results suggest invertebrate composition can respond quickly to changes in stream habitat, and corroborates the findings from Avery's (2002) study.

The observation of larger fish within beaver ponds does not necessarily reflect a faster growth rate, but is perhaps a function of how beaver dams influence the distribution of different salmonid age classes. Indeed, beaver dams have been shown to influence the spatial distribution of fish (see next section), so creel data alone cannot definitively indicate that beaver ponds positively influence salmonid growth rates. Future research from the WGL region could use a paired study design to compare salmonid growth rates in streams with and without beaver ponds to determine the influence that beaver ponds exert on growth rates.

Population dynamics

In general, beaver ponds influence the spatial and temporal distribution of fish species and age classes within stream systems by increasing the heterogeneity of habitat features (Schlosser 1995a, Snodgrass and Meffe 1998, Schlosser 1998, Snodgrass and Meffe 1999, Schlosser and Kallemeyn 2000, Mitchell and Cunjak 2007). Research from Minnesota has shown that beaver ponds can influence the spatial assemblage of fish, where fish abundance was higher in upland ponds and species richness was greater in streams and collapsed ponds (i.e., ponds with degraded dams that are not actively retaining water) (Schlosser and Kallemeyn 2000). Further, species richness and species composition can vary within and among beaver ponds over time (Snodgrass and Meffe

1998), but currently no study that has evaluated fish assemblages within beaver ponds has included a salmonid component. In addition to providing refuge for salmonids during summer months and periods of low flow, salmonids may benefit from overwintering habitat provided by large pools above beaver dams (Cunjak 1996, Virbickas et al. 2015). Many streams within the WGL region freeze during winter so beaver ponds may provide invaluable refuge for salmonids, but this has not been empirically tested to date. Conversely, extended ice cover on beaver ponds could also contribute to winter fish kills if conditions within the ponds become hypoxic (Keast and Fox 1990, Fox and Keast 1990).

Beaver ponds can also affect fish population dynamics by creating population source-sink relationships within stream systems (Schlosser 1995a, 1995b). Beaver ponds can offer greater rearing habitat availability within streams (Leidholt-Bruner et al. 1992), and the lateral habitats along the shallow, littoral edges of beaver ponds may be critical for the survival of juvenile fish (Moore and Gregory 1988, Schlosser 1991, 1995b). Beaver ponds can thereby act as key source areas for fish species (Fausch et al. 2002), depending on the spatial variation of pond morphology and the permeability of pond boundaries within stream systems (Schlosser 1995a, 1998). For brook trout, beaver ponds serve as potential source areas due to abundant benthic fauna that can be exploited (Gard 1961). Johnson et al. (1992) found beaver ponds with habitat factors that promote high brook trout densities actually led to localized populations of small, stunted brook trout, suggesting brook trout growth rates are density dependent. Source-sink dynamics of fish populations are complex, and all studies that have found source-sink population dynamics within beaver ponds did not include salmonids in their evaluation. Yet, given that beaver dams increase the complexity and heterogeneity of stream systems, it seems probable that source-sink dynamics of salmonid populations could develop within beaver pond complexes where fish could have access to a variety of habitats across suitable spatial and temporal scales.

Beaver activities can alter biotic interactions between salmonids and other species that may affect predation risk. Beaver ponds provide habitat for a variety of bird and mammal predators, including great blue herons (*Ardea herodias*), osprey (*Pandion haliaetus*), mergansers (*Mergus* spp.), northern river otters (*Lontra canadensis*), American mink (*Neovison vison*), and northern raccoons (*Procyon lotor*) (Windels 2017). Because salmonids can become concentrated in beaver ponds, they may face increased predation pressure as a result (Salyer 1935, Needham 1938), though this has not been tested to date. In Wisconsin, reduced salmonid catch rates were noted following an increase in piscivorous fish populations, including Northern Pike (*Esox lucius*), likely due to the shallow, grassy habitat and higher water temperatures within beaver ponds (Knudsen 1962). Conversely, the increased habitat heterogeneity from dam creation may provide refuge from predators for various life stages (Snodgrass and Meffe 1998).

Beaver activity has also been suggested to increase the prevalence of disease and parasites in salmonids (Knudsen 1962). Greater siltation and water temperatures can induce stress in salmonids, thereby increasing their susceptibility to disease (Grasse 1951, Wood and Armitage 1997, Gordon et al. 2004). Observations in Michigan streams showed increased prevalence of trematodes associated with black spot disease (Miller 1940), and parasitic nematodes in salmonids inhabiting beaver ponds (Salyer 1935). The prevalence of gill lice (*Salmincola edwardsii*), a parasite that is often found in beaver impoundments, has reportedly increased recently in several Wisconsin streams (WDNR 2015). More research is needed to understand whether beaver ponds are responsible for facilitating parasite proliferation within these stream systems.

Salmonid population densities in the WGL region have been shown to increase following beaver dam construction (Salyer 1935, Bradt 1935b, Hale and Jarvenpa 1950, Patterson 1951, Knudsen 1962). Similar to growth rates, angler catch rates from within beaver ponds tend to be greater than other stream sections (Table 1.1), which could lead to misconceptions of larger salmonid population sizes than are actually present within the streams. In several Lake Superior tributaries in Minnesota, greater brook trout densities were actually found in streams with less beaver activity (Hale 1966), and in Pine County, Minnesota streams, the removal of beaver dams resulted in improvements in brook trout catch rates (Haugstad 1970). In a long-term Wisconsin study, the distribution and abundance of brook trout was substantially improved 4 and 18 years after beaver dam removal (Avery 2002); however, another Wisconsin study found that beaver dam removal had little impact on brook trout population density, while the density of younger brown and steelhead trouts increased (DuBois and Schram 1993). Patterson (1951) found decreases in populations of brook and brown trouts several years after beaver occupation of stream reaches, but the declines were likely influenced by intense angling pressure that occurred following the aggregation of fish within the ponds.

While beaver dam removal projects can provide insight into salmonid population responses, few studies have used a paired study design to objectively compare population responses. Moreover, because population responses may take several years to emerge (e.g., Avery 2002), accurate evaluations of how beavers influence salmonid populations likely requires a long-term monitoring plan that is often logistically challenging to implement. Future evaluations of how beaver dams influence salmonid population dynamics should include both a paired study design and a long-term monitoring plan in order to adequately evaluate population responses that may have a temporal delay.

Conclusions from beaver-salmonid review

Our review found surprisingly little empirical data evaluating beaver-salmonid interactions in the WGL region, limiting what conclusions we can draw from existing information on the subject. The majority of the studies occurred before 1970, and many studies relied heavily on anecdotal observations for their conclusions (Table 1.1). Few studies employed any statistical analysis, and only four studies were published in peer-reviewed journals. Species descriptions were often left as "trout" which further obscures the generalizability of results. Nonetheless, the studies we reviewed are often used as justification for implementing beaver management programs (e.g., WDNR 2015) despite an absence of experimental controls or systematic sampling methodologies. Additionally, the majority of the WGL region studies reviewed were conducted in clustered locations within the WGL region (Figure 1.1). To date, no beaver-salmonid studies from Michigan, Minnesota, or Wisconsin have occurred outside of the Laurentian Mixed Forest Province, though we believe that most state agencies have a large amount of unpublished data pertaining to beaver-salmonid interactions. Considering the sparse information that is currently available to the public, we believe the dissemination of this data could provide valuable insight into how beavers affect salmonids within the region. However, state agencies are often limited in their capacity to conduct and/or publish studies as a result of funding and staff shortages, likely contributing to the lack of publicly available data from the WGL region.

Despite the variability of results found within the WGL region, some patterns did emerge from the studies evaluated. Beaver activity tended to benefit salmonids during the first 2–4 years following dam construction. Salmonids likely take advantage of the pools and increased habitat heterogeneity that newly created impoundments offer them by using these features for refugia and food sources. Yet over time, the accumulation of sediment and alterations to water quality characteristics and discharge regimes often has a deleterious effect on local salmonid populations. Additionally, beaver activity was more often deleterious in low-gradient stream systems (i.e., slopes < 2%; Rosgen 1994). The few studies evaluating the impact of beaver in relatively high-gradient systems (Salyer 1935, Evans 1948, Hale and Jarvenpa 1950, Hale 1966) reported positive effects more often than other studies. Beaver dams fail more frequently in high-gradient stream reaches (Gurnell 1998), and thus ponds upstream of dams tend to be younger on average than those in low-gradient reaches. Ponds in high-gradient systems may fail before they are able to degrade and become unsuitable habitat for trout. Nonetheless, this general pattern has inconsistencies, as Hale (1966) reported that beaver dams often persisted beyond 4 years in his study area with high-gradient streams, and resulted in ponds that were poor brook trout habitat.

REVIEW OF BEAVER MANAGEMENT ON SALMONID STREAMS IN THE WESTERN GREAT LAKES REGION

Rise of beaver-salmonid conflicts

Despite extensive poaching that occurred during closed trapping seasons in the 1920s, by 1930 beavers had expanded their range to every major salmonid stream in Michigan (Bradt 1935a, Salyer 1935). In response, the Michigan state legislature ordered the first beaver-salmonid study in 1933 (Bradt 1935a). This first report (Salyer 1935) was an extensive combination of field-based observations and experimental manipulations, and relied heavily on input from local fish and game chapters that were noticeably divided about the "beaver problem". Though results from experimental stream sections indicated that beaver activity tended to be deleterious for salmonid populations (Table 1.1), Salyer (1935) acknowledged that beaver could become an aid for salmonid streams if managed correctly, particularly in the high-gradient tributaries of Lake Superior. Salyer also suggested that a balance between the three desirable natural resources (beaver, salmonids, forest) was needed (Figure 1.2); however, he does not elaborate on this point, and concluded his report by noting that beavers should not occupy cold-water streams without active control.

In response to Salyer's (1935) report, the Civilian Conservation Corps removed more than 5,000 beaver dams from Michigan cold-water streams over a 2-year period (Bradt 1947). This action was coupled with extensive trapping efforts and resulted in a precipitous decline in the Michigan beaver population. It should be noted that following the extensive dam removal project, Michigan anglers noticed fishing success actually declined in UP salmonid streams (Carbine 1944), suggesting the project overshot its management goals. Indeed, though Carbine (1944) advocated for beaver control in the UP and believed Salyer (1935) incorrectly asserted that beaver presence was good for salmonids in Lake Superior tributaries, he wrote: "There is no denying that it was a sad day when that program was started (p. 29)." Wildlife management was still in its infancy in the 1930s, and though Salyer's recommendations were aggressive and ultimately resulted in poorer fishing conditions, they were also emblematic of the growing emphasis placed on scientific research and experimental manipulation that characterized his era of resource managers. Salyer recognized that effectively managing for beaver, salmonids, and timber resources was a complex and polarizing issue that required extensive research into understanding the intricacies of the beaver-salmonid relationship. His investigation laid the foundation for WGL region beaver-salmonid research, prompting managers in Minnesota and Wisconsin to begin similar investigations into beaver-salmonid interactions in their states.

Controversy regarding beaver-salmonid management reached Wisconsin by the mid-1930s and was the catalyst for the first beaver dam removal efforts in Wisconsin (Hunt 1988), when 740 beaver dams were removed from northern streams (Christenson et al.

1961). Despite harvesting nearly 50,000 beavers from 1934–1944, the beaver population continued to increase in the late 1940s (Christenson et al. 1961, Knudsen 1963). In 1949, the Wisconsin Conservation Department issued an official statement acknowledging the increasing problem that beavers posed to fish and timber management (Christenson et al. 1961), prompting a decade-long investigation to determine the best possible multiple-use management plan for beaver, salmonid, and forest resources (Knudsen 1962). Wisconsin Conservation Department trappers also live-trapped and relocated 2,200 nuisance beavers from 1951–1957 as part of the state-wide beaver management plan (Knudsen and Hale 1965). Knudsen (1962) concluded that while beavers provide greater value to Wisconsin communities than previously assumed, salmonid and timber resources must be prioritized over beaver in some areas, particularly on slow-moving, low-gradient streams where beaver activity was detrimental to salmonid habitat. Management recommendations included adopting specialized harvest sites to reduce beaver impacts on salmonid streams and timber resources, but beaver populations should otherwise be maximized due to the economic and aesthetic values associated with beaver presence (Knudsen 1962). The management recommendations are emblematic of an increased focus on using adaptive management strategies that were more responsive to competing beaver, salmonid, and forest resources occupying the same area (Figure 1.2).

In Minnesota, three studies (Smith and Moyle 1944, Hale 1950, 1966) were conducted along the north shore of Lake Superior to evaluate what impact beaver impoundments were having on salmonid streams. While most of Minnesota had open trapping seasons starting in 1939, the north shore had closed or partially closed trapping seasons nearly every year into the 1960s (Hale 1966). Due to increased beaver activities in the region, higher stream temperatures were attributed to a lack of shade produced by beaver meadows (Smith and Moyle 1944). This led to a proposed management program for the Knife River in the 1940s, which included beaver and dam removal, and stream habitat improvement projects (Smith and Moyle 1944). Most of the north shore streams are relatively high-gradient, and results from Hale's (1950, 1966) studies found beaver presence to have some benefits for brook trout. Hale (1966) concluded that a low beaver population was preferable for the north shore watershed, but did not recommend any particular management objectives.

Progression of adaptive management strategies

As beaver management progressed throughout the WGL region, resource managers began to use adaptive management recommendations that came out of early investigations. In the early years of beaver management, it was clear that some strategies had detrimental effects on beaver, salmonids, or both. Long-term studies like Knudsen (1962) led to a new era of resource management that used an adaptive approach towards evaluating beaver-salmonid-forest relationships (Figure 1.2).

Salmonid streams in east-central Minnesota tend to be low-gradient, and by the 1960s the beaver population continued to grow (MNDNR, unpublished data; Figure 1.2) and anglers reported poor fishing conditions in reaches occupied by beaver. Following the results from a study which substantiated beaver presence to negatively impact salmonid populations (Haugstad 1970), a habitat improvement project began that centered on beaver dam removal and eradication from the streams. Over a 2-year period, 617 beavers and 482 beaver dams were removed from streams, resulting in 120 km of “fair” to “good” quality salmonid habitat and noticeably larger salmonid populations (Haugstad 1970). In addition to the regular open trapping season, professional and permit trappers assisted in the beaver eradication efforts. Despite some landowners’ resistance to the eradication efforts, Haugstad (1970) concluded that a liberal beaver-trapping season should be used throughout counties with prime salmonid streams. Results from a later study within the same basin suggested that beaver activity negatively affected salmonids (Klein and Newman 1992), but the authors’ management recommendations reflected a shift towards using a more nuanced approach to beaver-salmonid interactions. Klein and Newman (1992) recommended managers should consider site-specific plans that balance the economic costs and ecological benefits incurred by conducting beaver management.

By the 1970s in Wisconsin, three main beaver control methods were utilized: (1) removal of beavers and structures by Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR) personnel; (2) removal of beavers and structures by permitted private citizens; and (3) extension of beaver seasons and regular bag limits on waters with recurring problems (Payne and Peterson 1986). Beaver and human populations continued to rise across the state at this time, along with the number of beaver complaints. An analysis of beaver complaint trends in two northern Wisconsin counties found most complaints involved timber resources and roads, while fish habitat comprised only 4-5% of all complaints (Payne and Peterson 1986). These results were similar to those reported across the state from 1950–59, when fish complaints accounted for 5% of all complaints (Knudsen 1962). It should be noted that beaver removal from salmonid streams was not limited to those originating from complaints filed with the state, as extensive beaver dam removal projects by WDNR personnel were also occurring across Wisconsin.

Hunt (1988) suggested beaver and dam removal was a widespread habitat management strategy used across Wisconsin from 1953–1985, though little data is available until the 1980s. An extensive dam removal effort occurred in Wisconsin's Penomee River watershed, where 546 beaver dams were removed from 1982–1986 (Avery, 1992). In the late 1980s, the WDNR began a partnership with the U.S. Department of Agriculture Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service Animal Damage Control program (APHIS-ADC) to conduct dam removal in salmonid streams (Dickerson 1989), in addition to supplemental trapping of beavers from individual streams (Willging 2017, Ribic et al. 2017). One such beaver management program has occurred in the Chequamegon-Nicolet National Forest (CNNF) since 1988 (Willging 2017). The program targeted the most heavily impacted streams first, and in 1988 alone, 480 beaver and 668 dams were removed from streams in the CNNF (Dickerson 1989). Since then, aerial and ground surveys have been conducted annually to identify beaver presence and inform beaver management priorities to maintain stream systems in free-flowing conditions (Willging 2017). Ribic et al. (2017) recently conducted an analysis on the long-term effects the CNNF beaver program had on beaver colony density through 2013, and results found the control program was successful in reducing beaver colony densities along targeted streams. The success of this management strategy is not entirely surprising, as history has repeatedly shown intense trapping efforts can successfully reduce or eradicate local beaver populations from an area. Nonetheless, the CNNF management program demonstrates the effectiveness of using a targeted approach towards resolving a beaver-salmonid conflict, and is an example of a program that successfully used wildlife management to achieve its habitat restoration goals (Willging 2017).

The Wisconsin beaver and dam removal programs began at a time when the beaver population was approaching its maximum level (Figure 1.2). Low fur prices likely discouraged recreational trapping efforts, causing the beaver population to spike and a resultant increase in the number of beaver complaints to over 2,000 annually (WDNR 1990). At this time, the WDNR also experimented with a trapper subsidy program to assist with population reduction efforts (WDNR 1990). A team was assembled in 1990 to overhaul beaver management strategies, and culminated in the development of the 1990 Wisconsin beaver Management Plan (WDNR 1990). One of the key management objectives to come out of the 1990 Wisconsin beaver Management Plan was the development of 4 distinct beaver management zones, each with slightly different regulations (WDNR 1990). The zones were primarily based on regional beaver densities, frequency and category of beaver complaints, and incorporation of regional waterfowl data, with the intent of designing a program that used a greater adaptive management approach. Regarding salmonid streams, the zones also differed in quantity and quality of streams as determined by the 1980 statewide stream classification project (WDNR, 1980). Large, heavily impacted cold-water streams in the northern management zones were made a management priority, using a combination of APHIS-ADC personnel, WDNR trappers, and locally contracted trappers to conduct targeted beaver and dam removals similar to the CNNF program (WDNR 1990).

Current beaver management on salmonid streams

In 2001, Michigan established their current beaver adaptive management program based on two primary principles: (1) beaver, salmonids, and their habitats are managed for human needs and wants; and (2) the less common natural resource (i.e., cold-water streams) must be provided for, while still providing opportunities for beavers to exist (MDNR 2005). High-quality salmonid streams were identified by state fisheries divisions and approved by designated eco-region teams. Local managers are responsible for responding to and determining nuisance beaver presence on salmonid streams. The management plan also states that a zone of intact vegetation is required around the stream in order to protect water quality, and this zone is managed by local forestry divisions to discourage beaver use. Nuisance control is carried out by a combination of Wildlife, Law Enforcement, Forest Management, and Parks and Recreation Management personnel, depending on the region and type of land (public or private) on which the nuisance beavers are located.

Since the 1970s, the Minnesota DNR (MNDNR) has used beaver management on salmonid streams to maintain connectivity and modify habitat conditions in selected streams (D. Paron 2017, MNDNR, personal communication). For example, the MNDNR has conducted beaver and beaver dam removal in the Knife River watershed since 1994.

The watershed contains approximately half of all accessible adfluvial salmonid spawning and rearing habitat along the north shore of Lake Superior, making it a management priority in the region (MNDNR 2016). Relative to other north shore watersheds, the Knife River is comparatively low-gradient and is one of the only areas where wild steelhead spawn. Beaver control is carried out by contract trappers and MNDNR personnel, and is funded by revenue generated from fishing licenses and trout stamps (MNDNR 2016).

In 2015, the WDNR created a “Beaver Task Force” to develop a new beaver Management Plan to be used through 2025 that is considerably more extensive than other management plans in the WGL region. The northern Wisconsin beaver population has been on a steady decline for the last 2 decades (Figure 1.2), prompting the WDNR to increase research efforts across the state (WDNR 2015). In particular, WDNR managers have adopted an interdisciplinary approach to better inform management practices by understanding the positive and negative effects that beavers have on their ecosystems. The WDNR received input from stakeholders across the state that included trappers, tribal communities, public and private land managers, biologists, and citizens, in order to create a plan that effectively addresses the multiple-use beaver-salmonid-forest management strategy that has existed in the state since the 1960s (WDNR 2015). WDNR personnel plan to increase research throughout multiple ecoregions in the state, including using paired experimental design studies that incorporate reference streams to compare with stream manipulations. At present, APHIS-ADC continues to conduct beaver control on 200 salmonid streams totaling approximately 2400–2700 km (WDNR 2015, Willging 2017).

MANAGEMENT IMPLICATIONS

Salmonid research and management has shifted towards using a landscape ecology perspective to understand how large-scale ecological processes influence the spatiotemporal dynamics of fish populations. The physical and hydrologic properties of landscapes can be applied with reasonable accuracy to describe the nature and quality of riverscapes (see earlier sections), and this perspective has led to significant advances in fish biology and management (Fausch et al. 2002). One of the difficulties with managing beaver-salmonid interactions is that beaver activity can affect salmonid habitat characteristics differently at the stream or even reach scale, and resource managers are faced with reconciling these disparate perspectives of scale when managing beaver-salmonid conflicts. Early beaver management on salmonid streams was often conducted under the assumption that the effects beavers have on salmonids in one area are transferrable to other areas in the region. However, managers have become increasingly cognizant of the spatial variability of the beaver-salmonid relationship, and there has been a greater focus on using small-scale, adaptive management strategies to resolve beaver-salmonid conflicts. Finely calibrated beaver and dam removal efforts may be just as effective as large-scale removal programs (McRae and Edwards 1994, Ribic et al. 2017), and this approach has the added benefit of minimizing the impact on local beaver populations.

There is also a temporal component of the beaver-salmonid relationship that could be taken into account when designing management plans. In our review, we commonly found beaver dams may benefit salmonids in the first 2–4 years following dam creation before negative effects arise. We suggest that in some areas where beaver management occurs on an annual basis, an alternative management strategy could be conducting beaver management more sporadically (e.g., every 3–5 years). This strategy may mitigate the long-term negative effects of beaver activity on salmonid populations while still preserving the short-term benefits, and would also reduce the costs of labor and resources associated with conducting annual beaver management. Because dams generally persist on the landscape much longer in low-gradient streams, this management strategy is probably more applicable to those stream systems. Intensive beaver control may nonetheless be needed in areas where other habitat restoration efforts occur simultaneously, as beaver presence for even a short period of time may nullify the resources invested in restoring stream habitats.

Numerous stakeholders are influenced by beaver-salmonid interactions, and striking a balance between the often-conflicting groups is no easy task (Willging 2017). Within the WGL region, non-profit organizations such as trout Unlimited and local steelhead organizations are heavily involved with salmonid habitat management projects. Trout Unlimited has established successful partnerships with state and federal agencies to assist with salmonid management goals throughout the WGL region, and recently the Lake Superior Steelhead Association was awarded multiple grants to conduct beaver dam removal and habitat rehabilitation within the Knife River watershed along Lake Superior (ML 2014, Ch. 256, Art. 1, Sec. 2, Subd.5(h)). Though non-profit organizations advocating for beaver conservation are relatively uncommon throughout the region, many conservationists are opposed to beaver management programs on salmonid streams.

Indeed, controversy over management strategies has existed in the WGL region since the first beaver-salmonid studies, and continues to this day (WDNR 2015). Considering management decisions influence anglers, trappers, waterfowl hunters, foresters, and conservationists alike, resource managers must often make decisions that are unpopular with one or more of these groups. Where possible, the justification for making unpopular management decisions should be informed by empirically collected data that accurately characterizes the nature of the beaver-salmonid relationship of the stream region(s) in question.

Many salmonid populations in the WGL region are non-native species, which further complicates management priority decisions. The ecological impacts introduced salmonids have on stream ecosystems has not been comprehensively evaluated across the WGL region, but their introduction likely has a significant effect on resource competition with native salmonids (Krueger and May 1991). Brown trout have been shown to exclude brook trout from resting positions in streams and prey on juvenile brook trout in a Michigan stream (Fausch and White 1981), and brown trout replaced brook trout when habitat disturbances occurred in Valley Creek, Minnesota (Waters 1983). Yet, many anglers prefer to fish for non-native salmonids, influencing management decisions in the WGL region. In streams along the north shore of Lake Superior, for example, anglers prefer to fish for non-native steelhead and Kamloops rainbow trouts over native brook trout (Gartner et al. 2002, Schroeder 2013). Per survey results, individual anglers in the north shore report fishing for steelhead for more than 11 years on average (Gartner et al. 2002), indicating that steelhead presence in cold-water streams has a long-term influence on anglers' decision to fish in the watersheds; whether this preference continues in the event that coaster brook trout populations recover remains to be seen. In its current state, angling culture in the WGL region often favors the preservation and even proliferation of non-native salmonid populations despite the potential ecological consequences.

The effects of climate change may also have a substantial impact on salmonids. Many cold-water streams within the WGL region already approach the thermal tolerance for salmonids (Wehrly et al. 2003), and predicted increases in summer air temperatures could raise stream temperatures even further. Salmonids are expected to endure substantial habitat loss in the WGL region under projected climate change models (Sinokrot et al. 1995, Lyons et al. 2010, Herb et al. 2016), and beaver activity may exacerbate this problem in some areas. Contrarily, beaver ponds may offer valuable refugia for salmonids within streams during periods of drought by retaining water longer; and for many wildlife species, beaver wetlands provide essential open water habitat that actually mitigate the negative effects of drought (Hood and Bayley 2008). Beaver populations may also be negatively impacted by a changing climate, which further complicates this relationship. Though little research has been conducted evaluating the impact of climate on beavers, preliminary research from Wisconsin indicates that both wetter years and years with moderate droughts are associated with lower beaver colony densities (Ribic et al. 2017). Similarly, studies on the closely related Eurasian beaver *Castor fiber* suggest that increases in climatic variability and precipitation may negatively affect beaver reproduction and resource availability (Campbell et al. 2012, 2013, 2017). Understanding the complex beaver-salmonid relationship and implementing appropriate management plans may become even more challenging for researchers and managers in a changing climate, and future research should examine how this relationship could evolve.

CONCLUSIONS

Throughout the past century there has been a dramatic shift in beaver management practices that have occurred throughout the WGL region. Following the near extirpation of beavers due to overharvesting and habitat loss, early management was focused on promoting population growth through reintroductions and closed trapping seasons. Beaver populations rebounded within a few decades, and new management goals aimed at population control were established throughout the region. The first beaver control measures on salmonid streams, and in the region in general, tended to overshoot their targets and often led to significant declines in local beaver populations. By incorporating scientific-based research into game and fish management, over time resource managers increasingly used localized, adaptive management strategies to mediate beaver-salmonid interactions.

The Great Lakes region once supported abundant populations of native salmonids, attracting anglers from afar and providing an economic resource to local communities. Due to overexploitation, habitat degradation, and competition with non-native species, native salmonid populations crashed, prompting rehabilitation efforts throughout the WGL region. Despite the varying success of historical salmonid stocking programs, their impact on modern day fisheries and fishery management practices cannot be understated.

Today, habitat degradation and climate change are considered some of the most serious management issues concerning salmonid populations within the WGL region, and many agencies are involved in the continuous monitoring of stream systems and local salmonid populations. The degree to which beaver management is prioritized as a habitat restoration tool varies greatly within the WGL region, ranging from a peripheral component of many management plans to an integral component of others. Nonetheless the beaver-salmonid relationship has received considerable interest from public and scientific communities alike, and has remained a contentious issue within the WGL region since it first arose nearly a century ago. Agencies are currently addressing beaver-salmonid interactions through an ongoing effort to co-manage each species at sustainable population levels, while recognizing the recreational and ecological impact that each species provides.

While most research conducted in the WGL region has shown that beaver activity has a deleterious effect on salmonid populations, we found several examples where beaver activity was found to benefit salmonids (Table 1.1). We have highlighted numerous information gaps throughout this review that could enhance our understanding of the beaver-salmonid relationship, and identified scenarios when salmonids may benefit from beaver presence. All three states in the WGL region have prioritized the habitat requirements of salmonids over the presence of beavers in portions of the state, primarily because cold-water streams are a scarcer resource and angling is a popular source of recreation for citizens. As ecosystem engineers and a keystone species, beavers provide valuable ecological services to forest ecosystems in the WGL region (Johnston 2017), and removing beavers from stream reaches where their presence may actually benefit salmonids results in a lose-lose situation for forest ecosystems and natural resource management goals. We suggest the decision to remove beavers from cold-water streams should consider secondary ecosystem consequences associated with decreased beaver presence before implementing management plans.

Prior to European colonization, beavers and salmonids (native brook trout) were presumably able to coexist on the landscape without human intervention, and interactions between the two taxa were therefore the result of natural ecological processes within WGL stream ecosystems. What is different now from historical conditions? Why do many areas within the WGL region now require beaver control in order to maintain healthy, sustainable salmonid populations? Many resource managers believe that beaver populations are larger now than they have historically been due to the increase in young forest, though this hypothesis has yet to be rigorously tested. It is possible that beaver activities have always had a predominantly negative impact on salmonids (brook trout) in the WGL region, and the natural ecological processes are very similar to what is found in the region today. Anglers may therefore expect larger salmonid populations in WGL streams than are supportable based on natural processes. Identifying the historical conditions that existed prior to European colonization may provide insight into how beaver-salmonid dynamics have deviated over the past three centuries (beyond the introduction of non-native salmonids to WGL streams), and that information could be used to guide current and future resource management plans in cold-water streams. But even with historical context, resource managers will still often be confronted with the ecological and ethical dilemma that many currently face: should WGL cold-water streams be managed for the benefit of maintaining robust, well-dispersed salmonid populations; or be managed to replicate ‘natural’ ecological processes, even to the potential detriment of salmonids? The answer to this question will undoubtedly vary throughout the WGL region, depending on local ecological conditions, and cultural and resource management priorities. We hope our synthesis is a catalyst for further beaver-salmonid research from the WGL region, and encourages scientifically based management plans that identify when and where beaver control is necessary to achieve the desired resource management objectives.

Table 1.1. Summary of the main effects found from 21 beaver-salmonid studies conducted within the WGL region. Average stream gradient was inferred from author's comments, or obtained from stream assessments. Surficial geology was obtained from (Soller et al. 2009). Textured grain size is further identified as coarse (C), fine (F) or medium (M), and 'patchy' indicates that bedrock is exposed. Analysis type was considered "empirical" if quantitative results were presented; "anecdotal" if no quantitative results were presented; or "mixed" if quantitative results were presented for only some of the study's variables. Results from each study were evaluated to determine if beaver activity had a beneficial (↑), no effect (⇆), or deleterious (↓) effect on salmonids. Studies with multiple arrow types in a cell indicate that multiple effects were found in different portions of the study area.

Reference	State	Avg. gradient	Surficial geology	Data type	Stream temp.	Siltation	Migration barrier	Spawning habitat	Stream flow	Water chem. (DO, pH)	Population size	Avg. catch rate	Avg. catch size
DuBois and Schram (1993)	WI	Low	Glacial outwash (C)	Mixed	⇆[a]	↓[a]		↓			↑ / ↓[a]		
Haugstad (1970)	MN	Low	Glacial outwash (C) / glacial till (C)	Anecdotal	↓	↓		↓	↓		↓		
Klein and Newman (1992)	MN	Low	Glacial outwash (C) / glacial till (C)	Empirical	⇆ / ↓	⇆ /↓		↓	↓	↓	↑ /↓		
McRae and Edwards (1994)	WI	Low	Glacial outwash (C) / glacial till (C)	Empirical	↑ / ⇆ /↓								
Patterson (1951)	WI	Low	Glacial outwash (C) / glacial till (C)	Mixed	↓[a]	↓[a]	↓	↓			↑ / ↓[b]		↑ / ↓
Adams (1949)	MI	High	Glacial till (C)	Empirical	⇆ / ↓					⇆ / ↓		↑	
Adams (1954)	MI	High	Glacial till (C)	Empirical	⇆ / ↓		⇆			⇆ / ↓		↑ / ⇆	
Avery (2002)	WI	Low	Glacial till (M)	Empirical	↓			↓	↑ / ↓		↓	↓	↓
Christenson *et al.* (1961)[C]	WI	Mixed	Glacial till (M)	Mixed	⇆[a]	↓[a]	↓	↓	↓	↓	↑[b]		↑[b]

Table 1.1 (continued).

Reference	State	Avg. gradient	Surficial geology	Data type	Stream temp.	Siltation	Migration barrier	Spawning habitat	Stream flow	Water chem. (DO, pH)	Population size	Avg. catch rate	Avg. catch size
Shetter and Whalls (1955)[C]	MI	High	Glacial till (M)	Empirical	⇆				⇆			⇆	
Dumke *et al.* (2010)	WI	Low	Glacial till (F)	Empirical	⇆	↓		↓	↓				
Evans (1948)	MN	High	Glacial till (M), patchy	Mixed	⇆ / ↓[a]		⇆						
Hale (1950)	MN	High	Glacial till (M), patchy	Empirical								↑	↑
Hale (1966)[C]	MN	High	Glacial till (M), patchy	Mixed	⇆		↓				↑[a]	↓[a]	↑[a]
Peterson (2012)	MN	Low	Glacial till (M), patchy	Empirical	↓								
Smith and Moyle (1944)	MN	Low	Glacial till (M), patchy	Empirical	↓								
Bradt (1935b)	MI	Mixed	Mixed	Anecdotal								↓	↓
Carbine (1944)	MI	High	Mixed	Anecdotal	↓		↓					↑	↑
Knudsen (1962)	WI	Mixed	Mixed	Anecdotal	↓	↓	⇆		↑		↑[b]		↑[b]
Salyer (1935)	MI	Mixed	Mixed	Mixed	⇆[a]	↓	↓[a]	↓		↓[a]	↑ / ↓[b]	↑ /↓[b]	
Twork (1936)[C]	MI	Unk.	Unk.	Mixed	⇆[a]	↑	↓		⇆		↑		

[a] Denotes quantitative variables from studies that use mixed analyses.
[b] Beneficial effects on salmonids found only in first 2–4 years after dam establishment.
[c] Christenson et al. (1961), Hale (1966), and Shetter and Whalls (1955) found increased water temperatures downstream of dams, and Twork (1936) stated a decrease in temperature after dam removal; however, stream temperatures did not exceed the thermal limits for Brook Trout (20–24 °C).

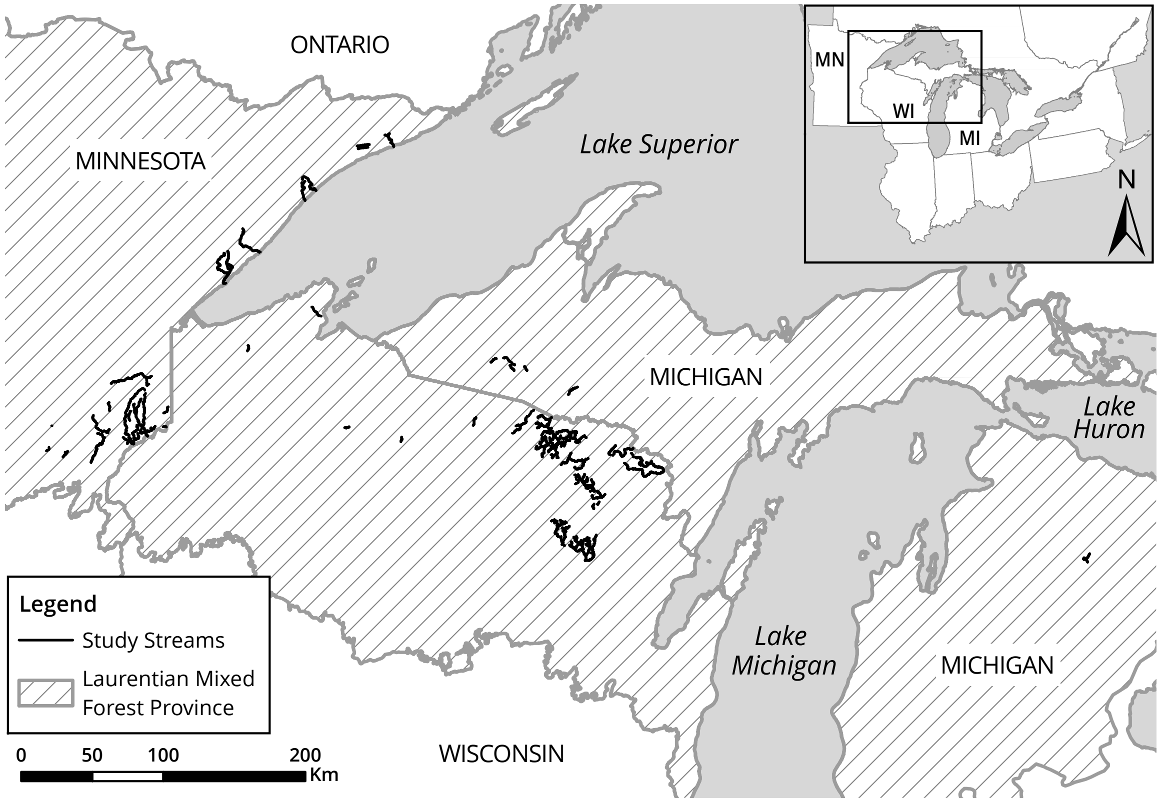


Figure 1.1. Map showing where beaver–salmonid studies have been conducted in the western Great Lakes region. Most of the studies are clustered regionally in northeast Wisconsin, east-central Minnesota, the north shore of Lake Superior, and the Upper Peninsula of Michigan. Several studies (Bradt 1935b, Salyer 1935, Twork 1936, Carbine 1944) did not include spatial information and are not pictured here.

	Logging and Settlement Era 1870–1930	*Early Management Era* 1930–1960	*Late Management Era* 1960–1990	*Current Management Era* 1990–present
Native salmonids	Land-use practices degrade streams, native salmonid populations decline. First Brook Trout hatchery programs begin.	Stream, riparian habitat improvement methods developed. First beaver-salmonid studies initiated in WGL.	Technical advancements and increased revenue expand stream habitat improvement projects.	Establish diffuse populations of native salmonids that can reproduce naturally and coexist with non-native salmonids.
Non-native salmonids	Early stocking era begins, to supplement native salmonid populations decimated by human development, overexploitation.	Second stocking era begins after Lake Trout populations crash due to Sea Lamprey invasion and overharvest.	Hatchery programs continue in effort to diversify fisheries and control invasive forage species.	Meet commercial and recreational fishery demands without impairing genetic diversity of native salmonids.
Beaver	Beavers nearly extirpated. Relocation and reintroduction efforts occur to promote colonization and propagation.	Beaver populations irrupt. First management plans implemented, goal of balancing beaver-salmonid needs.	Increased use of localized, adaptive management strategies to control beaver populations.	Interdisciplinary approach to manage beaver-salmonid resources, and maintain ecological integrity of forests.

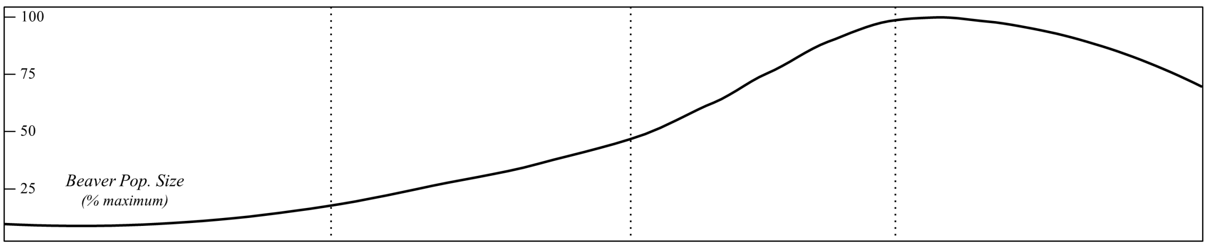


Figure 1.2. Timeline of major events from different management eras and a graph of the approximate beaver population trend from the western Great Lakes (WGL) region (1870–present). The beaver population trendline was estimated from a combination of historical pelt records (Obbard et al. 1987), unpublished beaver colony count data from the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, and population data from the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR 2015). Percent maximum refers to the percentage of the maximum beaver population size after European settlement. Presettlement beaver abundance is unknown but was likely 50–100% of the 1990 peak.

CHAPTER TWO

Factors Influencing Annual Rates of Change in the Number of Beaver Colonies

SUMMARY

Understanding how wildlife populations respond to density-dependent (DD) and density-independent (DI) factors is critically important for wildlife management and research, as this knowledge can allow us to predict population responses to forcing mechanisms such as climate, predation, and exploitation. Recent advancements in statistical methods have allowed researchers to disentangle the relative influence each factor has on wildlife population dynamics, but this work is ongoing. Using a long-term dataset collected from 1975 to 2002, we sought to evaluate the relative influence DD and a suite of covariates (weather, harvest, habitat quality, and wolf [*Canis lupus*] predation) had on annual rates of change in the number of beaver (*Castor canadensis*) colonies among 15 populations in northern Minnesota, USA.

We modeled changes in beaver colony densities using a discrete-time Gompertz model within a Bayesian inference framework, and compared model performance among three global models using Deviance Information Criterion (DIC) widely available information criterion (WAIC): a DI model without covariates; a DD model without covariates; and a DD model with covariates. Our results provide strong evidence for compensatory (negative) DD within beaver colony dynamics. We found no evidence that covariates related to harvest, wolf predation, or habitat quality significantly influenced beaver colony growth rates, but cold winters (lag-0), spring drought (lag-0), and fall drought conditions (lag-2) were correlated with greater colony growth rates. Despite strong evidence of the effect of environmental covariates on beaver colony dynamics, prediction of colony dynamics using these covariates showed only minimal improvements. We

suggest the lack of improvement in prediction was the result of model over-fitting, indicating our significant covariate effects may not be biologically relevant.

Our analysis demonstrates how reliance on information criterion values may lead to erroneous conclusions in time-series analyses, and using a hindcasting approach like the one we present here may help determine whether model results are biologically relevant or merely statistically significant. Our results highlight the importance of long-term monitoring programs for evaluating the efficacy of predictive ecological models. That beaver populations are primarily intrinsically regulated has important management implications depending on whether the objectives concern eradicating beavers from unwanted regions, mitigating conflicts, or facilitating rewilding or colonization efforts.

INTRODUCTION

Wildlife population dynamics are influenced by density-dependent and density-independent mechanisms, yet detecting and quantifying the relative importance each factor has on fluctuating populations remains challenging (Koons et al. 2015). Density-independent factors (e.g., weather variables) can limit population size by influencing the long-term behavior of the population, whereas density-dependent factors, such as territoriality, competition, and disease, influence a population's tendency to approach equilibrium (i.e., regulation; Sinclair 1989, Turchin 1995, Sinclair and Pech 1996). These mechanisms influence wildlife population vital rates, and in conjunction with immigration and emigration, they cause population fluctuations through time (Royama 1992, Boyce et al. 2006). Recent statistical advances have spurred new efforts to disentangle the relative influence of density-dependent and density-independent mechanisms in wildlife population dynamics (e.g., Wang et al. 2009, Rotella et al. 2009, Creel and Creel 2009, Pasinelli et al. 2011, Koons et al. 2015, Ferguson et al. 2017). While these approaches are commonly used to forecast wildlife dynamics, validation of these forecasts remains a relatively unexplored frontier in ecology.

Ecological forecasting has emerged as a robust conceptual framework that evaluates models based on their ability to make verifiable predictions about future ecological dynamics based on current data. The science of ecological forecasting has rapidly advanced over the past few years, and there is a growing need to empirically assess how well current theory and inferential methods make ecological predictions (Dietze et al. 2018). While new techniques have been developed to describe how to partition uncertainty in predictions (Petchey et al. 2015, Dietze 2017, Pennekamp et al. 2019), we still do not have a good understanding of how to determine which models lead to reliable predictions. Direct calculations of the predictive error may yield reliable measures of a model's forecasting ability, and provide an interpretable measure of a model's predictive power. A simple way to determine the forecasting ability of models is to withhold a portion of data from the fitting process (unseen data), then use the model to predict the withheld data and compare the predictions with the observed data (a process termed *hindcasting*). In many ecological studies there is simply not enough data to perform hindcasting, especially when considering the dynamics of large animal populations often occur on decadal time scales. Thus, long-term ecological studies can provide opportunities to assess the predictive ability of current model selection approaches. Assessing the reliability of model predictions will likely advance the study and management of wildlife populations by providing a tool to quantitatively test how factors influence future population dynamics, and may be a technique that is particularly important for species that are of special concern due to their rarity, presence in non-native environments (i.e., invasive species), or important ecological role within ecosystems.

Beavers (*Castor canadensis* and *C. fiber*) are ecosystem engineers whose abundance and distribution are increasing in North America, Europe, and Asia, and the reintroduction and conservation of beavers is becoming an increasingly valuable tool to restore ecosystem functions (Burchsted et al. 2010, Pollock et al. 2014, Law et al. 2017, Willby et al. 2018). Beaver alterations to stream and riparian ecosystems have many positive effects for native ecosystems (Naiman et al. 1986, Johnston 2017), such as mitigating the impact of climate for fish and wildlife species (Hood and Bayley 2008), and increasing habitat heterogeneity, species diversity, and species richness within beaver-modified environments (Naiman et al. 1988, Wright et al. 2002, Rosell et al. 2005, Windels 2017, Willby et al. 2018). On the other hand, beaver dam-building and foraging habits can be destructive to anthropogenic and natural resources (Bhat et al. 1993, Jensen et al. 2001). Further, deliberate introductions of *C. canadensis* outside of their natural range have resulted in substantial damage to South American ecosystems (Anderson et al. 2006a, Anderson and Rosemond 2007, Westbrook et al. 2017) and created interspecific competition with the native *C. fiber* in parts of Eurasia (Parker et al. 2013). Beavers are accordingly managed as a nuisance and/or exotic species throughout much of their geographic extent, in addition to being managed for their ecosystem engineering.

Relative to the extensive history of beaver management and exploitation in North America, surprisingly little is known about the population dynamics of this iconic species, particularly at the landscape or regional scale. But previous research suggests beaver population dynamics may be influenced by several factors, including population density, habitat quality, human exploitation, predation, and weather. Reduced fecundity (Payne 1984*a*) and delayed dispersal (Mayer et al. 2017a) have been observed in high density beaver populations, and the interaction of habitat quality, territoriality, and intraspecific competition is thought to regulate beaver colony densities (Bergerud and Miller 1977, Boyce 1981*a*, Novak 1987, Baker and Hill 2003). Beaver densities are robust under low to moderate harvest pressure (Müller-Schwarze and Schulte 1999) and may even exhibit compensation (Boyce 1981*b*); however, once mortality rates exceed

25–33% (typically 1.0–1.5 beaver/colony/year; Baker and Hill 2003), beaver populations tend to decline (Payne 1984*b*, 1989, Potvin et al. 1992). Predation was thought to cause population declines in two studies (Potvin et al. 1992, Romanski 2010), but recent research suggests there is little evidence that demonstrates predation can suppress beaver population sizes (Theberge and Theberge 2004, Gable and Windels 2018, Gable et al. 2018). Finally, several different weather variables have been found to affect beavers, including average spring (Campbell et al. 2013, Ribic et al. 2017) and winter temperatures (Smith and Jenkins 1997, Campbell et al. 2013), seasonal precipitation (Campbell et al. 2012, 2013), and drought regimes (Ribic et al. 2017). Understanding how beaver populations respond to intrinsic, anthropogenic, and environmental factors will not only increase our understanding of beaver population ecology in general, but by extension will also help elucidate how beaver-engineered environments may change in tandem with beaver population dynamics.

Here, we use a long-term dataset collected by the Minnesota (USA) Department of Natural Resources (MNDNR) to evaluate how density-dependent and density-independent covariates affect the annual rates of change in the number of beaver colonies (hereafter referred to as 'colony growth rates'). Our specific objectives with the present study were to (1) estimate the strength of density dependence among our beaver populations; (2) determine the relative influence that other covariates (weather, harvest, wolf [*Canis lupus*] predation, and habitat quality) had on annual colony growth rates; and (3) test the predictive value of our model assessments using an ecological forecasting approach. Due to the territorial nature of beavers and the previous observation of reduced fecundity in high density populations (Payne 1984*a*), we hypothesized density-dependent mechanisms significantly influenced beaver colony growth rates. We expected habitat quality would positively influence colony growth rates, as previous research has demonstrated reductions in habitat quality can affect colony persistence (Busher and Lyons 1999, Fryxell 2001). Although beaver reproduction may be compensatory in exploited populations (Payne 1984b, 1989, Boyce et al. 1999), we hypothesized harvest rates were high enough to negatively affect colony growth rates, as our study's time frame encompassed the "fur boom" of the 1980s when as many as 170,000 beavers were harvested annually in Minnesota. We expected weather variables to have a lesser impact, as beavers have the ability to partially de-couple their habitats from environmental conditions through their creation and maintenance of ponds. Consistent with recent research by Gable and Windels (2018), we hypothesized wolf predation did not impact colony growth rates.

METHODS

Study Area

Our study area encompassed approximately the northern half of Minnesota (Figure 2.1) within the Laurentian Mixed Forest Province that covers more than 9.3 million ha in the northeastern portion of Minnesota (Cleland et al. 2007). The study area lies in the transition zone between temperate deciduous and boreal (subarctic) forest ecoregions, and the vegetative composition varies considerably within the study area (MNDNR 2017). Fire-dependent oak (*Quercus* spp.) and jack pine (*Pinus banksiana*) forests are prevalent in the southern and western portions of the study area, while large swaths of black spruce (*Picea mariana*) bogs and tamarack (*Larix laricina*) swamps comprise portions of the western and northern sections. Mesic hardwood forests are common throughout the central and eastern sections of the study area, while coniferous forest communities are prevalent in the northeastern section. Human density varies widely throughout the study area, but most survey routes were conducted throughout sparsely populated areas.

Relevant temperature and precipitation averages for our study were obtained from the PRISM Climate Working Group. Average annual precipitation across our study's time frame (1972–2002, including time lag of 3 yr) ranged from 616.2 ± 95.8 mm to 773.0 ± 141.4 mm at each route, with an average of 66% of total precipitation falling during the growing season (May–Sep) (PRISM Climate Group 2014). Average winter temperatures (Dec–Mar) were similar across all routes, ranging from –11.2 ± 2.3 °C to –8.4 ± 2.2 °C. Average maximum May temperatures (spring green-up season) ranged from 18.3 ± 2.6 °C to 20.0 ± 2.5 °C.

Within our study area wolves are the main predator of beavers, which are an important food source for wolves during the ice-free season (Voigt et al. 1976, Gable et al. 2017). Minnesota's wolf population was expanding during our study's time frame after being listed on the Endangered Species Act in 1974 (MNDNR 2001). The wolf population grew from an estimated low of 750 individuals at the time of listing to approximately 2,450 by 1997-98, extending their range by nearly 30,000 km^2 (MNDNR 2001) that included colonizing four survey routes during our study's time frame (Figure 2.1). Although black bears (*Ursus americanus*) and coyotes (*C. latrans*) are also present within our study area (Hazard 1982), because there is no evidence to suggest predation rates from these species can influence beaver populations (except in unusual circumstances such as in isolated island populations; Smith et al. 1994) these species were not included in our assessment.

Annual Beaver Colony Surveys

The MNDNR conducted annual population surveys by identifying and counting active beaver colonies from a fixed-wing aircraft along 25 pre-determined routes from 1975 to 2002, a survey method that resource managers have used for many decades to estimate beaver populations (Johnston and Windels 2015). Observers distinguished active colonies by identifying the presence of a visible food cache, which is the colony's winter food source that consists of piles of semi-submerged logs and twigs and can be seen in the fall just prior to freeze-up (Payne 1981, Brown and Parsons 1982, Johnston and Windels 2015). Supplementary observations such as fresh mud on dams and/or lodges were also used to determine whether colonies were active in a given year. Surveys were conducted between 0900–1600 hours in assorted 2- and 4-person fixed-wing aircraft after leaf-off, but before ice formed on water features (mid-September–early November).

We digitized and calculated the length of each survey route in ArcGIS 10.5 (Environmental Systems Research Institute, Inc., Redlands, CA) using hand-drawn maps used by MNDNR personnel as reference. Route lengths (range: 94–336 km) and types were variable; three routes were flown in a series of linear transects, while seven routes followed waterways exclusively (e.g., lake shores, rivers, streams), and the remaining five routes used a combination of transect and waterway segments (Figure 2.1). We digitized each route by inferring the aircraft's flight path based on the reference maps (Figure 2.2), which resulted in density estimates of the number of active colonies/km surveyed by the aircraft.

Aerial cache surveys can be susceptible to observer bias (Novak 1987, Romanski 2010), so we limited our data selection to routes with the greatest consistency of survey conditions. We selected routes that had a maximum of three different primary observers throughout the entire survey period of each route. We then excluded individual surveys that were conducted at a mean flight altitude <60 m or >300 m, as we assumed detection probability decreased at those altitudes (Romanski 2010). Finally, we eliminated all routes where surveys were not conducted (or eliminated based on flight altitude) >20% of the survey time period (e.g., surveys conducted over a 15-yr period from the first to last observation could have no more than three missing years of survey data). Following this data selection process, we retained data from 15 of 25 routes with an average time series length of 22.3 yr (Table 2.1).

Variable Selection

Based on previous studies evaluating the impact of weather on beavers (Campbell et al. 2012, 2013, Ribic et al. 2017, Campbell et al. 2017), we selected four weather variables for our analysis: (1) mean maximum temperature during the spring green-up season (May); (2) growing season (May–September) drought index; (3) fall (August–October) drought index; and (4) winter severity (December–March temperature). We also selected spring (April–June) drought index, as we thought juvenile dispersal might have decreased during dry years when a lack of water on the landscape could have restricted connectivity between aquatic habitats. Temperature values were obtained from PRISM (NASCE 2017) using the R package *prism* (Hart and Bell 2015). We used monthly raster files at a 4 km scale of resolution, averaged values across the entire route using the 'Zonal Statistics as Table' tool in ArcGIS (exploratory analysis showed average temperature values did not differ significantly within routes), and used a Python script to summarize multiple monthly PRISM raster files at once within ArcGIS. We used Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) values to evaluate drought conditions, obtained from the US drought portal (National Integrated Drought Information System 2018). PDSI values provide a standardized index (range: –7 to 7) for estimating the amount of water that is available for plants (Ribic et al. 2017); values <0 indicate drought conditions. Our study area encompassed three different PDSI climate divisions: North Central (2102), Northeast (2103), and East Central (2106). Routes that crossed multiple divisions were assigned PDSI values corresponding to the division containing the longest portion. All temperature and drought values were averaged (mean) across their timeframe of interest (e.g., the fall drought value was the mean average across August, September, and October monthly drought values).

We assessed habitat quality by developing an index of high-quality forage availability for each route. We first applied a 1 km "habitat buffer" around each route, which corresponds to the 800 m observer sight distance plus an additional 25% buffer to account for habitat characteristics of ponds that may have straddled the sight distance boundary (Figure 2.2). Beavers generally restrict their foraging to within 30–50 m of the riparian zone (Johnston and Naiman 1987, Donkor and Fryxell 1999, Martell et al. 2006), so we applied a second 50 m "forage buffer" around all water features within the habitat buffer to isolate only habitat characteristics that were available for beaver foraging (Figure 2.2). We extracted all stream features from the MNDNR hydrography dataset (MNDNR 2014) and all lake/wetland features from the Minnesota National Wetland Inventory (NWI) (MNDNR 2009); we selected only NWI features that consisted of 'unconsolidated bottom' (i.e., open water) classes within 'lacustrine' and 'palustrine' systems. We used the 1992 National Land Cover Database (NLCD; Vogelmann et al. 2001) as our habitat layer input, which corresponds to characteristics that were present in the middle of our timeframe. High-quality beaver habitat generally consists of deciduous and early successional forest communities (Novak 1987); therefore, we defined high-quality forage as "Deciduous" and "Mixed" forest classes. We took the total area of deciduous and mixed classes within the forage buffer divided by the total area within the habitat buffer, to obtain a final index that approximately equates to the relative abundance of high-quality forage within each route.

We also sought to evaluate whether the previous year's harvest season(s) had a significant impact on beaver populations. To estimate annual harvests, the MNDNR conducted annual mail surveys and multiplied the mean number of beavers harvested per respondent by the total number of licenses sold. Spring and fall harvests are approximately equal in Minnesota (J. Erb, unpublished data), so we summed the seasonal harvest estimates to obtain a single annual value. No spatially explicit harvest data exists for our timeframe, only statewide estimates. There was a limit of 10 pelts per license in 1975 and the harvest season was closed in 1976, but there was no harvest limit for beavers from 1977 to 2002. All routes were available to trappers excluding Kabetogama, where trapping ceased in 1975 when Voyageurs National Park was established.

To evaluate the influence of predation on beaver population growth rates, we used wolf density estimates as a proxy for predation pressure. Because wolf densities increase linearly with available ungulate prey biomass (Fuller 1989, Fuller et al. 2003), we estimated annual wolf densities for each route by calculating ungulate biomass index (BMI) values (Kuzyk and Hatter 2014, Mech and Barber-Meyer 2015). We used the following regression equation presented in Mech and Barber-Meyer (2015) to estimate annual wolf densities:

$$Wolves\ per\ 1000\ km^{-2} = 2.0622 + 3.5254 \times BMI \qquad \text{Equation 2.1}$$

where BMI was calculated by adding the density of white-tailed deer (*Odocoileus virginianus*)/km^2, plus 6 times the density of moose (*Alces alces*)/km^2 (the number of white-tailed deer "relative biomass equivalents" presented in Fuller et al. (2003). We obtained deer densities from MNDNR pellet survey estimates (Norton 2018, and MNDNR unpublished data), and moose densities from MNDNR aerial survey estimates (Karns 1982, Lenarz 1998, 2006, Murray et al. 2006).

For the four routes that experienced wolf range expansion (Cass, Cass-Crow, Itasca, Southern Pine; Figure 2.1), we estimated wolf densities as a proportion of the ungulate BMI-derived density for each year wolves were actively re-colonizing the area. We used wolf population recovery data presented by Hayes and Harestad (2000) to estimate how wolf densities within each route reached their predicted densities within six years of establishment. We then used the population estimates from Hayes and Harestad (2000) to estimate ungulate BMI-derived density proportions for each year of the re-colonization as follows: 0.12, year 1; 0.28, year 2; 0.52, year 3; 0.76, year 4; 0.84, year 5; and 1.00, year 6. We determined the first year of wolf re-colonization using a combination of annual scent-post surveys (Sargeant et al. 2003, and MNDNR unpublished data) and extensive wolf population surveys from 1978-89, 1988-89, and 1997-98, using the first year of wolf detection within 50 km of each route as the first year of re-colonization. We acknowledge the first wolf detection near a route may have been a dispersing individual rather than an established pack, but because we know wolves became established within each of these four routes during our study time period, we believe this method is adequate for estimating the approximate year of re-colonization.

Data Analysis[1]

To evaluate whether observer bias could have significantly impacted survey counts, we conducted an exploratory analysis to estimate observation error within our dataset by fitting our data to a discrete-time Gompertz state-space model with measurement error (Dennis et al. 2006). State-space models are frequently used in time-series analyses to decouple observation and process error from sampling variation, allowing researchers to estimate the relative contributions density-dependent and density-independent factors

[1] Data analysis was performed by Jake M. Ferguson.

have on population dynamics (de Valpine and Hastings 2002, Clark and Bjørnstad 2004, Dennis et al. 2006, Koons et al. 2015). Not accounting for the influence of observation error can lead to erroneous conclusions about the relative strength of density dependence within wildlife populations (Turchin 1995, Freckleton et al. 2006). Results from our exploratory analysis suggested observation error did not have a significant effect on sampling variation within our dataset, and thus did not affect our estimates of the strength of density dependence.

Juvenile dispersal is thought to be the primary mechanism of population expansion (Baker and Hill 2003), so we selected our extrinsic variables and incorporated time lags into our analysis based on how we predicted each variable might affect juvenile dispersal, recruitment, and survival. Although population density and harvest can alter the timing of dispersal (Boyce 1981b, Mayer et al. 2017a), beavers typically disperse from their natal colony by age 2 or 3 (van Deelen and Pletscher 1996, Sun et al. 2000, McNew and Woolf 2005); thus, we incorporated time lags ranging from 0 to 3 years into our statistical model.

We modeled beaver colony dynamics using a model of contest competition, which describes the increasing utilization of available resources with increasing density (Hassell 1975). Our models described changes in the log density, $X_{i,j} = \ln\left(\frac{N_{i,j}}{A_i}\right)$, where $N_{i,j}$ is the abundance of population i in year j and A_i is the area surveyed for population i. We applied the Gompertz model (Dennis and Taper 1994) which includes the growth rate, a, and a strength of density dependence, b, along with a random effect to account for variation between subpopulations in the density-independent reproductive rate (u_i), that is not accounted for by covariates. We included the effects of environmental covariates ($\boldsymbol{Z_{i,j}}$) on the density-independent growth rate. The final quantity in the model is a variance term, $\varepsilon_{i,j}$, that accounts for unexplained inter-annual variation in the density of population *i* in year *j*.

$$X_{i,j} = a + u_i + (1 - b)X_{i,j-1} + \beta\boldsymbol{Z_{i,j}} + \varepsilon_{i,j}$$

$$u_i \sim \mathrm{Norm}(0, \sigma_a)$$

$$\varepsilon_{i,j} \sim \mathrm{Norm}(0, \sigma_i)$$

The environmental covariates used in this analysis ($\boldsymbol{Z_{i,j}}$) are described in the previous section. Briefly, they are the number of beaver harvested at the state-level in the previous year adjusted for route length, the estimated route-level wolf density in the current year, the route-level PDSI during the spring in the current year, the route-level PDSI during the growing season lagged two and three years, the route-level PDSI during the fall lagged two and three years, the route-level winter temperatures for the current year and lagged two years, and the route-level average maximum temperature in May lagged two and three years.

We used the deviance information criterion (DIC) and widely available information criterion (WAIC) (Watanabe 2010) to test (1) the full model described above (*DD_{cov} model*) against (2) the density-dependent model without covariates (*DD model*), and (3) a density-independent model without covariates (*DI model*). Both of these criteria were developed to approximate the out-of-sample prediction error (Gelman et al. 2014). Models were fit using MCMC implemented by Just Another Gibbs Sampler (JAGS) (Plummer 2003) by making 10^6 draws from the posterior. We thinned our resulting chain by every 10^2 draw due to strong autocorrelation in some parameters.

In addition to fitting the full dataset using the procedures described above, we tested the performance of model predictions by holding out the final 1/3 of observations for each population, fitting the models to this reduced dataset, then hindcasting the held-out data. We assessed predictive performance using the average root mean squared prediction error (MSPE) of the predicted density and the observed density. The MSPE for site *k* is given by $\text{MSPE}_k = \sqrt{\sum_{\{i=1\}}^{n} \left(D_i - \widehat{D}_i\right)^2}$. We then averaged the MSPE's across sites to get the overall MSPE. In order to determine whether model inferences were consistent between the full dataset and withheld dataset, we compared parameter estimates from each dataset using Deming regression implemented in the R package *deming* (Therneau 2018), which allows for errors in both dependent and independent variables.

RESULTS

The observed mean density of beaver colonies in our study sites was 0.59 (SD = 0.33) colonies/km. The average site densities ranged from a minimum of 0.28 colonies/km in Kanabec to 1.60 colonies/km in Kabetogama (Figure 2.3).

Our model selection procedure indicated that the DD_{cov} model performed best in terms of DIC, WAIC, and predictive performance (Table 2.2). However, improvement in the predicted density was small relative to the DD model. The average improvement in predictability was only 3% (minimum –52%, maximum 42%), less than we expected given the high ΔDIC (12.31) and ΔWAIC (14.14) values indicated strong evidence for the DD_{cov} model. We found no systematic differences between the covariates estimated from the full dataset and the covariates estimated from the holdout dataset, with all posterior estimates within 1 standard deviation of the one-to-one line that indicates equal estimates (Figure 2.4). Our estimate of the slope of the line that best explains the relationship between these points was 1.24 (SE = 0.19).

The average strength of density dependence across all populations was $\hat{b}$ = −0.64 (SD = 0.07, Bayesian credible interval based on 95% of the highest posterior density [BCI] = −0.77 to −0.50; Table 2.3). We found the average log-intrinsic growth rate across all routes (density-independent growth) was $\hat{a}$ = –0.47 (SD = 0.09, BCI = –0.66 to –0.29), with an average variation in the population-level growth rates of $\hat{\sigma}_a = 0.28$ (SD = 0.07, BCI = 0.17 to 0.46) (Table 2.3).

Of the 12 covariates we evaluated in the DD_{cov} model, three had a statistically significant influence on beaver colony growth rates. Average winter temperature during the same year was negatively correlated with growth rates (β_4 = –0.04, SD = 0.02, BCI = –0.09 to –0.01), indicating growth rates were higher in years with colder winters. Spring PDSI values during the same year (β_8 = –0.05, SD = 0.02, BCI = –0.09 to –0.02) and fall PDSI values lag-2 (β_{11} = –0.07, SD = 0.03, BCI = –0.13, –0.01) were both negatively correlated with colony growth rates, indicating a positive relationship between drought conditions and annual growth rates (PDSI values <0 indicate drought). Of the remaining nine covariates evaluated we found a weak, but statistically insignificant (i.e, SD posterior estimates did not overlap zero, but BCI estimates did) positive correlation between colony growth rates and habitat quality (β_2 = 0.15, SD = 0.08, BCI = 0.00 to 0.31). All other covariates did not have a significant influence on colony growth rates (Table 2.3).

DISCUSSION

Our results indicate inter-annual fluctuations in beaver colony densities are driven primarily by density-dependent mechanisms and perhaps, to a lesser extent, by weather variables (winter temperature, spring drought, fall drought [lag-2]; Table 2.3). Our estimate for the average strength of density dependence across all populations ($\hat{b}$ = −0.64) provides strong evidence that beaver populations in our study exhibited compensatory (negative) density dependence (Herrando-Pérez et al. 2012). Several density-dependent mechanisms have been previously identified that likely influence density-dependent colony growth rates. As a territorial species, beavers regulate colony density through scent-marking behavior (Aleksiuk 1968, Müller-Schwarze and Heckman 1980, Rosell and Nolet 1997) and intraspecific aggression (Bergerud and Miller 1977), but previous research has also shown density can affect the fecundity (Payne 1984*a*) and timing of natal dispersal in beavers (Mayer et al. 2017a) (and by extension, the age at first breeding; Mayer et al. 2017b). The absence of demographic data precludes us from determining which density-dependent mechanisms exerted the greatest influence on colony density fluctuations.

Despite the DD_{cov} model performing significantly better than the DD model, the DD_{cov} model's ability to predict future observations of colony densities was only slightly better (Table 2.2). We suggest the modest improvement in prediction ability is likely due to the DD_{cov} model over-fitting our data, which thus draws into question whether our significant covariate effects are biologically relevant. This is further supported by the perplexing direction of all statistically significant weather effects, which suggest positive correlations between beaver colony growth rates and drought conditions, and between colony growth rates and colder winters — results that contradict previous studies (Smith and Jenkins 1997, Campbell et al. 2012, 2013, Ribic et al. 2017, Brommer et al. 2017). However, we selected most of our weather variables based on two previous studies (Campbell et al. 2012, Ribic et al. 2017) that used multimodel inferential methods that may have also resulted in over-fit models. As a general rule, it is recommended to restrict model degrees of freedom to 5 to 10% of the effective sample size (Burnham and Anderson 2002, Giudice et al. 2012) and limit the number of models tested to avoid over-fitting data (Fieberg and Johnson 2015). Campbell et al. (2012) evaluated beaver survival and recruitment rates using numerous global models (63 and 32, respectively) for 242 individuals, while Ribic et al. (2017) had low statistical power to effectively evaluate colony density dynamics (5 parameters, n = 34; 10–12 parameters, n = 55); both of these statistical methods did not adhere to multimodel inference recommendations. Thus, given the potential problems with over-fit models in our analysis and previous studies, considerable uncertainty remains surrounding how weather variables affect beavers. Future studies may help interpret whether a previously unknown aspect of beaver ecology (e.g., early juvenile dispersal during drought conditions) is responsible for the significant and contradictory effects of weather in our data set, or if our results are statistically significant, but not biologically relevant due to our model over-fitting.

Both human harvest and wolf densities were not significantly correlated with beaver colony growth rates (Table 2.3). Harvest data was only available at the statewide scale, which probably limited our evaluation. However, in a broader sense, we wanted to determine whether coarse patterns of trapping intensity would have an overall effect on beaver populations. Our results suggest that was not the case and indicate that, on average, harvest intensity levels were moderate during our study. With regards to wolf predation, our results are consistent with recent research from northern Minnesota that demonstrated beaver populations can be resilient to intense predation pressure (Gable and Windels 2018); beaver colony density increased even after wolves were estimated to have removed more than 40% of beavers within their territory during the previous year, indicating mortality from wolf predation may be compensatory (Gable and Windels 2018) as has been suggested in harvested populations (Payne 1984b, 1989, Boyce et al. 1999). Although it could be argued that wolf predation rates on beavers may change in response to ungulate densities, implying our method to estimate wolf densities may not accurately assess predation pressure, there is currently no evidence to suggest this is true. More research is needed to understand the functional and numerical relationships between wolves, ungulates, and beavers (Gable et al. 2018), but our results support the notion that wolf predation rates on beavers are not high enough to suppress beaver colony densities in multiple-prey systems.

Our metric for habitat quality had a positive, but statistically insignificant effect on inter-annual beaver colony growth rates (Table 2.3). We elected to use NLCD habitat data from a single time period to evaluate whether broad forest type characteristics could influence beaver colony dynamics, but we did not find support for this hypothesis. Given previous studies have shown habitat quality can affect colony densities (Novak 1987, Busher and Lyons 1999), finer-scale habitat data may have produced a different result. Accounting for forest age in addition to forest type may have resulted in a better index of beaver habitat quality. However, the more likely scenario is that habitat quality probably affects long-term colony density trends rather than the inter-annual changes we evaluated in this study. Indeed, the degradation of habitat quality over time was suggested to have been responsible for long-term population trends within two study areas (Busher 1987, Busher and Lyons 1999).

The biggest limitation of using only aerial fall cache surveys to assess beaver population size is the absence of individual-based data, which likely limits what conclusions can be made about how various factors influence beaver population dynamics. Fall cache survey methods produce only a count of the number of active colonies along the survey route, which inherently assumes average colony size is universal across space and time (McTaggart and Nelson 2003). Yet, average beaver colony size can fluctuate spatially and temporally (Novak 1987, Baker and Hill 2003) and may even be higher in unexploited populations (Payne 1989, Müller-Schwarze and Schulte 1999) — characteristics that are not accounted for by this survey methodology. We suspect the absence of individual-based data may have limited our own conclusions about how various factors influenced beaver populations.

Beavers are a unique study species to research mammalian population dynamics at multiple temporal and spatial scales with relative ease. Beaver works such as dams and lodges are conspicuous on the landscape and therefore easy to count (Johnston and Windels 2015); a recent study from Finland has even demonstrated the efficacy of using citizen science to obtain colony estimates (Brommer et al. 2017). Likewise, numerous methods are available to researchers for collecting demographic data on beavers including lethal trapping (Payne 1982, 1984b, 1984a, Peterson and Payne 1986), live capture and telemetry (Smith et al. 2016), and non-invasive genetic sampling (Herr and Schley 2009, Schwartz et al. 2017) and remote camera (Bloomquist and Nielsen 2009) techniques. Possessing both individual-based and population-level data would reveal a greater understanding of how density-dependent and density-independent factors influence individuals, colonies, and populations differently, and will hopefully elucidate the mechanisms by which these disparate scales interact.

MANAGEMENT IMPLICATIONS

Our finding that beaver populations (when not exposed to excessive trapping — an important prerequisite given the extensive history of beaver overexploitation) are generally regulated by intrinsic density-dependent mechanisms and are resilient to external forcing factors has several important management implications depending on local objectives. Results from our analysis suggest trappers were unable to significantly influence regional beaver colony growth rates over the course of our study period. Given the recent decline in trapper participation and average pelt price, we thus expect beaver populations may increase in areas where public harvests have historically limited beaver populations and generate more conflicts with anthropogenic (e.g., roads, culverts, railroads) and natural resources (e.g., salmonid streams; Cutting et al. 2018, Johnson-Bice et al. 2018). But for areas where populations are largely saturated, like Minnesota, expending resources on lethal beaver control may be inefficient; however, this does not imply lethal control is not a viable option to solve beaver conflicts in the short-term. Our results are probably encouraging for areas where management objectives are focused on promoting beaver population increases. This includes riparian habitats within arid regions of the western USA, where beavers are increasingly being used as a natural habitat restoration tool (Burchsted et al. 2010, Pollock et al. 2014), and parts of Europe and Asia where rewilding beavers has generated extensive scientific and public support (Stringer and Gaywood 2016, Law et al. 2017, Gaywood 2018, Willby et al. 2018). Yet, there remain many regions where beaver engineering presents a serious threat to local environments, including South America (Anderson et al. 2006a, Anderson and Rosemond 2007) and, more recently, in tundra environments where beavers have expanded their range and engineered wetlands that are poised to disrupt permafrost regimes (Tape et al. 2018). For these areas where the objective is eradication, intensive management efforts will almost certainly be required in order to prevent further ecosystem degradation.

Table 2.1. Summary of the 15 survey routes from northern Minnesota. The number next to each route corresponds to its location in Figure 2.1.

Route name	Survey period	Years surveyed	Missing years
1. Red Lake	1975–1992	15	3
2. Hay-Kelliher	1975–2001	23	4
3. Northome	1975–1992	17	1
4. Koochiching N.	1987–2002	16	0
5. Kabetogama	1975–2002	27	1
6. Blackduck	1975–1992	15	3
7. West Vermillion	1975–1992	16	2
8. Ely-Finger Lakes	1975–2002	15	3
9. Kawishiwi	1977–1992	14	2
10. Central St. Louis	1975–2002	23	5
11. Itasca	1975–1992	16	2
12. Cass-Crow Wing	1975–2002	27	1
13. Cass County	1975–2002	27	1
14. Kanabec	1975–1992	16	2
15. Southern Pine	1975–2001	24	4

Table 2.2. Comparison of our three global models evaluated. Deviance Information Criterion (DIC), widely applicable information criterion (WAIC), and average root mean squared prediction error (MSPE) values are shown for each model. Results indicate the DD_{cov} model explains the greatest amount of variation and has the lowest prediction error for the beaver colony data.

Model	ΔDIC	ΔWAIC	MSPE
Density-dependent with covariates (DD_{cov})	–	–	0.10
Density-dependent without covariates (DD)	12.31	14.14	0.12
Density-independent without covariates (DI)	76.50	93.62	0.44

Table 2.3. Parameter estimates from the DD_{cov} model. Asterisks indicate effects where the 95% Bayesian credible interval (BCI) did not overlap 0. Negative Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) parameter estimates indicate beaver population growth rates were positively correlated with drier seasons (PDSI values <0 represent drought conditions). The significant negative winter temperature parameter estimate indicates lower winter temperatures were positively correlated with larger growth rates.

Parameter	Interpretation	Mean	SD	BCI
a	Density-independent growth	–0.47*	0.09	(–0.66, –0.29)
b	Density dependence	–0.64*	0.07	(–0.77, –0.50)
σ_a	Variance in population-level density-independent growth	0.28	0.07	(0.17, 0.46)
β_1	Beaver harvest (lag 1)	0.02	0.02	(–0.01, 0.05)
β_2	Habitat quality	0.15	0.08	(0.00, 0.31)
β_3	Estimated wolf density (lag 0)	0.00	0.01	(–0.01, 0.01)
β_4	Avg. winter temperature (lag 0)	–0.04*	0.02	(–0.09, –0.01)
β_5	Avg. winter temperature (lag 2)	0.02	0.02	(–0.01, 0.05)
β_6	Max. May temperature (lag 2)	0.01	0.02	(–0.04, 0.05)
β_7	Max. May temperature (lag 3)	0.02	0.02	(–0.02, 0.05)
β_8	Spring PDSI (lag 0)	–0.05*	0.02	(–0.09, –0.02)
β_9	Growing season PDSI (lag 2)	0.01	0.03	(–0.05, 0.07)
β_{10}	Growing season PDSI (lag 3)	–0.01	0.03	(–0.07, 0.05)
β_{11}	Fall PDSI (lag 2)	–0.07*	0.03	(–0.13, –0.01)
β_{12}	Fall PDSI (lag 3)	–0.04	0.03	(-0.10, 0.02)

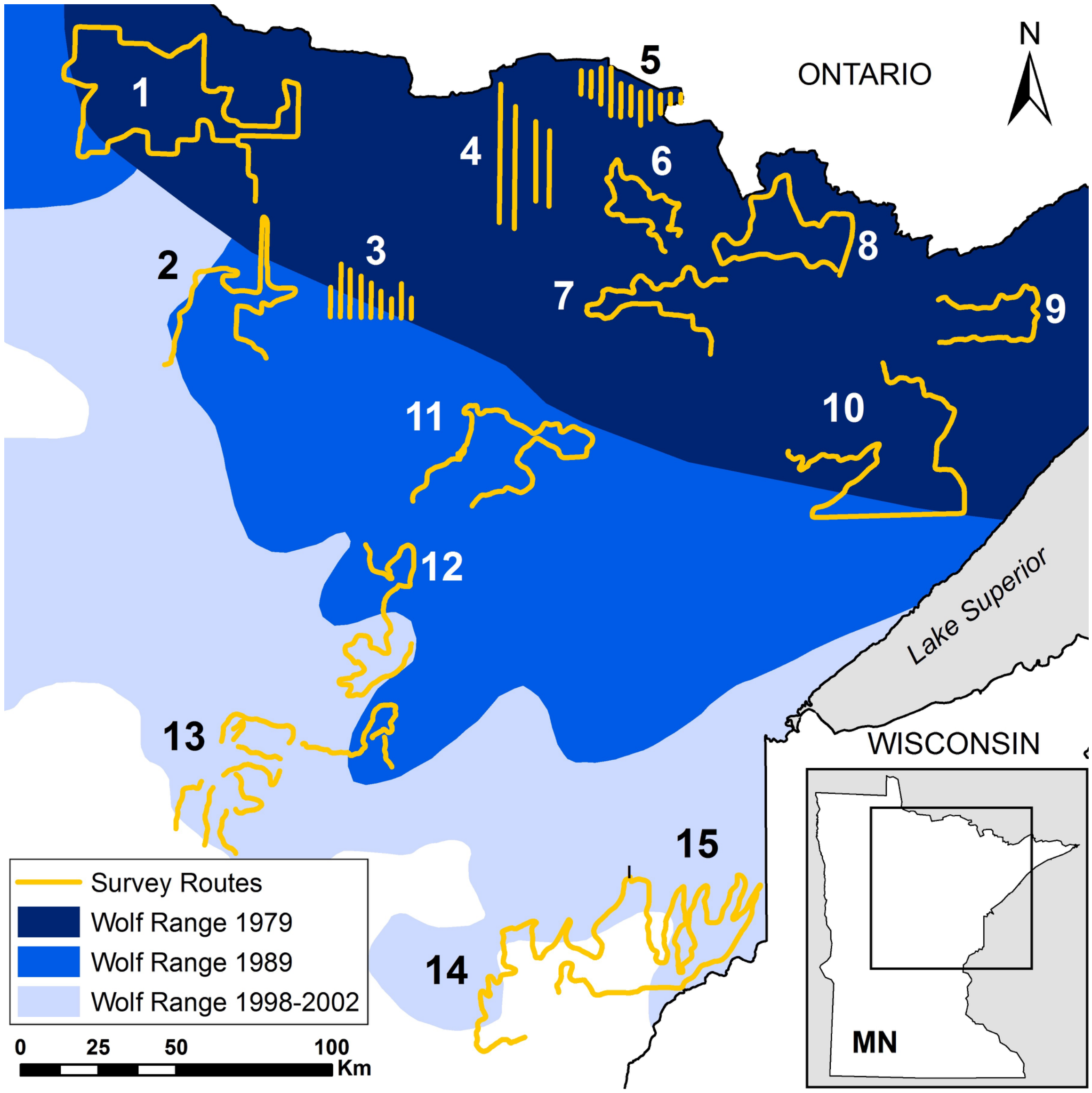


Figure 2.1. Map of the study area and location of each survey route. The Minnesota wolf population's range was expanding throughout the study's time frame, as indicated by the range maps created from wolf surveys conducted in 1978-79, 1988-89, 1997-98, and 2003 (no range expansion was found from 1998 to 2003). Results from the 1978-79 survey indicated route 2 (Hay-Kelliher) had established wolf packs and route 11 (Itasca) was undergoing re-colonization, but these packs were not included in the official range maps. Wolves were not present for route 14 (Kanabec) surveys, which ceased in 1992.

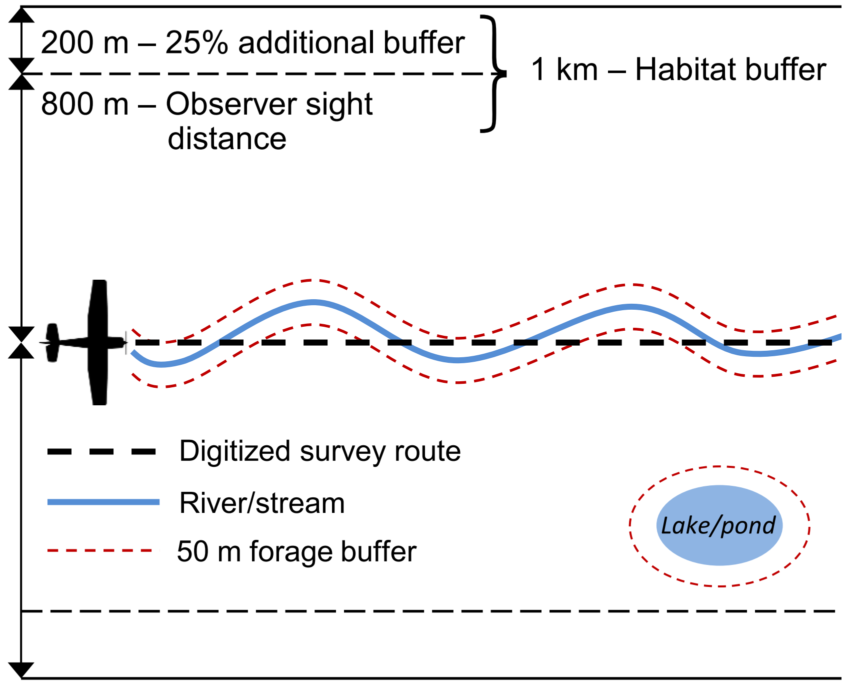


Figure 2.2. Graphic depicting how we digitized survey routes by delineating the aircraft's trajectory based on hand-drawn reference maps. Observers were instructed to count all colonies within 800 m of either side of the plane (observer sight distance). We then added an additional 25% buffer to account for any water features that may have straddled the observer sight distance. Within the 1 km habitat buffer, we applied a 50 m forage buffer around all water features and used the area within the forage buffer to assess habitat quality for each route.

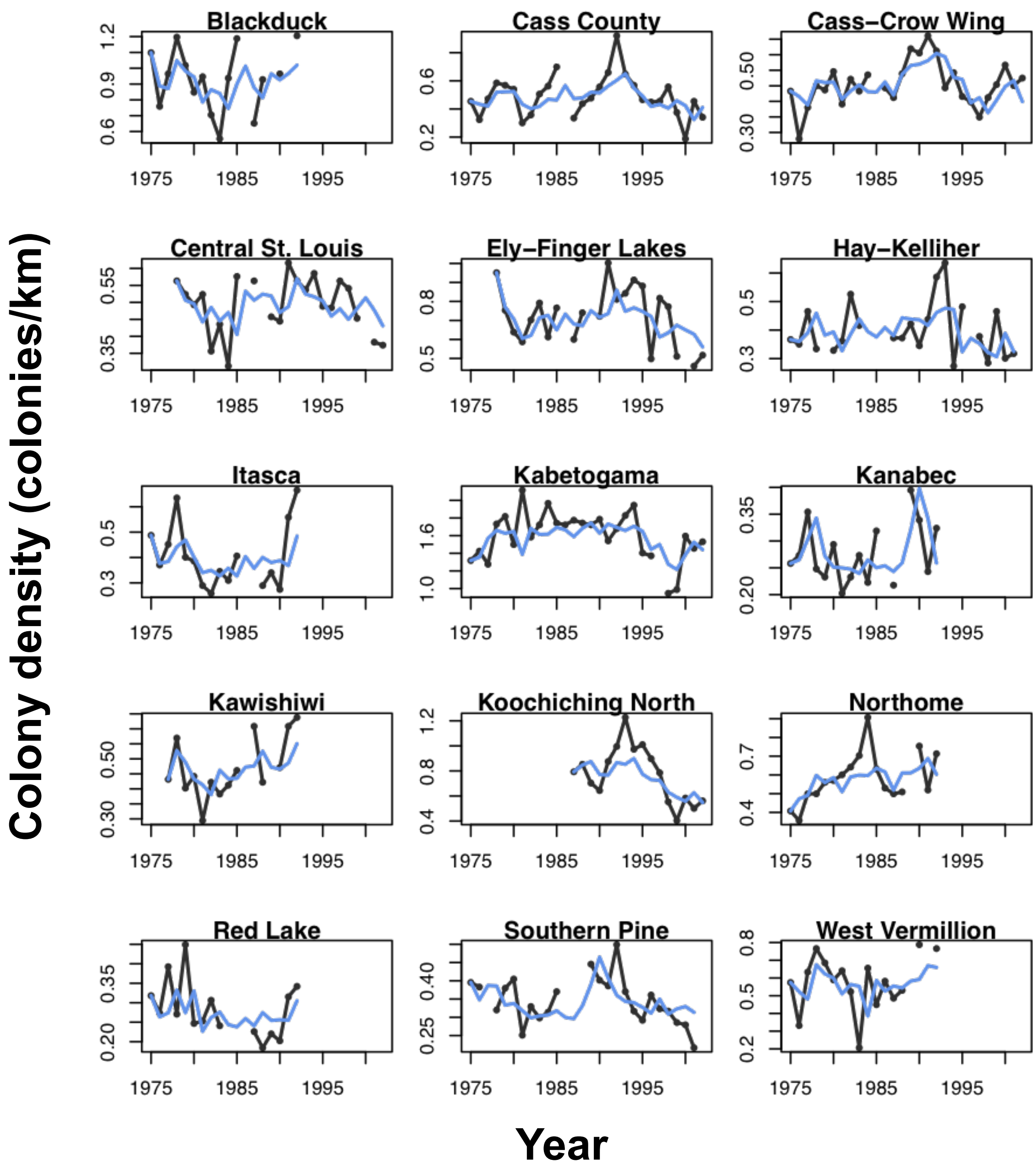


Figure 2.3. Composite image of raw (observed) data (black lines) and model fits (blue lines) for each route. Note that the y-axis limits are different for each route to highlight the trends within each route.

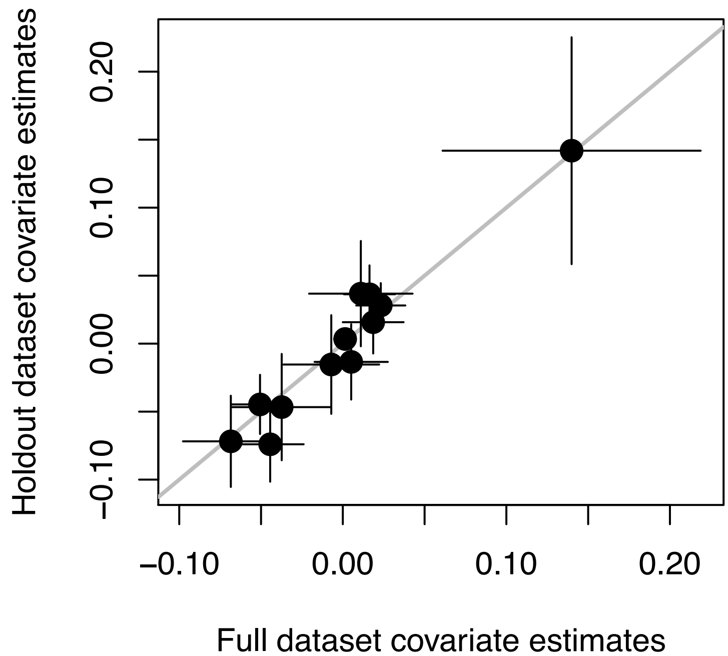


Figure 2.4. Plot of the beta coefficients for the estimates from the full dataset compared to the estimates from the dataset with 1/3 of observations held out. Estimates that are exactly equal will fall on the one-to-one line. No systematic differences between the full dataset and holdout dataset were found, as all posterior estimates were within one standard deviation of the one-to-one line.

Bibliography

Adams, A. K. 1949. Beaver-trout investigations in Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fish Division. Fisheries Research Report No. 1213.

Adams, A. K. 1954. Some physico-chemical effects of beaver dams upon Michigan trout streams in the Watersmeet area. Doctoral Thesis. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI.

Alcoze, T. M. 1981. Pre-settlement beaver population density in the Upper Great Lakes Region. Dissertation. Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI.

Aldous, S. E. 1938. Beaver food utilization studies. The Journal of Wildlife Management 2:215–222.

Aleksiuk, M. 1968. Scent-Mound Communication, Territoriality, and Population Regulation in Beaver (*Castor canadensis* Kuhl). Journal of Mammalogy 49:759–762.

Alexander, G. R., and E. A. Hansen. 1986. Sand Bed Load in a Brook Trout Stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6:9–23.

Allen, A. W. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: Beaver. U.S. Fish Wildl. Serv. FWS/OBS-82/10.30. Revised.

Anderson, C. B., and A. D. Rosemond. 2007. Ecosystem engineering by invasive exotic beavers reduces in-stream diversity and enhances ecosystem function in Cape Horn, Chile. Oecologia 154:141–153.

Anderson, C. B., C. R. Griffith, A. D. Rosemond, R. Rozzi, and O. Dollenz. 2006a. The effects of invasive North American beavers on riparian plant communities in Cape Horn, Chile. Biological Conservation 128:467–474.

Anderson, J., N. Baratono, A. Streitz, J. Magner, and E. S. Verry. 2006b. Effect of historical logging on geomorphology, hydrology, and water quality in the Little Fork River Watershed. Environmental Outcomes and Regional Divisions, Minnesota Pollution Control Agency. Pages 1–74.

Armstrong, J. D., P. S. Kemp, G. J. A. Kennedy, M. Ladle, and N. J. Milner. 2003. Habitat requirements of Atlantic salmon and brown trout in rivers and streams. Fisheries Research 62:143–170.

Avery, E. L. 2002. Fish community and habitat responses in a northern Wisconsin brook trout stream 18 years after beaver dam removal. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Final Project Report F-95-P. Pages 1–63.

Avery, E. L. 2004. A compendium of 58 trout stream habitat development evaluations in Wisconsin 1985-2000. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Research Report No. 187. Pages 1–100.

Baker, B. W., and E. P. Hill. 2003. Beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Pages 288–310 *in* G. A. Feldhamer, B. C. Thompson, and J. A. Chapman, editors. Wild mammals of North America: biology, management, and conservation. The Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Maryland, USA.

Beechie, T. J., H. Moir, and G. R. Pess. 2008. Hierarchical Physical Controls on Salmonid Spawning Location and Timing. Pages 83–101 *in* D. A. Sear and P. DeVries, editors. Salmonid spawning habitat in rivers: physical controls, biological responses, and approaches to remediation. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Md.

Benson, R. L. 2002. Estimation of brook trout movement in a beaver pond complex using

multi-state capture-recapture models: examination of restricted movement. M.Sc. Thesis. University of Montana, Missoula, MT.
Bergerud, A. T., and D. R. Miller. 1977. Population dynamics of Newfoundland beaver. Canadian Journal of Zoology 55:1480–1492.
Bertolo, A., P. Magnan, and M. Plante. 2008. Linking the occurrence of brook trout with isolation and extinction in small Boreal Shield lakes. Freshwater Biology 53:304–321.
Bhat, M. G., R. G. Huffaker, and S. M. Lenhart. 1993. Controlling Forest Damage by Dispersive Beaver Populations: Centralized Optimal Management Strategy. Ecological Applications 3:518–530.
Biette, R. M., D. P. Dodge, R. L. Hassinger, and T. M. Stauffer. 1981. Life History and Timing of Migrations and Spawning Behavior of Rainbow Trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) Populations of the Great Lakes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38:1759–1771.
Bjornn, T. C., and D. Reiser. 1991. Habitat Requirements of Salmonids in Streams. Page 138 *in* W. R. Meehan, editor. Influences of Forest and Rangeland Management on Salmonid Fishes and Their Habitats. American Fisheries Society Special Publication.
Bloomquist, C. K., and C. K. Nielsen. 2009. A Remote Videography System for Monitoring Beavers. The Journal of Wildlife Management 73:605–608.
Boitani, L. 2003. Wolf conservation and recovery. Pages 317–340 *in* L. D. Mech and L. Boitani, editors. Wolves. University of Chicago Press.
Bouwes, N., N. Weber, C. E. Jordan, W. C. Saunders, I. A. Tattam, C. Volk, J. M. Wheaton, and M. M. Pollock. 2016. Ecosystem experiment reveals benefits of natural and simulated beaver dams to a threatened population of steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Scientific Reports 6:28581–12.
Boyce, M. S. 1981a. Habitat ecology of an unexploited population of beavers in interior Alaska. Pages 155–186 *in* J. A. Chapman and D. Pursley, editors. Worldwide Furbearer Conference Proceedings. Appalachian Environmental Lab., Univ. of Maryland, Frostburg.
Boyce, M. S. 1981b. Beaver life-history responses to exploitation. Journal of Applied Ecology 18:749–753.
Boyce, M. S., A. R. E. Sinclair, and G. C. White. 1999. Seasonal Compensation of Predation and Harvesting. Oikos 87:419–426.
Boyce, M. S., C. V. Haridas, C. T. Lee, the NCEAS Stochastic Demography Working Group. 2006. Demography in an increasingly variable world. Trends in Ecology & Evolution 21:141–148.
Bradt, G. W. 1935a. Beaver-trout management activities. Michigan Department of Conservation. Fisheries Research Report No. 316. Pages 1–13.
Bradt, G. W. 1935b. Michigan's beaver-trout management program. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 65:253–257.
Bradt, G. W. 1947. Michigan beaver management. Game Division, Michigan Dept. of Conservation, Lansing, MI.
Brommer, J. E., R. Alakoski, V. Selonen, and K. Kauhala. 2017. Population dynamics of two beaver species in Finland inferred from citizen-science census data. Ecosphere 8:e01947.
Brown, M. K., and G. P. Parsons. 1982. Reliability of fall aerial censuses for locating

active beaver colonies in New York. New York Fish & Game Journal 29:204–206.
Bruner, K. L. 1989. Effects of beaver on streams, streamside habitat, and Coho Salmon fry populations in two coastal Oregon streams. M.S. Thesis. Oregon State University, Corvalis, OR.
Burchsted, D., M. D. Daniels, R. Thorson, and J. Vokoun. 2010. The River Discontinuum: Applying Beaver Modifications to Baseline Conditions for Restoration of Forested Headwaters. BioScience 60:908–922.
Burnham, K., and D. Anderson. 2002. Model selection and multimodel inference: a practical information-theoretic approach. Springer-Verlag New York.
Burnham-Curtis, M. K. 2000. Genetic profiles of elected Brook Trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* populations from Lake Superior. Research completion report prepared for U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Ashland Fisheries Resource Office.
Busher, P. E. 1987. Population parameters and family composition of beaver in California. Journal of Mammalogy 68:860–864.
Busher, P. E., and P. J. Lyons. 1999. Long-term population dynamics of the North American beaver, *Castor canadensis,* on Quabbin Reservation, Massachusetts, and Sagehen Creek, California. Pages 147–160 *in* P. E. Busher and R. M. Dzięciołowski, editors. Beaver Protection, Management, and Utilization in Europe and North America. Springer US, Boston, MA.
Bylak, A., K. Kukuła, and J. Mitka. 2014. Beaver impact on stream fish life histories: the role of landscape and local attributes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 71:1603–1615.
Błędzki, L. A., J. L. Bubier, L. A. Moulton, and T. D. Kyker-Snowman. 2010. Downstream effects of beaver ponds on the water quality of New England first- and second-order streams. Ecohydrology 4:698–707.
Call, M. W. 1970. Beaver Pond Ecology and Beaver-trout Relationships in Southeastern Wyoming. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, WY.
Campbell, R. D., C. Newman, D. W. Macdonald, and F. Rosell. 2013. Proximate weather patterns and spring green-up phenology effect Eurasian beaver (*Castor fiber*) body mass and reproductive success: the implications of climate change and topography. Global Change Biology 19:1311–1324.
Campbell, R. D., F. Rosell, C. Newman, and D. W. Macdonald. 2017. Age-related changes in somatic condition and reproduction in the Eurasian beaver: Resource history influences onset of reproductive senescence. PLoS ONE 12:e0187484.
Campbell, R. D., P. Nouvellet, C. Newman, D. W. Macdonald, and F. Rosell. 2012. The influence of mean climate trends and climate variance on beaver survival and recruitment dynamics. Global Change Biology 18:2730–2742.
Carbine, W. F. 1944. Results of the beaver-trout investigation in the Upper Peninsula. Institute for Fisheries Research, Michigan Department of Conservation. Fisheries Research Report No. 953. Pages 1–31.
Carl, L. M. 1982. Natural Reproduction of Coho Salmon and Chinook Salmon in Some Michigan Streams. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 2:375–380.
Chapman, D. W. 1988. Critical Review of Variables Used to Define Effects of Fines in Redds of Large Salmonids. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 117:1–21.

Christenson, L. M., A. E. Ehly, J. B. Hale, R. H. Hovind, J. M. Keener, C. Kabat, G. J. Knudsen, and D. J. ODonnell. 1961. Beaver-trout-forest relationships. (R. L. Hine, Ed.). Wisconsin Conservation Department, Madison, WI.
Cirmo, C. P., and C. T. Driscoll. 1993. Beaver pond biogeochemistry: Acid neutralizing capacity generation in a headwater wetland. Wetlands 13:277–292.
Clark, J. S., and O. N. Bjørnstad. 2004. Population Time Series: Process Variability, Observation Errors, Missing Values, Lags, and Hidden States. Ecology 85:3140–3150.
Cleland, D. T., J. A. Freeouf, J. E. Keys, G. J. Nowacki, C. A. Carpenter, and W. H. McNab. 2007. Ecological Subregions: Sections and Subsections for the Conterminous United States. Gen. Tech. Report WO-76D. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service.
Collen, P., and R. J. Gibson. 2001. The general ecology of beavers (*Castor* spp.), as related to their influence on stream ecosystems and riparian habitats, and the subsequent effects on fish – a review. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 10:439–461.
Cook, D. B. 1940. Beaver-trout relations. Journal of Mammalogy 21:397–401.
Crawford, S. S. 2001. Salmonine Introductions to the Laurentian Great Lakes. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences No. 132. NRC Research Press.
Creel, S., and M. Creel. 2009. Density dependence and climate effects in Rocky Mountain elk: an application of regression with instrumental variables for population time series with sampling error. Journal of Animal Ecology 78:1291–1297.
Crisp, D. T. 1996. Environmental requirements of common riverine European salmonid fish species in fresh water with particular reference to physical and chemical aspects. Hydrobiologia 323:201–221.
Cunjak, R. A. 1996. Winter habitat of selected stream fishes and potential impacts from land-use activity. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53:267–282.
Curry, R. A., and D. L. G. Noakes. 1995. Groundwater and the selection of spawning sites by brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1733–1740.
Cutting, K. A., J. M. Ferguson, M. L. Anderson, K. Cook, S. C. Davis, and R. Levine. 2018. Linking beaver dam affected flow dynamics to upstream passage of Arctic grayling. Ecology and Evolution 00:1–13.
D'Amelio, S. 2002. Conservation genetics and metapopulation structure of brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) in Nipigon Bay (Lake Superior, Ontario). M.S. Thesis. Trent University, Peterborough, Ontario.
de Valpine, P., and A. Hastings. 2002. Fitting Population Models Incorporating Process Noise and Observation Error. Ecological Monographs 72:57–76.
Dennis, B., and M. L. Taper. 1994. Density Dependence in Time Series Observations of Natural Populations: Estimation and Testing. Ecological Monographs 64:205–224.
Dennis, B., J. M. Ponciano, S. R. Lele, M. L. Taper, and D. F. Staples. 2006. Estimating density dependence, process noise, and observation error. Ecological Monographs 76:323–341.
Dickerson, L. 1989. Beaver and dam removal in Wisconsin trout streams. Pages 1–8 *in*.
Dietze, M. C. 2017. Prediction in ecology: a first-principles framework. Ecological Applications 27:2048–2060.

Dietze, M. C., A. Fox, L. M. Beck-Johnson, J. L. Betancourt, M. B. Hooten, C. S. Jarnevich, T. H. Keitt, M. A. Kenney, C. M. Laney, L. G. Larsen, H. W. Loescher, C. K. Lunch, B. C. Pijanowski, J. T. Randerson, E. K. Read, A. T. Tredennick, R. Vargas, K. C. Weathers, and E. P. White. 2018. Iterative near-term ecological forecasting: Needs, opportunities, and challenges. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA 115:1424.

Dillon, P. J., L. A. Molot, and W. A. Scheider. 1991. Phosphorus and Nitrogen Export from Forested Stream Catchments in Central Ontario. Journal of Environmental Quality 20:857–864.

Donkor, N. T., and J. M. Fryxell. 1999. Impact of beaver foraging on structure of lowland boreal forests of Algonquin Provincial Park, Ontario. Forest Ecology and Management 118:83–92.

DuBois, R. B., and D. M. Pratt. 1994. History of the fishes of the Bois Brule River System, Wisconsin, with emphasis on the salmonids and their management. Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts and Letters 82:33–71.

DuBois, R. B., and S. T. Schram. 1993. Salmonid population trends following stream-bank debrushing and Beaver control on a Lake Superior Tributary. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Research Report No. 157.

Dumke, J. D., T. R. Hrabik, V. J. Brady, K. B. Gran, R. R. Regal, and M. J. Seider. 2010. Channel Morphology Response to Selective Wood Removals in a Sand-Laden Wisconsin Trout Stream. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 30:776–790.

Dunaway, D., S. R. Swanson, J. Wendel, and W. Clary. 1994. The effect of herbaceous plant communities and soil textures on particle erosion of alluvial streambanks. Geomorphology 9:47–56.

Dunne, T. 1978. Water in environmental planning. (T. Dunne and L. B. Leopold, Eds.). W. H. Freeman, San Francisco.

Ecke, F., O. Levanoni, J. Audet, P. Carlson, K. Eklöf, G. Hartman, B. McKie, J. Ledesma, J. Segersten, A. Truchy, and M. Futter. 2017. Meta-analysis of environmental effects of beaver in relation to artificial dams. Environmental Research Letters 12:113002.

Emery, L. 1985. Review of fish species introduced into the Great Lakes, 1819-1974. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 45. Page 31.

Essington, T. E., P. W. Sorensen, and D. G. Paron. 1998. High rate of redd superimposition by brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) and brown trout (*Salmo trutta*) in a Minnesota stream cannot be explained by habitat availability alone. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55:2310–2316.

Evans, T. R. 1948. Beaver-trout-waterfowl problems. 10th Midwest Wildlife Conference.

Fausch, K. D., and R. J. White. 1981. Competition between brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) and brown trout (*Salmo trutta*) for positions in a Michigan stream. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 38:1220–1227.

Fausch, K. D., C. E. Torgersen, C. V. Baxter, and H. W. Li. 2002. Landscapes to Riverscapes: Bridging the Gap between Research and Conservation of Stream Fishes. BioScience 52:483–498.

Ferguson, J. M., B. E. Reichert, R. J. Fletcher Jr, and H. I. Jager. 2017. Detecting population-environmental interactions with mismatched time series data. Ecology

98:2813–2822.
Fieberg, J. R., and D. H. Johnson. 2015. MMI: Multimodel inference or models with management implications? The Journal of Wildlife Management 79:708–718.
Finnegan, R. J., and D. E. Marshall. 1997. Managing beaver habitat for salmonids: working with beavers. *in* P. A. Slaney and D. Zaldokas, editors. Fish Habitat Rehabilitation Procedures.
Fitzpatrick, F. A., and J. C. Knox. 2000. Spatial and temporal sensitivity of hydrogeomorphic response and recovery to deforestation, agriculture, and floods. Physical Geography 21:89–108.
Fox, M. G., and A. Keast. 1990. Effects of winterkill on population structure, body size, and prey consumption patterns of pumpkinseed in isolated beaver ponds. Canadian Journal of Zoology 68:2489–2498.
Freckleton, R. P., A. R. Watkinson, R. E. Green, and W. J. Sutherland. 2006. Census error and the detection of density dependence. Journal of Animal Ecology 75:837–851.
Friedman, S. K., and P. B. Reich. 2005. Regional legacies of logging: Departure from presettlement forest conditions in northern Minnesota. Ecological Applications 15:726–744.
Fryxell, J. M. 2001. Habitat suitability and source–sink dynamics of beavers. Journal of Animal Ecology 70:310–316.
Fuller, T. K. 1989. Population Dynamics of Wolves in North-Central Minnesota. Wildlife Monographs:3–41.
Fuller, T. K., L. D. Mech, and J. Fitts-Cochran. 2003. Wolf population dynamics. Pages 161–191 *in* L. D. Mech and L. Boitani, editors. Wolves. University of Chicago Press.
Gable, T. D., and S. K. Windels. 2018. Kill rates and predation rates of wolves on beavers. The Journal of Wildlife Management 82:466–472.
Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, and J. G. Bruggink. 2017. The Problems with Pooling Poop: Confronting Sampling Method Biases in Wolf (*Canis lupus*) Diet Studies. Canadian Journal of Zoology:cjz–2016–0308.
Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, J. G. Bruggink, and A. T. Homkes. 2016. Where and how wolves (*Canis lupus*) kill beavers (*Castor canadensis*). PLoS ONE 11:e0165537.
Gable, T. D., S. K. Windels, M. C. Romanski, and F. Rosell. 2018. The forgotten prey of an iconic predator: a review of interactions between grey wolves Canis lupus and beavers Castor spp. Mammal Review 48:123–138.
Gard, R. 1961. Effects of Beaver on Trout in Sagehen Creek, California. The Journal of Wildlife Management 25:221–242.
Gartner, W. C., L. L. Love, D. Erkkila, and D. C. Fulton. 2002. Economic Impact and Social Benefits Study of Coldwater Angling in Minnesota. Prepared for: Minnesota Department of Natural Resources. Pages 1–129. Tourism Center, University of Minnesota Extension Service, St. Paul, MN.
Gaywood, M. J. 2018. Reintroducing the Eurasian beaver Castor fiber to Scotland. Mammal Review 48:48–61.
Geist, D. R., and D. D. Dauble. 1998. Redd Site Selection and Spawning Habitat Use by Fall Chinook Salmon: The Importance of Geomorphic Features in Large Rivers. Environmental Management 22:655–669.
Gelman, A., J. Hwang, and A. Vehtari. 2014. Understanding predictive information

criteria for Bayesian models. Statistics and Computing 24:997–1016.
Giudice, J. H., J. R. Fieberg, and M. S. Lenarz. 2012. Spending degrees of freedom in a poor economy: A case study of building a sightability model for moose in northeastern Minnesota. The Journal of Wildlife Management 76:75–87.
Goldsworthy, C. A., K. A. Reeves, J. E. Blankenheim, and N. R. Peterson. 2016. Fisheries Management Plan for the Minnesota waters of Lake Superior. Third edition. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.
Gordon, N. D., T. A. McMahon, B. L. Finlayson, C. J. Gippel, and R. J. Nathan. 2004. Stream hydrology: an introduction for ecologists. Second edition. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
Grasse, J. E. 1951. Beaver ecology and management in the Rockies. Journal of Forestry 49:3–6.
Grasse, J. E., and E. F. Putnam. 1955. Beaver management and ecology in Wyoming. Wyoming Game and Fish Commission Bulletin No. 6.
Great Lakes Fishery Commission. 2018. Great Lakes Fish Stocking Database. Great Lakes Fishery Commission, New Franken, WI.
Gurnell, A. M. 1998. The hydrogeomorphological effects of beaver dam-building activity. Progress in Physical Geography 22:167–189.
Hale, J. G. 1950. Trout populations and catches during 1950 in three northeastern Minnesota trout streams, including comparisons in catch from beaver ponds, improved, and unimproved sectors. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Investigational Report No. 105. Pages 1–20.
Hale, J. G. 1966. Influence of beaver on some trout streams along the Minnesota North Shore of Lake Superior. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Investigational Report No. 244. Page 29.
Hale, J. G., and O. Jarvenpa. 1950. Beaver-trout relations on the north shore of Lake Superior watershed. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Investigational Report No. 143. Pages 1–22.
Hall, J. G. 1960. Willow and aspen in the ecology of beaver on Sagehen Creek, California. Ecology 41:484–494.
Hart, E. M., and K. Bell. 2015. prism: Download data from the Oregon prism project.
Hartman, G. 1994. Long-term population development of a reintroduced beaver (*Castor fiber*) population in Sweden. Conservation Biology 8:713–717.
Hassell, M. P. 1975. Density-Dependence in Single-Species Populations. Journal of Animal Ecology 44:283–295.
Haugstad, M. C. 1970. Trout habitat control in Minnesota. Pages 1–19 *in*.
Hayes, R. D., and A. S. Harestad. 2000. Demography of a recovering wolf population in the Yukon. Canadian Journal of Zoology 78:36–48.
Hazard, E. B. 1982. The mammals of Minnesota. University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.
Hägglund, Å., and G. Sjöberg. 1999. Effects of beaver dams on the fish fauna of forest streams. Forest Ecology and Management 115:259–266.
Herb, W., K. Blann, L. Johnson, R. Garono, J. Jereczek, M. White, and H. Sorensen. 2016. Sustaining Minnesota's Lake Superior Tributaries in a Changing Climate. Final Report to NOAA's Office for Coastal Management. Pages 1–283.
Herr, J., and L. Schley. 2009. Barbed wire hair traps as a tool for remotely collecting hair

samples from beavers (*Castor* sp.). Lutra 52:123–127.
Herrando-Pérez, S., S. Delean, B. W. Brook, and C. J. A. Bradshaw. 2012. Density dependence: an ecological Tower of Babel. Oecologia 170:585–603.
Hood, G. A., and S. E. Bayley. 2008. Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) mitigate the effects of climate on the area of open water in boreal wetlands in western Canada. Biological Conservation 141:556–567.
Huckins, C. J., E. A. Baker, K. D. Fausch, and J. B. K. Leonard. 2008. Ecology and Life History of Coaster Brook Trout and Potential Bottlenecks in Their Rehabilitation. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1321–1342.
Hunt, R. L. 1988. A compendium of 45 stream habitat development evaluations in Wisconsin during 1953-1985. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Technical Bulletin No. 162. Pages 1–84.
Jensen, P. G., P. D. Curtis, M. E. Lehnert, and D. L. Hamelin. 2001. Habitat and structural factors influencing beaver interference with highway culverts. Wildlife Society Bulletin.
Johnson-Bice, S. M., K. M. Renik, S. K. Windels, and A. W. Hafs. 2018. A Review of Beaver-Salmonid Relationships and History of Management Actions in the Western Great Lakes (USA) Region. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 38:1203–1225.
Johnston, C. A. 2012. Beaver wetlands. Pages 161–171 *in* D. P. Batzer and A. Baldwin, editors. Wetland habitats of North America ecology and conservation concerns. Berkeley, California, USA.
Johnston, C. A. 2014. Beaver pond effects on carbon storage in soils. Geoderma 213:371–378.
Johnston, C. A. 2017. Beavers: Boreal Ecosystem Engineers. (C. A. Johnston, Ed.). Springer-Verlaug Press.
Johnston, C. A., and R. J. Naiman. 1987. Boundary dynamics at the aquatic-terrestrial interface: The influence of beaver and geomorphology. Landscape Ecology 1:47–57.
Johnston, C. A., and S. K. Windels. 2015. Using beaver works to estimate colony activity in boreal landscapes. The Journal of Wildlife Management 79:1072–1080.
Karns, P. D. 1982. Twenty-plus years of aerial moose census in Minnesota. Alces 18:186–196.
Keast, A., and M. G. Fox. 1990. Fish community structure, spatial distribution and feeding ecology in a beaver pond. Environmental Biology of Fishes 27:201–214.
Kemp, P. S., T. A. Worthington, T. E. L. Langford, A. R. J. Tree, and M. J. Gaywood. 2012. Qualitative and quantitative effects of reintroduced beavers on stream fish. Fish and Fisheries 13:158–181.
Klein, M. M., and R. M. Newman. 1992. The effects of beaver dams on trout and trout streams in Pine County, Minnesota. Page 109. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.
Knudsen, G. J. 1962. Relationship of beaver to forests, trout and wildlife in Wisconsin. Wisconsin Department of Conservation. Technical Bulletin No. 25. Pages 1–56.
Knudsen, G. J. 1963. History of beaver in Wisconsin. Wisconsin Department of Conservation. Miscellaneous Research Report No. 7. Pages 1–20.
Knudsen, G. J., and J. B. Hale. 1965. Movements of Transplanted Beavers in Wisconsin. The Journal of Wildlife Management 29:685–688.

Kondolf, G. M., and M. G. Wolman. 1993. The sizes of salmonid spawning gravels. Water Resources Research 29:2275–2285.
Kondratieff, M. C., and C. A. Myrick. 2006. How High Can Brook Trout Jump? A Laboratory Evaluation of Brook Trout Jumping Performance. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135:361–370.
Koons, D. N., F. Colchero, K. Hersey, and O. Gimenez. 2015. Disentangling the effects of climate, density dependence, and harvest on an iconic large herbivore's population dynamics. Ecological Applications 25:956–967.
Krueger, C. C., and B. May. 1991. Ecological and genetic effects of salmonid introductions in North America. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 48:66–77.
Kuzyk, G. W., and I. W. Hatter. 2014. Using ungulate biomass to estimate abundance of wolves in British Columbia. Wildlife Society Bulletin 38:878–883.
Law, A., M. J. Gaywood, K. C. Jones, P. Ramsay, and N. J. Willby. 2017. Using ecosystem engineers as tools in habitat restoration and rewilding: beaver and wetlands. Science of the Total Environment 605-606:1021–1030.
Lawrie, A. H., and J. F. Rahrer. 1973. Lake Superior: A Case History of the Lake and its Fisheries. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 19.
Leidholt-Bruner, K., D. E. Hibbs, and W. C. McComb. 1992. Beaver dam locations and their effects on distribution and abundance of coho salmon fry in two coastal Oregon streams. Northwest Science 66:218–223.
Lenarz, M. S. 1998. Precision and bias of aerial moose surveys in northeastern Minnesota. Alces 34:117–124.
Lenarz, M. S. 2006. 2006 Aerial Moose Survey. Forest Wildlife Populations and Research Group, Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, Grand Rapids, MN.
Levine, R., and G. A. Meyer. 2014. Beaver dams and channel sediment dynamics on Odell Creek, Centennial Valley, Montana, USA. Geomorphology 205:51–64.
Lisle, T. E. 2010. Effects of aggradation and degradation on riffle-pool morphology in natural gravel channels, northwestern California. Water Resources Research 18:1643–1651.
Lokteff, R. L., B. B. Roper, and J. M. Wheaton. 2013. Do Beaver Dams Impede the Movement of Trout? Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 142:1114–1125.
Longley, W. H., and J. B. Moyle. 1963. The Beaver in Minnesota. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Technical Bulletin No. 6. Pages 1–88.
Lowry, M. M. 1993. Groundwater elevations and temperature adjacent to a beaver pond in central Oregon. M.S. Thesis. Oregon State University, Corvalis, OR.
Lyons, J. 1996. Patterns in the species composition of fish assemblages among Wisconsin streams. Environmental Biology of Fishes 45:329–341.
Lyons, J., J. S. Stewart, and M. Mitro. 2010. Predicted effects of climate warming on the distribution of 50 stream fishes in Wisconsin, U.S.A. Journal of Fish Biology 77:1867–1898.
Majerova, M., B. T. Neilson, N. M. Schmadel, J. M. Wheaton, and C. J. Snow. 2015. Impacts of beaver dams on hydrologic and temperature regimes in a mountain stream. Hydrology and Earth System Sciences 19:3541–3556.
Margolis, B. E., M. S. Castro, and R. L. Raesly. 2001. The impact of beaver impoundments on the water chemistry of two Appalachian streams. Canadian Journal

of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58:2271–2283.
Martell, K. A., A. L. Foote, and S. G. Cumming. 2006. Riparian disturbance due to beavers (Castor canadensis) in Alberta's boreal mixedwood forests: Implications for forest management. Écoscience 13:164–171.
Mayer, M., A. Zedrosser, and F. Rosell. 2017a. When to leave: the timing of natal dispersal in a large, monogamous rodent, the Eurasian beaver. Animal Behaviour 123:375–382.
Mayer, M., A. Zedrosser, and F. Rosell. 2017b. Couch potatoes do better: Delayed dispersal and territory size affect the duration of territory occupancy in a monogamous mammal. Ecology and Evolution 72:1–10.
McCaffery, M. 2009. The influence of an ecosystem engineer on nutrient subsidies and fish invasions in southwestern Montana. Doctoral Dissertation. University of Montana, Missoula, MT.
McDowell, D. M., and R. J. Naiman. 1986. Structure and function of a benthic invertebrate stream community as influenced by beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Oecologia 68:481–489.
McMahon, T. E. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: coho salmon. Western Energy and Land Use Team, Division of Biological Services, Research and Development, Fish and Wildlife Service, U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Washington, DC.
McNew, L., and A. Woolf. 2005. Dispersal and survival of juvenile beavers (*Castor canadensis*) in southern Illinois. The American Midland Naturalist 154:217–228.
McRae, G., and C. J. Edwards. 1994. Thermal Characteristics of Wisconsin Headwater Streams Occupied by Beaver: Implications for Brook Trout Habitat. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123:641–656.
McTaggart, S. T., and T. A. Nelson. 2003. Composition and demographics of beaver (Castor canadensis) colonies in Central Illinois. The American Midland Naturalist 150:139–150.
MDNR. 2005. Beaver management. Michigan Department of Natural Resources. DNR Department Procedure 39.21-20.
MDNR. 2018. Fish Stocking Database. Michigan Department of Natural Resources.
Mech, L. D. 1970. The wolf: the ecology and behavior of an endangered species. University of Minnesota Press.
Mech, L. D., and S. M. Barber-Meyer. 2015. Yellowstone wolf (*Canis lupus*) density predicted by elk (*Cervus elaphus*) biomass. Canadian Journal of Zoology 93:499–502.
Miller, M. J. 1940. Black Spot in Fishes. Canadian Journal of Comparative Medicine and Veterinary Science 4:303–305.
Mills, E. L., J. H. Leach, J. T. Carlton, and C. L. Secor. 1993. Exotic Species in the Great Lakes: A History of Biotic Crises and Anthropogenic Introductions. Journal of Great Lakes Research 19:1–54.
Mitchell, S. C., and R. A. Cunjak. 2007. Stream flow, salmon and beaver dams: roles in the structuring of stream fish communities within an anadromous salmon dominated stream. Journal of Animal Ecology 76:1062–1074.
MNDNR. 2001. Minnesota Wolf Management Plan. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, Division of Wildlife. Page 36.
MNDNR. 2009. National Wetlands Inventory, Minnesota, 1980-1986. Minnesota

Department of Natural Resources.
MNDNR. 2014. MNDNR Hydrography. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.
MNDNR. 2016. Lake Superior Fisheries Management Plan Addendum #1: Beaver management on trout streams. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources.
MNDNR. 2017. Ecological Classification System.
Moore, K. M. S., and S. V. Gregory. 1988. Summer Habitat Utilization and Ecology of Cutthroat Trout Fry (*Salmo clarki*) in Cascade Mountain Streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 45:1921–1930.
Murray, D. L., E. W. Cox, W. B. Ballard, H. A. Whitlaw, M. S. Lenarz, T. W. Custer, T. Barnett, and T. K. Fuller. 2006. Pathogens, Nutritional Deficiency, and Climate Influences on a Declining Moose Population. Wildlife Monographs 166:1–30.
Müller-Schwarze, D. 2011. The Beaver: Its Life and Impact. Second. Cornell University Press.
Müller-Schwarze, D., and B. A. Schulte. 1999. Behavioral and ecological characteristics of a “climax” population of beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Pages 161–177 *in* P. E. Busher and R. M. Dzięciołowski, editors. Beaver Protection, Management, and Utilization in Europe and North America. Springer US, Boston, MA.
Müller-Schwarze, D., and S. Heckman. 1980. The social role of scent marking in beaver (Castor Canadensis). Journal of Chemical Ecology 6:81–95.
Naiman, R. J., C. A. Johnston, and J. C. Kelley. 1988. Alteration of North American Streams by Beaver. BioScience 38:753–762.
Naiman, R. J., G. Pinay, C. A. Johnston, and J. Pastor. 1994. Beaver influences on the long-term biogeochemical characteristics of boreal forest drainage networks. Ecology 75:905–921.
Naiman, R. J., J. M. Melillo, and J. E. Hobbie. 1986. Ecosystem alteration of boreal forest streams by beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Ecology 67:1254–1269.
NASCE. 2017. PRISM.
National Integrated Drought Information System. 2018. Climate Division Datasets.
Needham, P. R. 1938. Trout streams: conditions that determine their productivity and suggestions for stream and lake management. Comstock Publishing Company, Inc., Ithaca, N.Y.
Neff, B. P., A. R. Piggott, and R. A. Sheets. 2005. Estimation of shallow ground-water recharge in the Great Lakes Basin. USGS Scientific Investigations Report 2005-5284.
Newman, L. E., R. B. DuBois, and T. N. Halpern, editors. 2003. A brook trout rehabilitation plan for Lake Superior. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Misc. Publ. 2003-03.
Norton, A. S. 2018. Monitoring population trends of white-tailed deer in Minnesota – 2018. Unpub. Rep., Division of Fish and Wildlife, Minn. Dept. Nat. Res., St. Paul, MN.
Novak, M. 1987. Beaver. Pages 283–312 *in* M. Novak, J. A. Baker, M. E. Obbard, and B. Malloch, editors. Wild Furbearer Management and Conservation in North America. Queen's Printer for Ontario.
Obbard, M. E., J. E. Jones, R. Newman, A. Booth, A. J. Satterthwaite, and G. Linscombe. 1987. Furbearer Harvests in North America. Pages 1007–1034 *in* M. Novak, J. A. Baker, M. E. Obbard, and B. Malloch, editors. Wild Furbearer Management and

Conservation in North America. Queen's Printer for Ontario.
Omernik, J. M., and A. L. Gallant. 1988. Ecoregions of the upper Midwest states. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/600/3-88/037. Corvalis, Oregon.
Parker, H., P. Nummi, G. Hartman, and F. Rosell. 2013. Invasive North American beaver *Castor canadensis* in Eurasia: a review of potential consequences and a strategy for eradication. Wildlife Biology 18:354–365.
Parker, M. 1986. Beaver, water quality and riparian systems. Laramie, WY.
Parsons, J. W. 1973. History of salmon in the Great Lakes, 1850-1970. U.S. Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife Technical paper no. 68.
Pasinelli, G., M. Schaub, G. Häfliger, M. Frey, H. Jakober, M. Müller, W. Stauber, P. Tryjanowski, J.-L. Zollinger, and L. Jenni. 2011. Impact of density and environmental factors on population fluctuations in a migratory passerine. Journal of Animal Ecology 80:225–234.
Patterson, D. 1951. Beaver-trout relationships. Wisconsin Conservation Department. Investigative Report No. 822. Page 34.
Payne, B. A., and M. F. Lapointe. 1997. Channel morphology and lateral stability: effects on distribution of spawning and rearing habitat for Atlantic salmon in a wandering cobble-bed river. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:2627–2636.
Payne, N. F. 1981. Accuracy of Aerial Censusing for Beaver Colonies in Newfoundland. The Journal of Wildlife Management 45:1014–1016.
Payne, N. F. 1982. Colony Size, Age, and Sex Structure of Newfoundland Beaver. The Journal of Wildlife Management 46:655–661.
Payne, N. F. 1984a. Reproductive Rates of Beaver in Newfoundland. The Journal of Wildlife Management 48:912–917.
Payne, N. F. 1984b. Mortality Rates of Beaver in Newfoundland. The Journal of Wildlife Management 48:117–126.
Payne, N. F. 1989. Population dynamics and harvest response of beaver. Page 33 *in*.
Payne, N. F., and R. P. Peterson. 1986. Trends in complaints of beaver damage in Wisconsin. Wildlife Society Bulletin 14:303–307.
Pennekamp, F., A. C. Iles, J. Garland, G. Brennan, U. Brose, U. Gaedke, U. Jacob, P. Kratina, B. Matthews, S. Munch, M. Novak, G. M. Palamara, B. C. Rall, B. Rosenbaum, A. Tabi, C. Ward, R. Williams, H. Ye, and O. L. Petchey. 2019. The intrinsic predictability of ecological time series and its potential to guide forecasting. Ecological Monographs 0:e01359.
Petchey, O. L., M. Pontarp, T. M. Massie, S. Kéfi, A. Ozgul, M. Weilenmann, G. M. Palamara, F. Altermatt, B. Matthews, J. M. Levine, D. Z. Childs, B. J. McGill, M. E. Schaepman, B. Schmid, P. Spaak, A. P. Beckerman, F. Pennekamp, and I. S. Pearse. 2015. The ecological forecast horizon, and examples of its uses and determinants. Ecology Letters 18:597–611.
Peterson, N. R. 2012. Stream Temperature Report. Completion Report. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, F-29-R(P)30 (Year 2).
Peterson, R. P., and N. F. Payne. 1986. Productivity, size, age, and sex structure of nuisance beaver colonies in Wisconsin. The Journal of Wildlife Management 50:265–268.
Plummer, M. 2003. JAGS: A Program for Analysis of Bayesian Graphical Models using Gibbs Sampling.

Pollock, M. M., R. J. Naiman, H. E. Erickson, C. A. Johnston, J. Pastor, and G. Pinay. 1995. Beaver as Engineers: Influences on Biotic and Abiotic Characteristics of Drainage Basins. Pages 117–126 *in* C. G. Jones and J. H. Lawton, editors. Linking Species & Ecosystems. Springer US, Boston, MA.

Pollock, M. M., T. J. Beechie, J. M. Wheaton, C. E. Jordan, N. Bouwes, N. Weber, and C. Volk. 2014. Using Beaver Dams to Restore Incised Stream Ecosystems. BioScience 64:279–290.

Popelars, J. D. 2008. Using GIS to reevaluate beaver dam effects on local environments in northern Wisconsin brook trout streams during the 1980s. Papers in Resource Analysis. Saint Mary's University of Minnesota Central Services Press.

Potvin, F., L. Breton, C. Pilon, and M. Macquart. 1992. Impact of an experimental wolf reduction on beaver in Papineau-Labelle Reserve, Quebec. Canadian Journal of Zoology 70:180–183.

Ribic, C. A., D. M. Donner, A. J. Beck, D. J. Rugg, S. Reinecke, and D. Eklund. 2017. Beaver Colony Density Trends on the Chequamegon-Nicolet National Forest, 1987–2013. PLoS ONE 12:e0170099–15.

Ridgway, M. S. 2008. A Roadmap for Coasters: Landscapes, Life Histories, and the Conservation of Brook Trout. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 137:1179–1191.

Romanski, M. C. 2010. Estimates of abundance and predation - the population ecology of beaver in Isle Royale National Park. M.Sc. Thesis, Michigan Technological University.

Rosell, F., and B. A. Nolet. 1997. Factors affecting scent-marking behavior in Eurasian beaver (*Castor fiber*). Journal of Chemical Ecology 23:673–689.

Rosell, F., and H. Parker. 1996. The beaver's (*Castor* spp.) role in forest ecology: a key species returns. Fauna 49:192–211.

Rosell, F., P. Collen, H. Parker, and O. Bozser. 2005. Ecological impact of beavers *Castor fiber* and *Castor canadensis* and their ability to modify ecosystems. Mammal Review 35:248–276.

Rosgen, D. L. 1994. A classification of natural rivers. CATENA 22:169–199.

Ross, F. E. 1938. The Fur Trade of the Western Great Lakes Region. Minnesota History 19:271–307.

Rotella, J. J., W. A. Link, J. D. Nichols, G. L. Hadley, R. A. Garrott, and K. M. Proffitt. 2009. An evaluation of density-dependent and density-independent influences on population growth rates in Weddell seals. Ecology 90:975–984.

Royama, T. 1992. Analytical Population Dynamics. First edition. Chapman & Hall, New York, NY.

Rupp, R. S. 1955. Beaver-Trout Relationship in the Headwaters of Sunkhaze Stream, Maine. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 84:75–85.

Salyer, J. C. 1935. Preliminary report on the beaver trout investigation. American Game 24:6–13–15.

Sargeant, G. A., D. H. Johnson, and W. E. Berg. 2003. Sampling Designs for Carnivore Scent-Station Surveys. The Journal of Wildlife Management 67:289–298.

Schlosser, I. J. 1991. Stream fish ecology: a landscape perspective. BioScience 41:704–712.

Schlosser, I. J. 1995a. Dispersal, boundary processes, and trophic-level interactions in

streams adjacent to beaver ponds. Ecology 76:908–925.
Schlosser, I. J. 1995b. Critical landscape attributes that influence fish population dynamics in headwater streams. Hydrobiologia 303:71–81.
Schlosser, I. J. 1998. Fish recruitment, dispersal, and trophic interactions in a heterogeneous lotic environment. Oecologia 113:260–268.
Schlosser, I. J., and L. W. Kallemeyn. 2000. Spatial variation in fish assemblages across a beaver-influenced successional landscape. Ecology 81:1371–1382.
Schorger, A. W. 1965. The Beaver in Early Wisconsin. Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters 54:147–179.
Schreiner, D. R. 2008. Coaster Brook Trout Rehabilitation in Lake Superior: Introduction. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1305–1306.
Schreiner, D. R., K. I. Cullis, M. C. Donofrio, G. J. Fischer, L. Hewitt, K. G. Mumford, D. M. Pratt, H. R. Quinlan, and S. J. Scott. 2008. Management Perspectives on Coaster Brook Trout Rehabilitation in the Lake Superior Basin. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1350–1364.
Schroeder, S. 2013. Trout angling in Minnesota. University of Minnesota, Minnesota Cooperative Fish and Wildlife Research Unit, Department of Fisheries, Wildlife, and Conservation Biology.
Schulte, L. A., D. J. Mladenoff, T. R. Crow, L. C. Merrick, and D. T. Cleland. 2007. Homogenization of northern U.S. Great Lakes forests due to land use. Landscape Ecology 22:1089–1103.
Schwartz, M., B. Penaluna, and T. Wilcox. 2017. eDNA sampling: Not just for fisheries biologists anymore. The Wildlife Professional.
Shetter, D. S., and M. J. Whalls. 1955. Effect of Impoundment on Water Temperatures of Fuller Creek, Montmorency County, Michigan. The Journal of Wildlife Management 19:47–54.
Sinclair, A. R. E. 1989. Population Regulation in Animals. Pages 197–241 *in* J. M. Cherrett, editor. Ecological Concepts. Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford, UK.
Sinclair, A. R. E., and R. P. Pech. 1996. Density Dependence, Stochasticity, Compensation and Predator Regulation. Oikos 75:164–173.
Sinokrot, B. A., H. G. Stefan, J. H. McCormick, and J. G. Eaton. 1995. Modeling of climate change effects on stream temperatures and fish habitats below dams and near groundwater inputs. Climatic Change 30:181–200.
Smith, B. R., and J. J. Tibbles. 1980. Sea Lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*) in Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior: History of Invasion and Control, 1936–78. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 37:1780–1801.
Smith, D. W., and S. H. Jenkins. 1997. Seasonal change in body mass and size of tail of northern beavers. Journal of Mammalogy 78:869–876.
Smith, D. W., D. R. Trauba, R. K. Anderson, and R. O. Peterson. 1994. Black Bear Predation on Beavers on an Island in Lake Superior. The American Midland Naturalist 132:248–255.
Smith, J. B., S. K. Windels, T. Wolf, R. W. Klaver, and J. L. Belant. 2016. Do transmitters affect survival and body condition of American beavers *Castor canadensis*? Wildlife Biology 22:117–124.
Smith, J. M., and M. E. Mather. 2013. Beaver dams maintain fish biodiversity by increasing habitat heterogeneity throughout a low-gradient stream network.

Freshwater Biology 58:1523–1538.
Smith, L. L., and J. B. Moyle. 1944. A biological survey and fishery management plan for the streams of the Lake Superior north shore watershed. Minnesota Department of Conservation. Technical Bulletin No. 1.
Smith, M. E., C. T. Driscoll, B. J. Wyskowski, C. M. Brooks, and C. C. Cosentini. 1991. Modification of stream ecosystem structure and function by beaver (*Castor canadensis*) in the Adirondack Mountains, New York. Canadian Journal of Zoology 69:55–61.
Smith, S. H. 1968. Species Succession and Fishery Exploitation in the Great Lakes. Journal Fisheries Research Board of Canada 25:667–693.
Snodgrass, J. W., and G. K. Meffe. 1998. Influence of beavers on stream fish assemblages: Effects of pond age and watershed position. Ecology 79:928–942.
Snodgrass, J. W., and G. K. Meffe. 1999. Habitat use and temporal dynamics of blackwater stream fishes in and adjacent to beaver ponds. Copeia 1999:628–639.
Soller, D. R., M. C. Reheis, C. P. Garrity, and D. R. Van Sistine. 2009. Map Database for Surficial Materials in the Conterminous United States: U.S. Geological Survey Data Series 425.
Songster-Alpin, M. S., and R. L. Klotz. 1995. A comparison of electron transport system activity in stream and beaver pond sediments. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52:1318–1326.
Sotiropoulos, J. C., K. H. Nislow, and M. R. Ross. 2006. Brook trout, Salvelinus fontinalis, microhabitat selection and diet under low summer stream flows. Fisheries Management and Ecology 13:149–155.
Sprules, W. M. 1941. The Effect of a Beaver Dam on the Insect Fauna of a Trout Stream. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 70:236–248.
Stegeman, L. 1954. The production of aspen and its utilization by beaver on the Huntington Forest. The Journal of Wildlife Management 18:348–358.
Sternecker, K., D. E. Cowley, and J. Geist. 2012. Factors influencing the success of salmonid egg development in river substratum. Ecology of Freshwater Fish 22:322–333.
Stringer, A. P., and M. J. Gaywood. 2016. The impacts of beavers *Castor* spp. on biodiversity and the ecological basis for their reintroduction to Scotland, UK. Mammal Review 46:270–283.
Sun, L., D. Müller-Schwarze, and B. A. Schulte. 2000. Dispersal pattern and effective population size of the beaver. Canadian Journal of Zoology 78:393–398.
Suttle, K. B., M. E. Power, J. M. Levine, and C. McNeely. 2004. How fine sediment in riverbeds impairs growth and survival of juvenile salmonids. Ecological Applications 14:969–974.
Tape, K. D., B. M. Jones, C. D. Arp, I. Nitze, and G. Grosse. 2018. Tundra be dammed: Beaver colonization of the Arctic. Global Change Biology 24:4478–4488.
Theberge, J. B., and M. T. Theberge. 2004. The wolves of Algonquin Park: a 12 year ecological study. Department of Geography, Publication Series Number 56, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, Ontario, Canada.
Therneau, T. 2018. deming: Deming, Theil-Sen, Passing-Bablock and Total Least Squares Regression. R package version 1.4.
Turchin, P. 1995. Population regulation: old arguments and a new synthesis. Pages 19–40

in N. Cappuccino and P. W. Price, editors. Population dynamics: new approaches and synthesis. Academic Press.
Unfer, G., and K. Pinter. 2017. Fisheries Management of Stream-Resident Brown Trout Populations – Possibilities and Restrictions. Pages 649–665 *in* Brown Trout. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
van Deelen, T. R., and D. H. Pletscher. 1996. Dispersal Characteristics of Two-year-old Beavers, *Castor canadensis*, in Western Montana. The Canadian Field-Naturalist 110:318–321.
Verry, E. S. 1986. Forest Harvesting and Water: the Lake States Experience. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 22:1039–1047.
Verry, E. S., J. R. Lewis, and K. N. Brooks. 1983. Aspen clearcutting increases snowmelt and storm flow peaks in north central Minnesota. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 19:59–67.
Vincent, R. E. 1962. Biogeographical and ecological factors contributing to the decline of Arctic grayling, *Thymallus arcticus* (Pallas), in Michigan and Montana. PhD Thesis, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI.
Virbickas, T., S. Stakėnas, and A. Steponėnas. 2015. Impact of Beaver Dams on Abundance and Distribution of Anadromous Salmonids in Two Lowland Streams in Lithuania. PLoS ONE 10:e0123107.
Vogelmann, J. E., S. M. Howard, L. Yang, C. R. Larson, B. K. Wylie, and J. N. Van Driel. 2001. Completion of the 1990s National Land Cover Data set for the conterminous United States from Landsat Thematic Mapper data and ancillary data sources. Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing 67:650–662.
Voigt, D. R., G. B. Kolenosky, and D. H. Pimlott. 1976. Changes in Summer Foods of Wolves in Central Ontario. The Journal of Wildlife Management 40:663–668.
Wang, G., N. T. Hobbs, S. Twombly, R. B. Boone, A. W. Illius, I. J. Gordon, and J. E. Gross. 2009. Density dependence in northern ungulates: interactions with predation and resources. Population Ecology 51:123–132.
Wang, L., J. Lyons, P. Rasmussen, P. W. Seelbach, T. Simon, M. Wiley, P. Kanehl, E. Baker, S. Niemela, and P. M. Stewart. 2003. Watershed, reach, and riparian influences on stream fish assemblages in the Northern Lakes and Forest Ecoregion, U.S.A. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 60:491–505.
Watanabe, S. 2010. Asymptotic Equivalence of Bayes Cross Validation and Widely Applicable Information Criterion in Singular Learning Theory. Journal of Machine Learning Research 11:3571–3594.
Waters, T. F. 1983. Replacement of Brook Trout by Brown Trout over 15 Years in a Minnesota Stream: Production and Abundance. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 112:137–146.
Waters, T. F. 1995. Sediment in streams: sources, biological effects, and control. American Fisheries Society, Monograph 7. Bethesda, MD.
Waters, T. F. 1999. The Superior North Shore: A Natural History of Lake Superior's Northern Lands and Waters. University of Minnesota Press.
WDNR. 1990. Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan 1990-2015. Pages 1–16. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources.
WDNR. 2015. Wisconsin Beaver Management Plan 2015-2025. Pages 1–72. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources.

Weber, N., N. Bouwes, M. M. Pollock, C. Volk, J. M. Wheaton, G. Wathen, J. Wirtz, and C. E. Jordan. 2017. Alteration of stream temperature by natural and artificial beaver dams. PLoS ONE 12:e0176313–23.

Wehrly, K. E., M. J. Wiley, and P. W. Seelbach. 2003. Classifying Regional Variation in Thermal Regime Based on Stream Fish Community Patterns. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 132:18–38.

Wells, L., and A. L. McLain. 1973. Lake Michigan: Man's effects on native fish stocks and other biota. Great Lakes Fishery Commission Technical Report 20. Page 55.

Westbrook, C. J., D. J. Cooper, and B. W. Baker. 2006. Beaver dams and overbank floods influence groundwater-surface water interactions of a Rocky Mountain riparian area. Water Resources Research 42:W06404.

Westbrook, C. J., D. J. Cooper, and C. B. Anderson. 2017. Alteration of hydrogeomorphic processes by invasive beavers in southern South America. Science of the Total Environment 574:183–190.

Westerman, F. A. 1974. On the history of trout planting and fish management in Michigan. in: Michigan fisheries centennial report 1873-1973. Michigan Department of Natual Resources Fisheries Management Report Number 6. Lansing, Michigan. Pages 15–37.

Whelan, G. E. 2004. A Historical Perspective on the Philosophy behind the Use of Propagated Fish in Fisheries Management: Michigan's 130-Year Experience. American Fisheries Society Symposium 44:307–315.

White, D. S. 1990. Biological relationships to convective flow patterns within stream beds. Hydrobiologia 196:149–158.

White, M. A., and D. J. Mladenoff. 1994. Old-Growth Forest Landscape Transitions From Pre-European Settlement to Present. Landscape Ecology 9:191–205.

Whitney, G. G. 1987. An Ecological History of the Great Lakes Forest of Michigan. Journal of Ecology 75:667–684.

Wiley, M., S. Kohler, and P. W. Seelbach. 1997. Reconciling landscape and local views of aquatic communities: lessons from Michigan trout streams. Freshwater Biology 37:133–148.

Willby, N. J., A. Law, O. Levanoni, G. Foster, and F. Ecke. 2018. Rewilding wetlands: beaver as agents of within-habitat heterogeneity and the responses of contrasting biota. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series B, Biological Sciences 373:20170444.

Willging, R. C. 2017. Beaver and Trout in the 21st Century. The Wildlife Professional:26–30.

Wilson, C. C., W. Stott, L. Miller, S. D'Amelio, M. J. Jennings, and A. M. Cooper. 2008. Conservation genetics of Lake Superior brook trout: issues, questions, and directions. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 28:1307–1320.

Windels, S. K. 2017. Beavers as engineers of wildlife habitat. *in* C. A. Johnston, editor. Beavers: Boreal Ecosystem Engineers. Springer-Verlaug Press.

Woo, M.-K., and J. M. Waddington. 1990. Effects of Beaver Dams on Subarctic Wetland Hydrology. Arctic 43:223–230.

Wood, P. J., and P. D. Armitage. 1997. Biological Effects of Fine Sediment in the Lotic Environment. Environmental Management 21:203–217.

Wright, J. P., C. G. Jones, and A. S. Flecker. 2002. An ecosystem engineer, the beaver,

increases species richness at the landscape scale. Oecologia 132:96–101.
Zorn, T. G., P. W. Seelbach, and M. J. Wiley. 2002. Distributions of Stream Fishes and their Relationship to Stream Size and Hydrology in Michigan's Lower Peninsula. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 131:70–85.
Zorn, T. G., T. A. Cwalinski, N. A. Godby Jr., B. J. Gunderman, and M. A. Tonello. 2018. Management Plan for Inland Trout in Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Report 30. Lansing, MI.

JOHN WILEY AND SONS LICENSE
TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Aug 01, 2019

This Agreement between Sean Johnson-Bice ("You") and John Wiley and Sons ("John Wiley and Sons") consists of your license details and the terms and conditions provided by John Wiley and Sons and Copyright Clearance Center.

License Number	4530261462989
License date	Feb 15, 2019
Licensed Content Publisher	John Wiley and Sons
Licensed Content Publication	NORTH AMERICAN JOURNAL OF FISHERIES MANAGEMENT
Licensed Content Title	A Review of Beaver–Salmonid Relationships and History of Management Actions in the Western Great Lakes (USA) Region
Licensed Content Author	Sean M. Johnson-Bice, Kathryn M. Renik, Steve K. Windels, et al
Licensed Content Date	Oct 23, 2018
Licensed Content Volume	38
Licensed Content Issue	6
Licensed Content Pages	23
Type of Use	Dissertation/Thesis
Requestor type	Author of this Wiley article
Format	Print and electronic
Portion	Full article
Will you be translating?	No
Title of your thesis / dissertation	Factors Influencing Growth Rates of Beaver (Castor canadensis) Colonies, and Their Ecological Relationship with Salmonids in the western Great Lakes Region
Expected completion date	Aug 2019
Expected size (number of pages)	120
Requestor Location	Sean Johnson-Bice 1930 E. 4th St. Apt. D DULUTH, MN 55812 United States Attn: Sean Johnson-Bice
Publisher Tax ID	EU826007151
Total	**0.00 USD**
Terms and Conditions	

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

This copyrighted material is owned by or exclusively licensed to John Wiley & Sons, Inc. or one of its group companies (each a"Wiley Company") or handled on behalf of a society with which a Wiley Company has exclusive publishing rights in relation to a particular work (collectively "WILEY"). By clicking "accept" in connection with completing this licensing transaction, you agree that the following terms and conditions apply to this transaction (along with the billing and payment terms and conditions established by the Copyright Clearance Center Inc., ("CCC's Billing and Payment terms and conditions"), at the time that you opened your RightsLink account (these are available at any time at http://myaccount.copyright.com).

Terms and Conditions

- The materials you have requested permission to reproduce or reuse (the "Wiley Materials") are protected by copyright.

- You are hereby granted a personal, non-exclusive, non-sub licensable (on a stand-alone basis), non-transferable, worldwide, limited license to reproduce the Wiley Materials for the purpose specified in the licensing process. This license, **and any CONTENT (PDF or image file) purchased as part of your order,** is for a one-time use only and limited to any maximum distribution number specified in the license. The first instance of republication or reuse granted by this license must be completed within two years of the date of the grant of this license (although copies prepared before the end date may be distributed thereafter). The Wiley Materials shall not be used in any other manner or for any other purpose, beyond what is granted in the license. Permission is granted subject to an appropriate acknowledgement given to the author, title of the material/book/journal and the publisher. You shall also duplicate the copyright notice that appears in the Wiley publication in your use of the Wiley Material. Permission is also granted on the understanding that nowhere in the text is a previously published source acknowledged for all or part of this Wiley Material. Any third party content is expressly excluded from this permission.

- With respect to the Wiley Materials, all rights are reserved. Except as expressly granted by the terms of the license, no part of the Wiley Materials may be copied, modified, adapted (except for minor reformatting required by the new Publication), translated, reproduced, transferred or distributed, in any form or by any means, and no derivative works may be made based on the Wiley Materials without the prior permission of the respective copyright owner.**For STM Signatory Publishers clearing permission under the terms of the STM Permissions Guidelines only, the terms of the license are extended to include subsequent editions and for editions in other languages, provided such editions are for the work as a whole in situ and does not involve the separate exploitation of the permitted figures or extracts,** You may not alter, remove or suppress in any manner any copyright, trademark or other notices displayed by the Wiley Materials. You may not license, rent, sell, loan, lease, pledge, offer as security, transfer or assign the Wiley Materials on a stand-alone basis, or any of the rights granted to you hereunder to any other person.

- The Wiley Materials and all of the intellectual property rights therein shall at all times remain the exclusive property of John Wiley & Sons Inc, the Wiley Companies, or their respective licensors, and your interest therein is only that of having possession of and the right to reproduce the Wiley Materials pursuant to Section 2 herein during the continuance of this Agreement. You agree that you own no right, title or interest in or to the Wiley Materials or any of the intellectual property rights therein. You shall have no rights hereunder other than the license as provided for above in Section 2. No right, license or interest to any trademark, trade name, service mark or other branding ("Marks") of WILEY or its licensors is granted hereunder, and you agree that you shall not assert any such right, license or interest with respect thereto

- NEITHER WILEY NOR ITS LICENSORS MAKES ANY WARRANTY OR REPRESENTATION OF ANY KIND TO YOU OR ANY THIRD PARTY, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, WITH RESPECT TO THE MATERIALS OR THE ACCURACY OF ANY INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THE MATERIALS, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, ACCURACY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, USABILITY, INTEGRATION OR NON-INFRINGEMENT AND ALL SUCH WARRANTIES ARE HEREBY EXCLUDED BY WILEY AND ITS LICENSORS AND WAIVED BY YOU.

- WILEY shall have the right to terminate this Agreement immediately upon breach of this Agreement by you.
- You shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless WILEY, its Licensors and their respective directors, officers, agents and employees, from and against any actual or threatened claims, demands, causes of action or proceedings arising from any breach of this Agreement by you.
- IN NO EVENT SHALL WILEY OR ITS LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY OTHER PARTY OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FOR ANY SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, EXEMPLARY OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, HOWEVER CAUSED, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE DOWNLOADING, PROVISIONING, VIEWING OR USE OF THE MATERIALS REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, BREACH OF WARRANTY, TORT, NEGLIGENCE, INFRINGEMENT OR OTHERWISE (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES BASED ON LOSS OF PROFITS, DATA, FILES, USE, BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY OR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES), AND WHETHER OR NOT THE PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY NOTWITHSTANDING ANY FAILURE OF ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY PROVIDED HEREIN.
- Should any provision of this Agreement be held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be illegal, invalid, or unenforceable, that provision shall be deemed amended to achieve as nearly as possible the same economic effect as the original provision, and the legality, validity and enforceability of the remaining provisions of this Agreement shall not be affected or impaired thereby.
- The failure of either party to enforce any term or condition of this Agreement shall not constitute a waiver of either party's right to enforce each and every term and condition of this Agreement. No breach under this agreement shall be deemed waived or excused by either party unless such waiver or consent is in writing signed by the party granting such waiver or consent. The waiver by or consent of a party to a breach of any provision of this Agreement shall not operate or be construed as a waiver of or consent to any other or subsequent breach by such other party.
- This Agreement may not be assigned (including by operation of law or otherwise) by you without WILEY's prior written consent.
- Any fee required for this permission shall be non-refundable after thirty (30) days from receipt by the CCC.
- These terms and conditions together with CCC's Billing and Payment terms and conditions (which are incorporated herein) form the entire agreement between you and WILEY concerning this licensing transaction and (in the absence of fraud) supersedes all prior agreements and representations of the parties, oral or written. This Agreement may not be amended except in writing signed by both parties. This Agreement shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties' successors, legal representatives, and authorized assigns.
- In the event of any conflict between your obligations established by these terms and conditions and those established by CCC's Billing and Payment terms and conditions, these terms and conditions shall prevail.
- WILEY expressly reserves all rights not specifically granted in the combination of (i) the license details provided by you and accepted in the course of this licensing transaction, (ii) these terms and conditions and (iii) CCC's Billing and Payment terms and conditions.
- This Agreement will be void if the Type of Use, Format, Circulation, or Requestor Type was misrepresented during the licensing process.
- This Agreement shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, USA, without regards to such state's conflict of law rules. Any legal action, suit or proceeding arising out of or relating to these Terms and Conditions or the breach thereof shall be instituted in a court of competent jurisdiction in New

York County in the State of New York in the United States of America and each party hereby consents and submits to the personal jurisdiction of such court, waives any objection to venue in such court and consents to service of process by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, at the last known address of such party.

WILEY OPEN ACCESS TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Wiley Publishes Open Access Articles in fully Open Access Journals and in Subscription journals offering Online Open. Although most of the fully Open Access journals publish open access articles under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution (CC BY) License only, the subscription journals and a few of the Open Access Journals offer a choice of Creative Commons Licenses. The license type is clearly identified on the article.

The Creative Commons Attribution License

The Creative Commons Attribution License (CC-BY) allows users to copy, distribute and transmit an article, adapt the article and make commercial use of the article. The CC-BY license permits commercial and non-

Creative Commons Attribution Non-Commercial License

The Creative Commons Attribution Non-Commercial (CC-BY-NC)License permits use, distribution and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited and is not used for commercial purposes.(see below)

Creative Commons Attribution-Non-Commercial-NoDerivs License

The Creative Commons Attribution Non-Commercial-NoDerivs License (CC-BY-NC-ND) permits use, distribution and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, is not used for commercial purposes and no modifications or adaptations are made. (see below)

Use by commercial "for-profit" organizations

Use of Wiley Open Access articles for commercial, promotional, or marketing purposes requires further explicit permission from Wiley and will be subject to a fee.

Further details can be found on Wiley Online Library http://olabout.wiley.com/WileyCDA/Section/id-410895.html

Other Terms and Conditions:

v1.10 Last updated September 2015

Questions? customercare@copyright.com or +1-855-239-3415 (toll free in the US) or +1-978-646-2777.